



Matthew Portnoy

Virtualization

ESSENTIALS



SERIOUS SKILLS.

VIRTUALIZATION

ESSENTIALS

VIRTUALIZATION

ESSENTIALS

Matthew Portnoy



WILEY

John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Acquisitions Editor: Agatha Kim
Development Editor: David Johnson
Technical Editor: Van Van Noy
Production Editor: Christine O'Connor
Copy Editor: Kathy Grider-Carlyle
Editorial Manager: Pete Gaughan
Production Manager: Tim Tate
Vice President and Executive Group Publisher: Richard Swadley
Vice President and Publisher: Neil Edde
Book Designer: Happenstance Type-O-Rama
Proofreader: Adept Content Solutions LLC
Indexer: Robert Swanson
Project Coordinator, Cover: Katherine Crocker
Cover Designer: Ryan Sneed

Copyright © 2012 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana
Published simultaneously in Canada
ISBN: 978-1-118-17671-9
ISBN: 978-1-118-22698-8 (ebk.)
ISBN: 978-1-118-24017-5 (ebk.)
ISBN: 978-1-118-26480-5 (ebk.)

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: The publisher and the author make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this work and specifically disclaim all warranties, including without limitation warranties of fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales or promotional materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for every situation. This work is sold with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, accounting, or other professional services. If professional assistance is required, the services of a competent professional person should be sought. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for damages arising herefrom. The fact that an organization or Web site is referred to in this work as a citation and/or a potential source of further information does not mean that the author or the publisher endorses the information the organization or Web site may provide or recommendations it may make. Further, readers should be aware that Internet Web sites listed in this work may have changed or disappeared between when this work was written and when it is read.

For general information on our other products and services or to obtain technical support, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at (877) 762-2974, outside the U.S. at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at <http://booksupport.wiley.com>. For more information about Wiley products, visit www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012933616

TRADEMARKS: Wiley, the Wiley logo, and the Sybex logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates, in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Dear Reader,

Thank you for choosing *Virtualization Essentials*. This book is part of a family of premium-quality Sybex books, all of which are written by outstanding authors who combine practical experience with a gift for teaching.

Sybex was founded in 1976. More than 30 years later, we're still committed to producing consistently exceptional books. With each of our titles, we're working hard to set a new standard for the industry. From the paper we print on, to the authors we work with, our goal is to bring you the best books available.

I hope you see all that reflected in these pages. I'd be very interested to hear your comments and get your feedback on how we're doing. Feel free to let me know what you think about this or any other Sybex book by sending me an email at nedde@wiley.com. If you think you've found a technical error in this book, please visit <http://sybex.custhelp.com>. Customer feedback is critical to our efforts at Sybex.

Best regards,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Neil Edde', with a stylized, flowing script.

NEIL EDDE
Vice President and Publisher
Sybex, an Imprint of Wiley

To my friends and family, near and far.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

A project is rarely a solo affair, and this one depended on a large crew for it to arrive. I need to thank Scott Lowe for shoveling the path and aiming me at the correct door. My deepest gratitude goes to Mark Milow for helping me climb aboard this rocket, to Mike Szfranski for your always open book of knowledge, to Nick Gamache for the insights, and to Tony Damiano for keeping our vehicle in the fast lane.

My heartfelt thanks also go to the virtual team at Sybex: Pete Gaughan, David Johnson, Van Van Noy, Christine O'Connor, Kathy Grider-Carlyle, and Mariann Barsolo for their steadfast support, forcing me to improve with each chapter and keeping it all neat and clean. Special thanks go to Agatha Kim for getting this whole adventure rolling.

I need to thank my family beginning with my parents, teachers both, who instilled me with a love of reading and writing and set me on a path that somehow led here. Thank you to my boys, Lucas and Noah, who fill our days with laughter and music. And finally, a huge hug to my wife, Elizabeth, who encouraged me even when she had no idea what I was writing about. I love you.

ABOUT THE AUTHOR



Matt Portnoy has been an information technology professional for more than 30 years, working in organizations such as NCR, Sperry/Unisys, Stratus Computer, Oracle, and currently VMware. He has been in the center of many of the core technological trends during this period, including the birth of the PC, client-server computing, fault tolerance and availability, the rise of the Internet, and now virtualization, which is the foundation for cloud computing. As both a presales and post-sales analyst, he has worked with all of the disciplines computing offers, including innumerable programming languages, operating systems, application design and development, database operations, networking, security, availability, and virtualization. He has spoken at the industry's largest virtualization conference, VMworld, and is a frequent speaker at user group meetings. He also has been teaching database classes as an adjunct professor at Wake Tech Community College in Raleigh, North Carolina, since 2007.

CONTENTS AT A GLANCE

	<i>Introduction</i>	<i>xv</i>
CHAPTER 1	Understanding Virtualization	1
CHAPTER 2	Understanding Hypervisors	19
CHAPTER 3	Understanding Virtual Machines	35
CHAPTER 4	Creating a Virtual Machine	51
CHAPTER 5	Installing Windows on a Virtual Machine	71
CHAPTER 6	Installing Linux on a Virtual Machine	97
CHAPTER 7	Managing CPUs for a Virtual Machine	125
CHAPTER 8	Managing Memory for a Virtual Machine	137
CHAPTER 9	Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine	151
CHAPTER 10	Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine	171
CHAPTER 11	Copying a Virtual Machine	191
CHAPTER 12	Managing Additional Devices in Virtual Machines	211
CHAPTER 13	Understanding Availability	227
CHAPTER 14	Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine	243
APPENDIX	Answers to Additional Exercises	261
	<i>Glossary</i>	<i>271</i>
	<i>Index</i>	<i>277</i>

CONTENTS

Introduction

xv

CHAPTER 1	Understanding Virtualization	1
	Describing Virtualization	1
	Microsoft Windows Drives Server Growth	3
	Explaining Moore's Law	6
	Understanding the Importance of Virtualization	9
	Examining Today's Trends	11
	Virtualization and Cloud Computing	14
	Understanding Virtualization Software Operation	15
	Virtualizing Servers	15
	Virtualizing Desktops	15
	Virtualizing Applications	17
CHAPTER 2	Understanding Hypervisors	19
	Describing a Hypervisor	19
	Exploring the History of Hypervisors	20
	Understanding Type 1 Hypervisors	21
	Understanding Type 2 Hypervisors	23
	Understanding the Role of a Hypervisor	24
	Holodecks and Traffic Cops	24
	Resource Allocation	25
	Comparing Today's Hypervisors	27
	VMware ESX	27
	Citrix Xen	29
	Microsoft Hyper-V	31
	Other Solutions	32
CHAPTER 3	Understanding Virtual Machines	35
	Describing a Virtual Machine	35
	Examining CPU in a Virtual Machine	38
	Examining Memory in a Virtual Machine	39

Examining Network Resources in a Virtual Machine	39
Examining Storage in a Virtual Machine	41
Understanding How a Virtual Machine Works	42
Working with Virtual Machines	43
Understanding Virtual Machine Clones	44
Understanding Templates	45
Understanding Snapshots	47
Understanding OVF	48

CHAPTER 4 Creating a Virtual Machine 51

Performing P2V Conversions	51
Investigating the Physical-to-Virtual Process	52
Hot and Cold Cloning.	53
Loading Your Environment	54
Exploring VMware Player	60
Building a New Virtual Machine	63
Thinking About VM Configuration	64
Creating a First VM	65

CHAPTER 5 Installing Windows on a Virtual Machine 71

Loading Windows into a Virtual Machine	71
Installing Windows 7	72
Installing VMware Tools	83
Understanding Configuration Options	89
Optimizing a New Virtual Machine	95

CHAPTER 6 Installing Linux on a Virtual Machine 97

Loading Linux into a Virtual Machine	97
Installing Linux into a Virtual Machine	98
Installing VMware Tools	113
Understanding Configuration Options	117
Optimizing a New Linux Virtual Machine	122

CHAPTER 7 Managing CPUs for a Virtual Machine 125

Understanding CPU Virtualization	125
Configuring VM CPU Options	129

	Tuning Practices for VM CPUs	130
	Choosing Multiple vCPUs vs. a Single vCPU	131
	Hyper-Threading	132
	Working with Intel and AMD Servers	134
CHAPTER 8	Managing Memory for a Virtual Machine	137
	Understanding Memory Virtualization	137
	Configuring VM Memory Options	140
	Tuning Practices for VM Memory.	142
	Calculating Memory Overhead	143
	Memory Optimizations	144
CHAPTER 9	Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine	151
	Understanding Storage Virtualization	151
	Configuring VM Storage Options.	156
	Tuning Practices for VM Storage	162
CHAPTER 10	Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine	171
	Understanding Network Virtualization	171
	Configuring VM Network Options	181
	Tuning Practices for Virtual Networks	187
CHAPTER 11	Copying a Virtual Machine	191
	Cloning a Virtual Machine	191
	Working with Templates.	197
	Saving a Virtual Machine State	201
	Creating a Snapshot.	204
	Merging Snapshots.	208
CHAPTER 12	Managing Additional Devices in Virtual Machines	211
	Using Virtual Machine Tools	212
	Understanding Virtual Devices.	213
	Configuring a CD/DVD Drive.	214
	Configuring a Floppy Disk Drive	215
	Configuring a Sound Card	218
	Configuring USB Devices	219
	Configuring Graphic Displays	221
	Configuring Other Devices.	222

CHAPTER 13	Understanding Availability	227
	Increasing Availability	227
	Protecting a Virtual Machine	230
	Protecting Multiple Virtual Machines	234
	Protecting Datacenters	238
CHAPTER 14	Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine	243
	Examining Virtual Infrastructure Performance Capabilities	243
	Deploying Applications in a Virtual Environment	248
	Understanding Virtual Appliances and vApps	256
APPENDIX	Answers to Additional Exercises	261
	<i>Glossary</i>	271
	<i>Index</i>	277

INTRODUCTION

We live in an exciting time. The information age is exploding around us, giving us access to dizzying amounts of information at the instant it is available. Smart phones and tablets provide an untethered experience streaming video, audio, and other media formats to just about any place on the planet. Even people who are not “computer literate” use Facebook to catch up with friends and family, use Google to research a new restaurant choice and print directions to get there, or Tweet their reactions once they have sampled the fare. The infrastructure supporting these services is also growing exponentially, and the technology that facilitates this rapid growth is virtualization.

On one hand, virtualization is nothing more than an increasingly efficient use of existing resources that delivers huge cost savings in a brief amount of time. On the other, it offers organizations new models of application deployment for greater uptime to meet user expectations, modular packages to provide new services in minutes instead of weeks, and advanced features that bring automatic load balancing, scalability without downtime, self-healing, self-service provisioning, and many other capabilities to support business critical applications that improve on traditional architecture. Large companies have been using this technology for five to ten years, while smaller and medium-sized businesses are just getting there now. Some of them might miss the movement altogether and jump directly to cloud computing, the next evolution of application deployment. Virtualization is the foundation for cloud computing as well.

This quantum change in our world echoes similar trends from our recent history as electrical power and telephony capabilities spread and then changed our day-to-day lives. During those periods, whole industries sprung up out of nothing, providing employment and opportunity to people who had the foresight and chutzpah to seize the moment. That same spirit and opportunity is available today as this area is being defined and created right before our eyes. If not a virtualization vendor, there are hardware partners who provide servers, networking vendors for connectivity, storage partners for data storage, and everyone provides services. Software vendors are building new applications specifically for these new architectures. Third parties are creating tools to monitor and manage these applications and infrastructure areas. As cloud computing begins to become the de facto model for development, deployment, and maintaining application services, this area will expand even further.

The first generation of virtualization specialists acquired their knowledge out of necessity: they were server administrators who needed to understand the new infrastructure being deployed in their datacenters. Along the way, they

picked up some networking knowledge to manage the virtual networks, storage knowledge to connect to storage arrays, and application information to better interface with the application teams. Few people have experience in all of those areas. Whether you have some virtualization experience, or none at all, this text will give you the foundation to understand what virtualization is, position why it is a crucial portion of today's and tomorrow's information technology infrastructure, and give you the opportunity to explore and experience one of the most exciting and fastest growing topics in technology today.

Good reading and happy virtualizing!

Who Should Read This Book

This text is designed to provide the basics of virtualization technology to someone who has little or no prior knowledge of the subject. This book will be of interest to you if you are an IT student looking for information about virtualization, or as an IT manager who needs a better understanding of virtualization fundamentals as part of your role. This book might also be of interest if you are an IT professional who specializes in a particular discipline (server administration, networking, storage) and are looking for an introduction into virtualization or cloud computing as a way to advance inside your organization.

The expectation is that you have:

- ▶ Some basic PC experience
- ▶ An understating of what an operating system is and does
- ▶ Conceptual knowledge of computing resources (CPU, memory, storage, and network)
- ▶ A high-level understanding of how programs use resources.

This text would not be of interest if you are already a virtualization professional and you are looking for a guidebook or reference.

What You Need

The exercises and illustrations used in this text were created on a system using Windows 7 SP1. VMware Player is used as the virtualization platform. It is available as a free download from <http://downloads.vmware.com/d/>. It is recommended that you have at least 2 GB of memory, though more will be better. The installation requires 150 MB of disk storage.

The examples demonstrate the creation of two virtual machines: one running Windows 7, the other running Red Hat Linux. You will need the installation media for those as well. Each of the virtual machines requires about 30 GB of disk space.

What Is Covered in This Book

Here's a glance at what is in each chapter.

Chapter 1: Understanding Virtualization introduces the basic concepts of computer virtualization beginning with mainframes and continues with the computing trends that have led to current technologies.

Chapter 2: Understanding Hypervisors focuses on hypervisors, the software that provides the virtualization layer, and compares some of the current offerings in today's marketplace.

Chapter 3: Understanding Virtual Machines describes what a virtual machine is composed of, explains how it interacts with the hypervisor that supports its existence, and provides an overview of managing virtual machine resources.

Chapter 4: Creating A Virtual Machine begins with the topic of converting existing physical servers into virtual machines and provides a walkthrough of installing VMware Player, the virtualization platform used in this text, and a walkthrough of the creation of a virtual machine.

Chapter 5: Installing Windows on a Virtual Machine provides a guide for loading Microsoft Windows in the created virtual machine and then describes configuration and tuning options.

Chapter 6: Installing Linux on a Virtual Machine provides a guide for loading Red Hat Linux in a virtual machine and then walks through a number of configuration and optimization options.

Chapter 7: Managing CPUs for a Virtual Machine discusses how CPU resources are virtualized and then describes various tuning options and optimizations. Included topics are hyper-threading and Intel versus AMD.

Chapter 8: Managing Memory for a Virtual Machine covers how memory is managed in a virtual environment and the configuration options available. It concludes with a discussion of various memory optimization technologies that are available and how they work.

Chapter 9: Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine examines how virtual machines access storage arrays and the different connection options they can utilize. Included are virtual machine storage options and storage optimization technologies such as deduplication.

Chapter 10: Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine begins with a discussion of virtual networking and how virtual machines use virtual switches to communicate with each other and the outside world. It concludes with virtual network configuration options and optimization practices.

Chapter 11: Copying a Virtual Machine discusses how virtual machines are backed up and provisioned through techniques such as cloning and using templates. It finishes with a powerful feature called snapshots that can preserve a virtual machine state.

Chapter 12: Managing Additional Devices in a Virtual Machines begins by discussing virtual machine tools, vendor provided application packages that optimize a virtual machines performance, and concludes with individual discussions of virtual support for other peripheral devices like CD/DVD drives and USB devices.

Chapter 13: Understanding Availability positions the importance of availability in the virtual environment and then discusses various availability technologies that protect individual virtual machines, virtualization servers, and entire datacenters from planned and unplanned downtime.

Chapter 14: Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine focuses on the methodology and practices for deploying applications in a virtual environment. Topics include application performance, using resource pools, and deploying virtual appliances.

Appendix: Answers to Additional Exercises contains all of the answers to the additional exercises found at the end of every chapter.

Glossary lists the most commonly used terms throughout the book.

How to Contact the Author

I welcome feedback from you about this book or about books you'd like to see from me in the future. You can reach me by writing to mportnoyvm@gmail.com.

Sybex strives to keep you supplied with the latest tools and information you need for your work. Please check their website at <http://www.sybex.com/go/virtualizationessentials>, where we'll post additional content and updates that supplement this book if the need arises.

Understanding Virtualization

We are in the midst of a substantial change in the way computing services are provided. As a consumer, you surf the web on your cell phone, get directions from a GPS device, and stream movies and music from the cloud. At the heart of these services is *virtualization*—the ability to abstract a physical server into a virtual machine.

In this chapter, you will explore some of the basic concepts of virtualization, review how the need for virtualization came about, and learn why virtualization is a key building block to the future of computing.

- ▶ **Describing virtualization**
- ▶ **Understanding the importance of virtualization**
- ▶ **Understanding virtualization software operation**

Describing Virtualization

Over the last fifty years, certain key trends created fundamental changes in how computing services are provided. Mainframe processing drove the sixties and seventies. Personal computers, the digitization of the physical desktop, and client/server technology headlined the eighties and nineties. The Internet, boom and bubble, spanned the last and current centuries and continues today. We are, though, in the midst of another of those model-changing trends: virtualization.

Virtualization is a disruptive technology, shattering the status quo of how physical computers are handled, services are delivered, and budgets are allocated. To understand why virtualization has had such a profound effect on today's computing environment, you need to have a better understanding of what has gone on in the past.

The word *virtual* has undergone a change in recent years. Not the word itself, of course, but its usage has been expanded in conjunction with the expansion of computing, especially with the widespread use of the Internet and smart phones. Online applications have allowed us to shop in virtual

stores, examine potential vacation spots through virtual tours, and even keep our virtual books in virtual libraries. Many people invest considerable time and actual dollars as they explore and adventure through entire worlds that exist only in someone’s imagination and on a gaming server.

Virtualization in computing often refers to the abstraction of some physical component into a logical object. By virtualizing an object, you can obtain some greater measure of utility from the resource the object provides. For example, Virtual LANs (local area networks), or VLANs, provide greater network performance and improved manageability by being separated from the physical hardware. Likewise, storage area networks (SANs) provide greater flexibility, improved availability, and more efficient use of storage resources by abstracting the physical devices into logical objects that can be quickly and easily manipulated. Our focus, however, will be on the virtualization of entire computers.

If you are not yet familiar with the idea of computer virtualization, your initial thoughts might be along the lines of virtual reality—the technology that, through the use of sophisticated visual projection and sensory feedback, can give a person the experience of actually being in that created environment. At a fundamental level, this is exactly what computer virtualization is all about: it is how a computer application experiences its created environment.

The first mainstream virtualization was done on IBM mainframes in the 1960s, but Gerald J. Popek and Robert P. Goldberg codified the framework that describes the requirements for a computer system to support virtualization. Their 1974 article “Formal Requirements for Virtualizable Third Generation Architectures” describes the roles and properties of virtual machines and virtual machine monitors that we still use today. The article is available for purchase or rent at <http://dl.acm.org/citation.cfm?doid=361011.361073>. By their definition, a virtual machine (VM) can virtualize all of the hardware resources, including processors, memory, storage, and network connectivity. A virtual machine monitor (VMM), which today is commonly called a *hypervisor*, is the software that provides the environment in which the VMs operate. Figure 1.1 shows a simple illustration of a VMM.

▶
Some examples of virtual reality in popular culture are the file retrieval interface in Michael Crichton’s *Disclosure*, *The Matrix*, and *Star Trek: The Next Generation’s* holodeck.

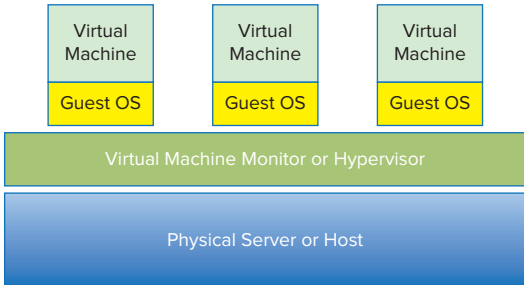


FIGURE 1.1 A basic virtual machine monitor (VMM)

According to Popek and Goldberg, a VMM needs to exhibit three properties in order to correctly satisfy their definition:

Fidelity The environment it creates for the VM is essentially identical to the original (hardware) physical machine.

Isolation or Safety The VMM must have complete control of the system resources.

Performance There should be little or no difference in performance between the VM and a physical equivalent.

Because most VMMs have the first two properties, VMMs that also meet the final criterion are considered *efficient* VMMs. We will go into these properties in much more depth as we examine hypervisors in Chapter 2, “Understanding Hypervisors,” and virtual machines in Chapter 3, “Understanding Virtual Machines.”


Let’s go back to the virtual reality analogy. Why would you want to give a computer program a virtual world to work in, anyway? It turns out that it was very necessary. To help explain that necessity, let’s review a little history. It would be outside the scope of this text to cover all the details about how server-based computing evolved, but for our purposes, we can compress it to a number of key occurrences.

Microsoft Windows Drives Server Growth

Microsoft Windows was developed during the 1980s primarily as a personal computer operating system. Others existed, CPM and OS/2 for example, but as you know Windows eventually dominated the market and today it is still the primary operating system deployed on PCs. During that same time frame, businesses were depending more and more on computers for their operations. Companies moved from paper pushing to running their accounting, human resources, and many other industry-specific and custom-built applications on mainframes or minicomputers. These computers usually ran vendor-specific operating systems, making it difficult, if not impossible, for companies and IT professionals to easily transfer information among noncompatible systems. This led to the need for *standards*, agreed upon methods for exchanging information, but also the idea that the same, or similar, operating systems and programs should be able to run on many different vendors’ hardware. The first of these was Bell Laboratories’ commercially available UNIX operating systems.

Companies had both Windows-based PCs and other operating systems in-house, managed and maintained by their IT staffs, but it wasn’t cost effective to train

Between the late 1970s and mid-1980s there were more than 70 different personal computer operating systems.



Current versions of Microsoft Windows run concurrent applications much more efficiently than their predecessors.

IT staffs on multiple platforms. With increasing amounts of memory, faster processors, and larger and faster storage subsystems, the hardware that Windows could run on became capable of hosting more powerful applications that had in the past run on minicomputers and mainframes. These applications were being migrated to, or being designed to run on, Windows servers. This worked well for companies because they already had Windows expertise in house and no longer required multiple teams to support their IT infrastructure. This move, however, also led to a number of challenges. Because Windows was originally designed to be a single-user operating system, a single application on a single Windows server ran fine, but often when a second program was introduced, the requirements of each program caused various types of resource contention and even out and out operating system failures. This behavior drove many companies, application designers, developers, IT professionals, and vendors to adopt a “one server, one application” best practice; so for every application that was deployed, one or more servers needed to be acquired, provisioned, and managed.

Another factor that drove the growing server population was corporate politics. The various organizations within a single company did not want any common infrastructure. Human Resource and Payroll departments declared their data was too sensitive to allow the potential of another group using their systems. Marketing, Finance, and Sales all believed the same thing to protect their fiscal information. Research and Development also had dedicated servers to ensure the safety of their corporate intellectual property. Sometimes companies had redundant applications, four or more email systems, maybe from different vendors, due to this individual ownership attitude. By demanding solitary control of their application infrastructure, departments felt that they had control of their data, but this type of control also increased their capital costs.

Aiding the politics was the fact that business demand, competition, Moore’s Law, and improvements in server and storage technologies, all drastically drove down the cost of hardware. This made the entry point for a department to build and manage its own IT infrastructure much more affordable. The processing power and storage that in the past had cost hundreds of thousands of dollars could be had for a fraction of that cost in the form of even more Windows servers.

Business computers initially had specialized rooms in which to operate. These computer rooms were anything from oversized closets to specially constructed areas for housing a company’s technology infrastructure. They typically had raised floors under which the cables and sometimes air conditioning were run. They held the computers, network equipment, and often telecomm equipment. They needed to be outfitted with enough power to service all of that equipment. Because all of those electronics in a contained space generated considerable heat, commensurate cooling through huge air-conditioning handlers was

mandatory as well. Cables to interconnect all of these devices, fire suppression systems in case of emergency, and separate security systems to protect the room itself, all added to the considerable and ever-rising costs of doing business in a modern corporation. As companies depended more and more on technology to drive their business, they added many more servers to support that need. Eventually, this expansion created data centers. A *data center* could be anything from a larger computer room, to an entire floor in a building, to a separate building constructed and dedicated to the health and well-being of a company's computing infrastructure. Entire buildings existed solely to support servers, and then at the end of twentieth century, the Internet blossomed into existence.

"E-business or out of business" was the cry that went up as businesses tried to stake out their territories in this new online world. To keep up with their competition, existing companies deployed even more servers as they web-enabled old applications to be more customer facing and customer serving. Innovative companies, such as Amazon and Google, appeared from nowhere, creating disruptive business models that depended on large farms of servers to rapidly deliver millions of web pages populated with petabytes of information (see Table 1.1). IT infrastructure was mushrooming at an alarming rate, and it was only going to get worse. New consumer-based services were delivered not just through traditional online channels, but newer devices such as mobile phones compounded data centers growth. Between 2000 and 2006, the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) reported that energy use by United States data centers doubled, and that over the next five years they expected it to double again. Not only that, but servers were consuming about 2 percent of the total electricity produced in the country, and the energy used to cool them consumed about the same amount.

TABLE 1.1 Byte Sizes

Name	Abbreviation	Size
Byte	B	8-bits (a single character)
Kilobyte	KB	1,024 B
Megabyte	MB	1,024 KB
Gigabyte	GB	1,024 MB
Terabyte	TB	1,024 GB
Petabyte	PB	1,024 TB
Exabyte	EB	1,024 PB

Let's take a closer look at these data centers. Many were reaching their physical limits on many levels. They were running out of actual square footage for the servers they needed to contain, and companies were searching for alternatives. Often the building that housed a data center could not get more electrical power or additional cooling capacity. Building larger or additional data centers was and still is an expensive proposition. In addition to running out of room, the data centers often had grown faster than the people managing them could maintain them. It was common to hear tales of lost servers. (A *lost server* is a server that is running, but no one actually knows which line of business owns it or what it is doing.) These lost servers couldn't be interrupted for fear of inadvertently disrupting some crucial part of the business. In some data centers, cabling was so thick and intertwined that when nonfunctioning cables needed to be replaced, or old cables were no longer needed, it was easier to just leave them where they were, rather than try to unthread them from the mass. Of course, these are the more extreme examples, but most data centers had challenges to some degree in one or more of these areas.

Explaining Moore's Law

So far you have seen how a combination of events—the rise of Windows, corporations increasing reliance on server technology, and the appearance and mushrooming of the Internet and other content-driven channels—all contributed to accelerated growth of the worldwide server population. One 2006 study estimated that the 16 million servers in use in 2000 had grown to almost 30 million by 2005. This trend continues today. Think about all of the many ways you can pull information from the world around you; computers, mobile devices, gaming platforms, and television set tops are only some of the methods, and new ones appear every day. Each of them has a wide and deep infrastructure to support those services, but this is only part of the story. The other piece of the tale has to do with how efficient those computers were becoming.

If you are reading an electronic copy of this text on a traditional computer, or maybe on a smart phone or even a tablet, you probably have already gone through the process of replacing that device at least once. Phone companies typically give their customers the ability to swap out older smart phones every couple of years for newer, more up-to-date models, assuming you opt for another contract extension. A computer that you bought in 2000 has probably been supplanted by one you purchased in the last three to five years, and if it is closer to five years, you are probably thinking about replacing that one as well. This has little to do with obsolescence, although electronic devices today are rarely engineered to outlive their useful lifespan. It has more to do with the

incredible advances that technology constantly makes, packing more and more capability into faster, smaller, and newer packages. For example, digital cameras first captured images at less than one megapixel resolution and now routinely provide more than 12 megapixel resolutions. PCs, and now smart phones, initially offered memory (RAM) measured in kilobytes; today the standard is gigabytes, an increase of two orders of magnitude. Not surprisingly, there is a rule of thumb that governs how fast these increases take place. It is called Moore's Law, and it deals with the rate at which certain technologies improve (see Figure 1.2).

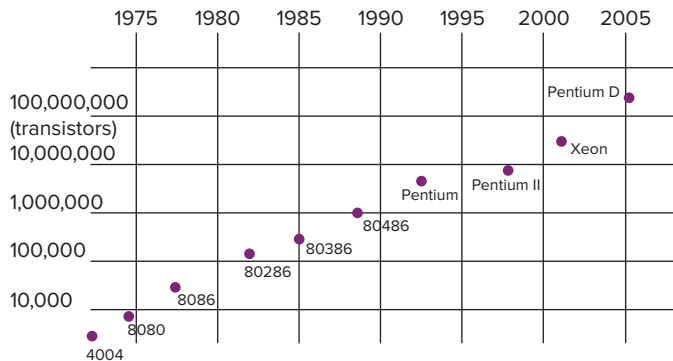


FIGURE 1.2 Moore's Law: transistor count and processor speed

Gordon Moore, one of the founders of Intel, gets credit for recognizing and describing the phenomenon that bears his name. His original thought was publicized back in 1965, and though it has been refined a few times along the way, is still very true today. Simply stated, Moore's Law says that processing power roughly doubles every 18 months. That means a computer you buy 18 months from now will be twice as powerful as one you buy today. As it turns out, Moore's Law applies not just to *processing power* (the speed and capacity of computer chips) but to many other related technologies as well (such as memory capacity and the megapixel count in digital cameras). You might think that after almost 50 years, we would be hitting some type of technological barrier that would prevent this exponential growth from continuing, but scientists believe that it will hold true for somewhere between 20 years on the low side and centuries on the high. But what does this have to do with straining data centers and ballooning server growth?

Servers are routinely replaced. There are two main models for this process. Companies buy servers and then buy newer models in three to five years when those assets are depreciated. Other corporations lease servers, and when that

lease runs its course, they lease newer servers, also in three to five year intervals. The servers that were initially purchased for use were probably sized to do a certain job; in other words, they were bought, for example, to run a database. The model and size of the server was determined with help from an application vendor who provided a recommended configuration based on the company’s specific need. That need was not the company’s requirement on the day the server was purchased; it was purchased based on the company’s projected need for the future and for emergencies. This extra capacity is also known as *headroom*. To use the server for three to five years, it had to be large enough to handle growth until the end of the server’s life, whether it actually ever used that extra capacity or not. When the server was replaced, it was often replaced with a similarly configured model (with the same number of processors and the same or additional memory) for the next term, but the newer server was not the same.

Let’s take six years as an example span of time and examine the effect of Moore’s Law on the change in a server (see Table 1.2). A company that is on a three-year model has replaced the initial server twice—once at the end of year three and again at the end of year six. According to Moore’s Law, the power of the server has doubled four times, and the server is 16 times more powerful than the original computer! Even if they are on the five-year model, and have only swapped servers once, they now own a machine that is eight times faster than the first server.

TABLE 1.2 Processor Speed Increases Over Six Years

Year	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010
Processor Speed	1x	2x	4x	4x	8x	16x
3-year plan			purchase			purchase
5-year plan					purchase	

In addition to faster CPUs and faster processing, newer servers usually have more memory, another benefit of Moore’s Law. The bottom line is that the replacement servers are considerably larger and much more powerful than the original server, which was already oversized for the workload it was handling.

The last item you need to understand here is that the server’s actual workload does not typically increase at the same rate as the server’s capabilities. That means that the headroom in the server also increased substantially. Although that performance safety net began somewhere in the 20 to 50 percent range, that

unused capacity after a server refresh or two could be well over 90 percent. Across a data center it was not uncommon to average about 10 to 15 percent utilization, but the distribution was often arranged so that a few servers had very high numbers while the large bulk of servers were actually less than 5 percent utilized. In other words, most CPUs sat around idle for 95 percent of the time, or more!

Understanding the Importance of Virtualization

This is where the two stories come together. There was a wild explosion of data centers overfilled with servers; but as time passed, in a combination of the effect of Moore's Law and the "one server, one application" model, those servers did less and less work. Fortunately, help was on the way in the form of virtualization. The idea and execution of virtualization was not new. It ran on IBM mainframes back in the early 1970s but was updated for modern computer systems. We'll come back to the specifics of virtualization in a moment, but in keeping with Popek and Goldberg's definition, virtualization allows many operating systems to run on the same server hardware at the same time, while keeping each virtual machine functionally isolated from all the others. The first commercially available solution to provide virtualization for x86 computers came from VMware in 2001.

A parallel open-source offering called Xen arrived two years later. These solutions (VMMs, or hypervisors) took the form of a layer of software that lived either between an operating system and the virtual machines (VMs) or was installed directly onto the hardware, or "bare-metal," just like a traditional operating system such as Windows or Linux. In the next chapter, we'll go into much more depth about hypervisors.

What virtualization brought to those overfull data centers and underutilized servers was the ability to condense multiple physical servers into one server that would run many virtual machines, allowing that physical server to run at a much higher rate of utilization. This condensing of servers is called *consolidation*, as illustrated in Figure 1.3. A measure of consolidation is called the *consolidation ratio* and is calculated by counting the number of VMs on a server—for example, a server that has eight VMs running on it has a consolidation ratio of 8:1. Consolidation was a boon to beleaguered data centers and operations managers because it solved a number of crucial problems just when a critical threshold had been reached. Even a modest consolidation ratio of 4:1 could remove three-quarters of the servers in a data center.



The moniker x86 refers to the processor architecture originally based on Intel's 8086 CPU and subsequent chip generations that ended in "86." Other vendors now also produce processors with this architecture.

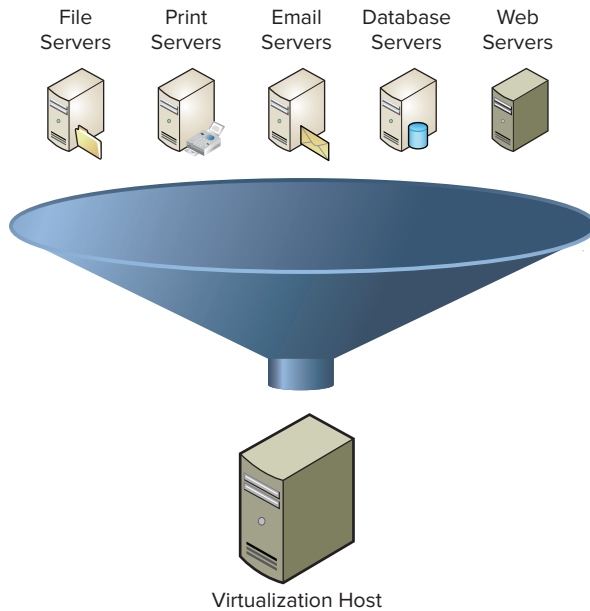


FIGURE 1.3 Server consolidation

In larger data centers, where hundreds or even thousands of servers were housed, virtualization provided a way to decommission a large portion of servers. This reduced the overall footprint of a data center, reduced the power and cooling requirements, and removed the necessity to add to or construct additional data centers. By extension, with fewer servers, it reduced a company's hardware maintenance costs and reduced the time system administrators took to perform many other routine tasks.

CONSOLIDATION DRIVES DOWN COSTS

Many studies show that the total cost of ownership for an individual server is somewhere between 3 and 10 times the cost of the server itself over three years. In other words, if a server costs \$5,000, the cost of maintaining that server is at least another \$5,000 per year. Over three years, that is \$20,000 per server (the initial hardware spend plus three years of maintenance costs). Those ownership costs include software, annual software and hardware maintenance, power, cooling, cables, people costs, and more. So in this example, for every hundred servers the company can consolidate, it can save two million dollars the first year and every year afterward.

Aside from consolidation, a second development took place. As companies began to see the benefits of virtualization, they no longer purchased new hardware when their leases were over, or if they owned the equipment, when their hardware maintenance licenses expired. Instead, they virtualized those server workloads. This is called *containment*. Containment benefited corporations in multiple ways. They no longer had to refresh large amounts of hardware year after year; and all the costs of managing and maintaining those servers—power, cooling, etc.—were removed from their bottom line from that time on. Until the time when virtualization became commercially viable, Moore's Law worked against the existing application/server/data center model; after it became feasible, it actually helped. The consolidation ratios of the first generation of x86 hypervisors were in the range of 5:1. As time continued to pass, more powerful chips and larger memory enabled much higher consolidation ratios, where a single physical server could host dozens or hundreds of VMs. Instead of removing three out of four servers, virtualization today can comfortably remove nine out of ten; or with sufficiently configured servers, ninety-nine out of a hundred. As a result, most corporate data centers have reclaimed much of the space that they had lost before virtualization.

VIRTUAL SERVERS NOW OUTNUMBER PHYSICAL SERVERS

IDC reported that in 2009, more virtual servers were deployed than physical servers. They predicted that while physical server deployment would remain relatively static over the following five years, virtual machine deployment would double the physical deployments at the end of that span.

Examining Today's Trends

Consolidation and containment are just two of the many examples of how virtualization enhances traditional server usage that we will cover. They are also the two that most analyses deal with because they are the easiest to quantify from a financial standpoint—remove or significantly diminish the associated hardware cost from your budget, and your bottom line will be directly impacted. We'll introduce some of those other examples now and examine them more closely later in the book.

As virtualization takes hold in an organization, its progress takes a very predictable course. The initial beachhead is in infrastructure services and in older servers, two areas where server management and cost issues are typically most

acute. Infrastructure servers deliver an organization's technology plumbing in the form of print services, file servers, and domain services. These servers are critical to the day-to-day business but often run on less reliable, less expensive hardware than the tier-one applications that drive the business. Older servers are also a concern. Data centers frequently host applications that do not run on newer operating systems—for example, a seven-year-old Windows NT system running a custom-built analytics system continues to run on its original hardware, which may be obsolete and no longer reliable or even serviceable. A company can also have applications that it no longer knows how to manage (don't laugh, it happens)—the vendor is no longer in business or their internal expert is no longer with the company, but the application runs, so they just hope it will continue to do so. Virtualization, as you will see, makes these applications much more available, scalable, and manageable than they ever were on physical servers, and for less cost as well.

Once the infrastructure services are virtualized and an organization starts to reap some of the fiscal benefits of their new strategy, an active program is put in place to move to the next level. As servers come off their leases, those workloads are migrated to the growing infrastructure. Companies usually adopt virtualization-first policies, which state that as new projects come in house, any server requirements will be satisfied by the virtual resources, rather than by paying for new physical resources. Actual hardware will be purchased only if it can be proven that the need cannot be satisfied with the virtual environment. Right behind the infrastructure services are the test and development servers. For every production application that a corporation runs, there are somewhere between 2 and 10 times as many servers in the data center that support that application. Tier-one applications require many environments for new update testing, quality and assurance tests, user acceptance testing, problem resolution environments, performance tuning, and more. Moving these systems to the virtual infrastructure, aside from again saving costs through consolidation, gives developers and application owners greater flexibility in how they can manage their processes. Preconfigured templates allow them to rapidly deploy new servers in minutes rather than in the weeks it would have taken prior to the change.

At this point, an organization's infrastructure is somewhere between 50 and 75 percent virtualized, at least on the x86 platforms that run their Windows and Linux servers. They have built up expertise and confidence in the virtualization technologies and are still looking to take even further advantage of virtualization. From here companies go in a number of different directions, often simultaneously.

Larger applications often require larger hardware and specialized operating systems to run that hardware. Databases, for example, run on a variety of UNIX

systems, each with a vendor-specific version. Sun servers run Solaris, HP servers run HP/UX, and IBM servers run AIX. Companies invest large sums of money for this proprietary hardware, and just as much time and effort in training their people to work with these open but also proprietary operating systems. But again, Moore's Law is working in their favor. In the past, an x86 platform would not be powerful or reliable enough to run this mission-critical type of workload; today that is no longer true. There are almost no workloads today that cannot be run in a virtual environment due to performance limitations. Linux, which is an open source flavor of UNIX, can run the same application software as the vendor-specific hardware and software combinations. Although we'll focus mostly on Microsoft Windows, Linux can also be easily virtualized, and that is leading many companies to migrate these critical workloads to a more flexible, less expensive, and often more available environment.

As we touched on earlier, virtual servers are encapsulated systems, essentially just a set of files that can be copied and moved like any other files. As Internet computing has evolved, availability has become crucial, whether it is maintaining 24/7 operations through enhanced software and features, or *disaster recovery* capabilities (restoring operations after an interruption). Virtualization enables availability in a number of ways. Virtual machines can be moved from one physical host to another without interruption. Instead of scheduling application downtime for a physical host to do maintenance, the workload can be moved to another host, the physical work done on the server, and the workload returned, all without interrupting the users. With Linux and newer versions of Microsoft Windows, you can add additional resources, processors, and memory to a virtual machine without having to reboot the operating system. This ability allows an administrator to resolve resource shortages without impacting application uptime. By replicating the files that comprise a server to a secondary site, in the event of an environmental disaster, such as a hurricane or flood, the entire data center can be restored in a matter of hours or even minutes, instead of the days or weeks it would have taken previously. These are just a few examples of the increased availability virtualization provides.

Finally, the remaining physical servers are addressed. These are the ones that run the *tier-one applications*, strategic business applications that give each company its competitive advantage. They take the form of email services such as Microsoft Exchange or Lotus Notes, database servers such as Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or MySQL, enterprise business applications such as SAP, business intelligence and analytics systems such as SAS, hospital healthcare applications, financial services applications, custom-built JAVA applications, and on and on. Because the health and well-being of these applications directly affect a company's profitability, administrator and application owners are hesitant to make

changes to a time-proven environment or methodology, even if it has flaws. But after working with virtualized servers in test, development, and QA environments, they are comfortable enough to virtualize these remaining workloads.

Moving to an entirely virtualized platform provides enterprises a much greater degree of availability, agility, flexibility, and manageability than they could have in a solely physical environment. You will find out more about many of the capabilities of virtual machines and what a virtual environment can provide throughout this text, but one large benefit of virtualization is that it provides the foundation for the next phase of data center evolution: cloud computing.

Virtualization and Cloud Computing

Five years ago, if you said the words “cloud computing,” very few people would have had any idea what you were talking about. Today it would be difficult to find someone who is engaged in the worldwide business or consumer markets who has not heard the term *cloud computing*. Much like the rush to the Internet during the mid-to-late 1990s and early 2000s, many of today’s companies are working on cloud enablement for their offerings. Mirroring their actions during the dot-com boom, consumer services are also making the move to the cloud. Apple for example, recently offered the iCloud where you can store your music, pictures, books, and other digital possessions and then access them from anywhere. Other companies, such as Microsoft, Amazon, and Google are offering similar cloud-based services. Rather than define the cloud, which would be outside the scope of this text, let’s look at what the cloud is providing: a simple method for accessing and utilizing resources.

Virtualization is the engine that will drive cloud computing by turning the data center—what used to be a hands-on, people-intensive process—into a self-managing, highly scalable, highly available, pool of easily consumable resources. Before virtualization, system administrators spent 70 percent or more of their time on routine functions and reacting to problems, which left little time for innovation or growth. Virtualization and, by extension, cloud computing provide greater automation opportunities that reduce administrative costs and increase a company’s ability to dynamically deploy solutions. By being able to abstract the physical layer away from the actual hardware, cloud computing creates the concept of a virtual data center, a construct that contains everything a physical data center would. This virtual data center, deployed in the cloud, offers resources on an as-needed basis, much like a power company provides electricity. In short, these new models of computing will dramatically simplify the delivery of new applications and allow companies to accelerate their deployments without sacrificing scalability, resiliency, or availability.

Understanding Virtualization Software Operation

Although we've spent the bulk of our time discussing server virtualization and it will be our focus throughout the remainder of the text, there are other methods and areas of virtualization. Personal computers are changing into tablets and thin clients, but the applications that run on PCs still need to be offered to users. One way to achieve this is desktop virtualization. Those applications can also be virtualized, packaged up, and delivered to users. Virtualization is even being pushed down to the other mobile devices such as smart phones.

Virtualizing Servers

The model for server virtualization, as you saw earlier, is comprised of physical hardware augmented by two key software solutions. The hypervisor abstracts the physical layer and presents this abstraction for virtualized servers or virtual machines to use. A hypervisor is installed directly onto a server, without any operating system between it and the physical devices. Virtual machines are then *instantiated*, or booted. From the virtual machine's view, it can see and work with a number of hardware resources. The hypervisor becomes the interface between the hardware devices on the physical server and the virtual devices of the virtual machines. The hypervisor presents only some subset of the physical resources to each individual virtual machine and handles the actual I/O from VM to physical device and back again. Hypervisors do more than just provide a platform for running VMs; they enable enhanced availability features and create new and better ways for provisioning and management as well.

While hypervisors are the foundations of virtual environments, virtual machines are the engines that power the applications. Virtual machines contain everything that their physical counterparts do (operating systems, applications, network connections, access to storage, and other necessary resources) but packaged in a set of data files. This packaging makes virtual machines much more flexible and manageable through the use of the traditional file properties in a new way. Virtual machines can be cloned, upgraded, and even moved from place to place, without ever having to disrupt the user applications. We will focus exclusively on hypervisors in Chapter 2 and look closer at virtual machines in Chapter 3.

Virtualizing Desktops


Just as virtualization has changed the model of how traditional server computing is being managed today, virtualization has moved into the desktop

computing model as well. Desktop computing for companies is expensive and inefficient on many fronts. It requires staffs of people to handle software update rollouts and patching processes, not to mention hardware support and help desk staffing. Virtual desktops run on servers in the datacenter; these servers are much more powerful and reliable hardware than traditional PCs. The applications that users connect to are also in the data center running on servers right next door, if you will, so all of the network traffic that previously had to go back and forth to the data center, no longer needs to, which greatly reduces network traffic and extends network resources.

Virtual desktops are accessed through thin clients, or other devices, many of which are more reliable and less expensive than PCs. Thin clients have life spans of 7 to 10 years so can be refreshed less frequently. They also only use between 5 and 10 percent of the electricity of a PC. In large companies, those costs add up quickly. If a thin client does break, a user can replace it himself, instead of relying on a specialized hardware engineer to replace it. The virtual desktop where all of the data is kept has not been affected by the hardware failure. In fact, the data no longer leaves the data center, so the risk that a lost or stolen device will cause security issues is also reduced.

That data is now managed and backed up by a professional, instead of an unsophisticated or indifferent user. Creating desktop images as virtual machines brings some of the cost savings of server virtualization but really shines on the desktop management side. A desktop administrator can create and manage fewer images that are shared among hundreds of people. Patches can be applied to these images and are guaranteed to reach a user, whereas that is not always the case with a physical desktop. In the event that a rolled-out patch or other software changes breaks an application, an administrator can direct users back to the original image, and a simple logout and login will return them to a functional desktop.

One of the biggest differences comes in the area of security. Today PCs routinely have antivirus software applications that help protect their data from malware and more. Virtualization allows new methods of protection. Rather than just loading the malware software on individual virtual desktops, there are now virtual appliances, specifically designed virtual machines that reside in each host and protect all of the virtual desktops that run there. This new model reduces the overall I/O and processor usage by downloading new definitions once instead of individually by guest. This is an area of rapid change and growth at the moment, and it looks to continue that way as new user devices become more common.



Two popular solutions for desktop virtualization are Citrix's XenDesktop and VMware's View. There are also many others that provide desktops using various combinations of hardware and software.

Virtualizing Applications

Computer programs, or applications, can also be virtualized. Like both server and desktop virtualization, there are a number of different solutions for this problem. There are two main reasons for application virtualization; the first is ease of deployment. Think about the number of programs you have on your PC. Some companies must manage hundreds or even thousands of different applications. Every time a new version of each of those applications is available, the company, if it decides to upgrade to that newer version, has to push out a copy to all of its PCs. For one or a small number of computers, this may be a relatively trivial task. But how would you do this to a hundred PCs? Or a thousand? Or ten thousand? Corporate IT staffs have tools that help manage and automate this task to happen repeatedly and reliably.

The second reason has to do with how different applications interact with each other. Have you ever loaded or updated an application that broke some functionality that had been working just fine? It is difficult to know how an upgrade to one solution may affect other applications. Even simple upgrades such as Adobe Acrobat Reader or Mozilla Firefox can become problematic. Some types of application virtualization can mitigate or even prevent this issue by encapsulating the entire program and process. Many application virtualization strategies and solutions are currently available. This is a rapidly evolving area with new use cases appearing regularly, especially in conjunction with mobile devices such as smart phones and tablets.

Some popular application virtualization solutions are Microsoft's App-V, Citrix's Application Streaming, and VMware's ThinApp. Each solution approaches the problem differently but is effective.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Server virtualization is a disruptive technology that allows many logical computers to run on a single physical server. Extreme server population growth driven by application deployment practices, the spread of Microsoft Windows, and Moore's Law have placed physical resource and financial constraints on most of the world's corporations. Virtualization is not a new concept, but was redeveloped and helped relieve those stresses on data centers through server consolidation and containment. Many of the characteristics that server virtualization provides, such as increased availability and scalability, are providing the foundation for corporations as they move to cloud computing.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- Using Moore's Law, calculate how much faster processors are today than they were in year 2000. Calculate how much faster processors will be 10 years from now.

(Continues)

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND *(Continued)*

- ▶ Using the Internet, discover how many different types of server virtualization are publicly available. How many separate architectures are represented in what you found?
- ▶ At what minimum amount of servers does it make sense to virtualize a data center? Will the cost savings and soft cost savings (such as increased manageability and availability) outweigh the initial cost of virtualization, cost of education, and effort to effect the change?

Understanding Hypervisors

In this chapter, you will learn what a hypervisor is, take a closer look at its beginnings more than forty years ago on mainframe computers, and trace its history. You will examine the different hypervisor types, get a better understanding of what they do, and then compare some of the modern hypervisors that are available today.

- ▶ **Describing a hypervisor**
- ▶ **Understanding the role of a hypervisor**
- ▶ **Comparing today's hypervisors**

Describing a Hypervisor

The original virtual machine monitor (VMM) was created to solve a specific problem, but VMMs have evolved into something quite different. The term *virtual machine manager* has fallen out of favor and has been replaced with the term *hypervisor*. Today's hypervisors allow us to make better use of the ever-faster processors that regularly appear in the commercial market and more efficient use of the larger and denser memory offerings that come along with those newer processors. The hypervisor is a layer of software that resides below the virtual machines and above the hardware. Figure 2.1 illustrates where the hypervisor resides.

Without a hypervisor, an operating system communicates directly with the hardware beneath it. Disk operations go directly to the disk subsystem, and memory calls are fetched directly from the physical memory. Without a hypervisor, more than one operating system from multiple virtual machines would want simultaneous control of the hardware, which would result in chaos. The hypervisor manages the interactions between each virtual machine and the hardware that the guests all share.

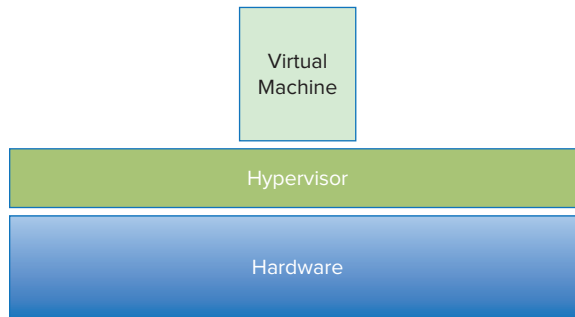


FIGURE 2.1 Where the hypervisor resides

Exploring the History of Hypervisors

You learned earlier that the first virtualization was performed on IBM mainframes. The code that was developed solved a particular issue by managing available memory resources more effectively and that code is an ancestor to the much more sophisticated descendants we rely on today. In fact, though our focus will not be around the mainframe at all, virtualization technology has been available on those platforms since the 1970s, has been highly developed, and continues to be used to this day.

The first virtual machine monitors were used for the development and debugging of operating systems because they provided a sandbox for programmers to test rapidly and repeatedly, without using all of the resources of the hardware. Soon they added the ability to run multiple environments concurrently, carving the hardware resources into virtual servers that could each run its own operating system. This model is what evolved into today's hypervisors.

WHY CALL IT A “HYPERVISOR”?

Initially, the problem that the engineers were trying to solve was one of resource allocation, trying to utilize areas of memory that were not normally accessible to programmers. The code they produced was successful and was dubbed a hypervisor because, at the time, operating systems were called supervisors and this code could supersede them.

Twenty years passed before virtualization made any significant move from the mainframe environment. In the 1990s researchers began investigating the possibility of building a commercially affordable version of a VMM. One large limitation of the mainframes was that they were very expensive when compared to a minicomputer. Providing virtualization atop affordable industry standard hardware would be considerably more cost effective for most businesses. The other half of the challenge was creating a solution that would run a guest operating without any modifications. This was crucial because modifications would open the possibility that a virtual machine was not essentially identical to its physical counterpart, which meant that solutions designed in the virtual environment would not necessarily translate to the physical environment 100 percent of the time, leading to additional complexity in an application's life cycle.

The structure of a VMM is fairly simple. It consists of a layer of software that lives in between the hardware, or *host*, and the virtual machines that it supports. These virtual machines, which you will learn more about in the next chapter, are also called *guests*. Figure 2.2 is a simple illustration of the Virtual Machine Monitor architecture.

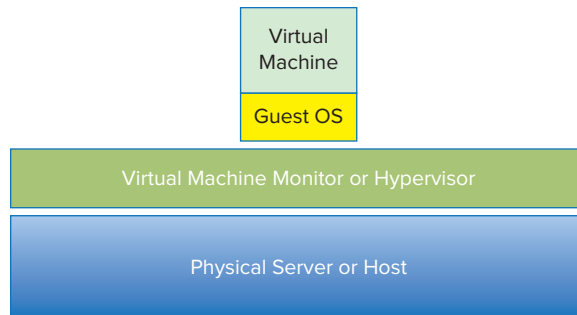


FIGURE 2.2 A virtual machine monitor

There are two classes of hypervisors, and their names, Type 1 and Type 2, give no clue at all to their differences. The only item of note between them is how they are deployed, but it is enough of a variance to point out.

Understanding Type 1 Hypervisors

Type 1 hypervisors run directly on the server hardware without an operating system beneath it. Because there is no intervening layer between the

hypervisor and the physical hardware, this is also referred to as a *bare-metal* implementation. Without an intermediary, the Type 1 hypervisor can directly communicate with the hardware resources in the stack below it, making it much more efficient than the Type 2 hypervisor. Figure 2.3 illustrates a simple architecture of a Type 1 hypervisor.

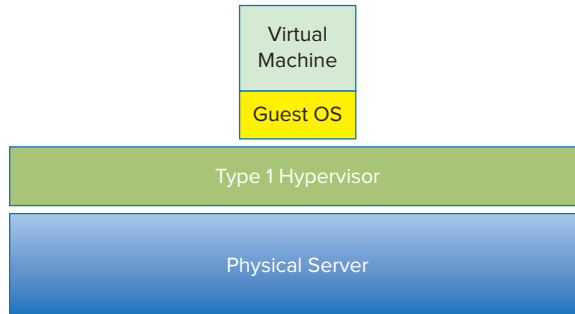


FIGURE 2.3 A Type 1 hypervisor

Aside from having better performance characteristics, Type 1 hypervisors are also considered to be more secure than Type 2 hypervisors. Guest operations are handed off and, as such, a guest cannot affect the hypervisor on which it is supported. A virtual machine can damage only itself, causing a single guest crash, but that event does not escape the boundaries of the VM container. Other guests continue processing, and the hypervisor is unaffected as well. A malicious guest, where code is deliberately trying to interfere with the hypervisor or the other guests, would be unable to do so. Figure 2.4 illustrates a guest failure in a Type 1 hypervisor.

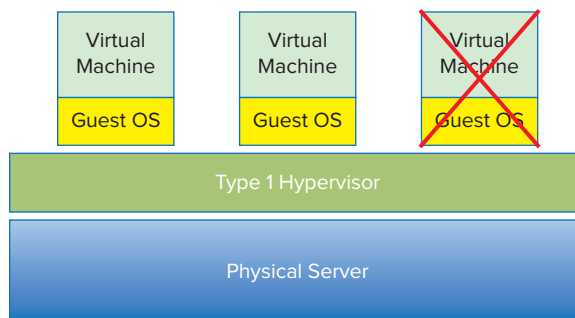


FIGURE 2.4 A guest failure

Less processing overhead is required for a Type 1 hypervisor, which means that more virtual machines can be run on each host. From a pure financial standpoint, a Type 1 hypervisor would not require the cost of a host operating system, although from a practical standpoint, the discussion would be much more complex and involve all of the components and facets that comprise a total cost of ownership calculation.

Examples of Type 1 hypervisors include VMware ESX, Microsoft Hyper-V, and the many Xen variants.

Understanding Type 2 Hypervisors

A Type 2 hypervisor itself is an application that runs atop a traditional operating system. The first x86 offerings were Type 2 because that was the quickest path to market—the actual operating system already handled all of the hardware resources and the hypervisor would leverage that capability. Figure 2.5 illustrates a Type 2 hypervisor.

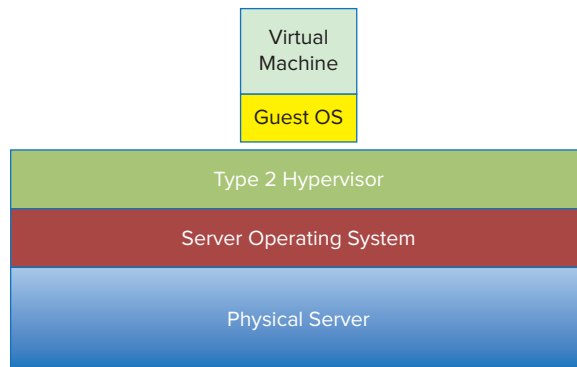


FIGURE 2.5 A Type 2 hypervisor

One benefit of this model is that it can support a large range of hardware because that is inherited from the operating system it uses. Often Type 2 hypervisors are easy to install and deploy because much of the hardware configuration work, such as networking and storage, has already been covered by the operating system.

Type 2 hypervisors are not as efficient as Type 1 hypervisors because of this extra layer between the hypervisor itself and the hardware. Every time a virtual machine performs a disk read, a network operation, or any other hardware interaction, it hands that request off to the hypervisor, just as in a Type 1 hypervisor environment. Unlike that environment, the Type 2 hypervisor must then itself hand off the request to the operating system, which handles the I/O requests. The operating system passes the information back to the hypervisor

▶
VMware Player, VMware Workstation, and Microsoft Virtual Server are examples of Type 2 hypervisors.

and then back to the guest, adding two additional steps, time, and processing overhead, to every transaction.

Type 2 hypervisors are also less reliable because there are more points of failure: anything that affects the availability of the underlying operating system also can impact the hypervisor and the guests it supports. For example, standard operating system patches that require a system reboot would also force reboots of all the virtual machines on that host.

Understanding the Role of a Hypervisor

The explanation of a hypervisor up to this point has been fairly simple: it is a layer of software that sits between the hardware and the one or more virtual machines that it supports. Its job is also fairly simple. The three characteristics defined by Popek and Goldberg illustrate these tasks:

- ▶ Provide an environment identical to the physical environment
- ▶ Provide that environment with minimal performance cost
- ▶ Retain complete control of the system resources

Holodecks and Traffic Cops

In order for many guests to share the physical resources of a host, two things must happen. The first thing is that from the guest's perspective, it has to see and have access to the various hardware resources it needs to function properly. The operating system in the guest should be able to use disk drives, access memory, make network calls, or at least believe that it can. This is where the hypervisor steps in.

Let's use a quick analogy and go back to the virtual reality technology you've seen in films and television. If the technology is sophisticated enough, and can provide the user with a realistic and accurate enough presentation of reality, that user will not be able to distinguish between reality and the virtual reality. In other words, if you were knocked out and you woke up inside of one of the holodecks on the Starship Enterprise, you might not realize that you were actually in a holodeck. From the perspective of a guest operating system, this is what a hypervisor does: it fools the guest into believing that it can actually see and directly interact with the physical devices of the host. This hardware abstraction is illustrated in Figure 2.6.

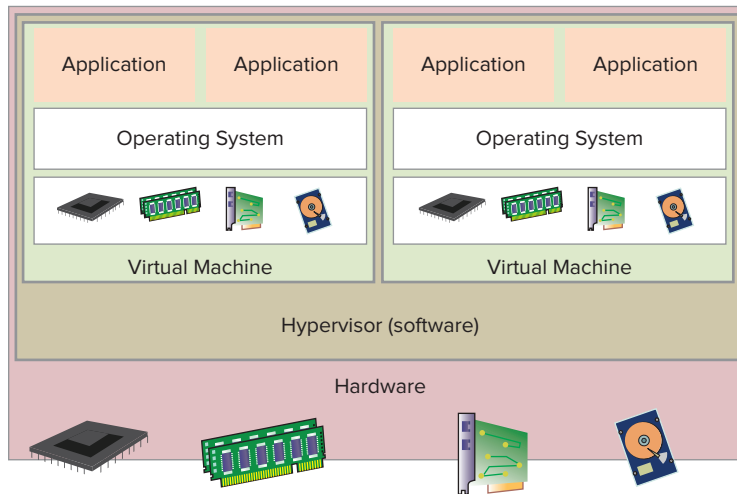


FIGURE 2.6 Abstracting hardware from the guests

In actuality, each guest is presented only with a fraction of the resources of the physical host. A host may have 64 GB of physical memory installed in its frame, but a guest may believe that it has 4 GB. A guest may be writing files to a 250 GB D: drive, but actually be working with a portion of a file system on a much larger storage area network. Processing and network resources work similarly: a guest may have two virtual CPUs and access to a single Network Interface Card (NIC), but the physical host will have many more of both.

The second thing that needs to occur is that the hypervisor not only has to abstract the hardware from each of the virtual guests, but it also needs to balance that workload. Each guest makes constant demands on the various resource subsystems. The hypervisor must service all of those demands by acting as an intermediary between each guest and the physical devices, but also do so in a way that provides timely and adequate resources to all. In that way, the hypervisor acts like a traffic cop, controlling the flow of vehicles so that no one has to wait too long in any one direction and all the roads are used fairly.

Resource Allocation

In a way, a hypervisor has become an operating system of sorts for the hardware, but instead of dealing with application/program requests, the hypervisor services entire (virtual) servers. Figure 2.7 shows how an I/O operation is processed. A guest application calls for a disk read and passes that

request to the guest operating system. The guest operating system makes a read to the disk that it sees. Here, the hypervisor steps in and traps that call and translates it into a real-world physical equivalent and passes it to the storage subsystem. When the response returns, the hypervisor passes the data back to the guest operating system, which receives it as if it came directly from the physical device.

Not only does the hypervisor handle all of the storage I/O requests from the guest, but the network I/O, memory processing, and CPU work as well. And it does this for all of the guests that are hosted on the physical server on which the hypervisor is running. The hypervisor has a resource scheduling process that insures all of the requested resources are serviced in a reasonable manner. Some hypervisors have options to prioritize guests so important applications can receive preferential treatment and not suffer performance degradation due to contention.

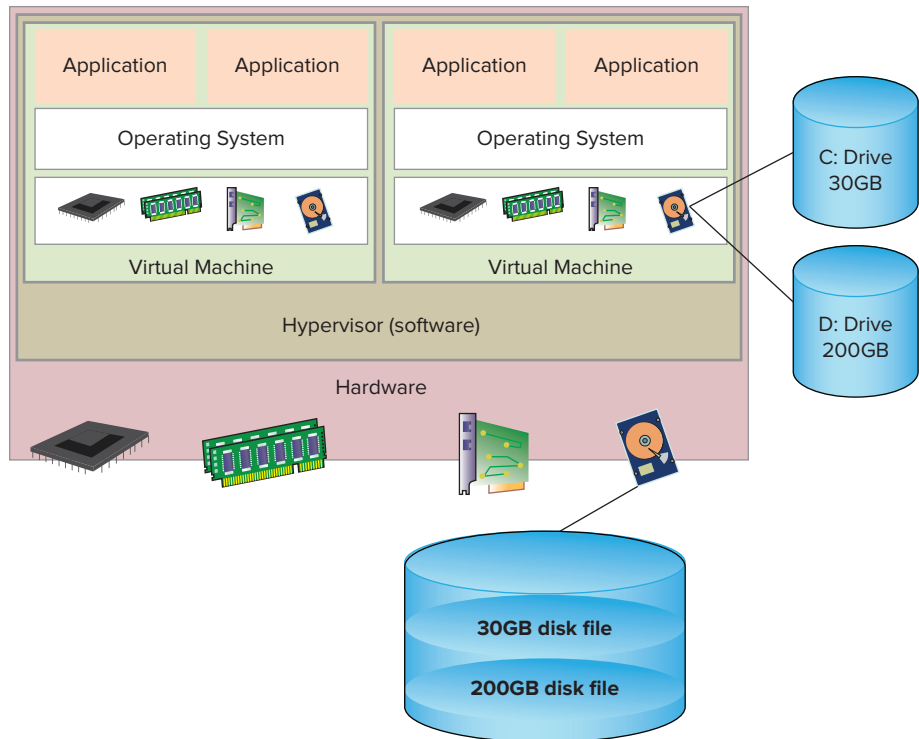


FIGURE 2.7 Processing a Guest I/O

As part of moving to a virtual infrastructure, this idea of managing and allocating system resources is critical when you determine what the configuration of physical hardware should be. The sum of the resources that all of the guests on the host consume needs to be available on that host. There should even be extra resources available, some to handle periodic performance spikes and growth and a little for the use of the hypervisor itself.

Comparing Today's Hypervisors

In the early days of the personal computer, there were many choices of operating system; today, there are many solutions available to choose from for a virtualization strategy. Similar to the original mainframe solution, there are vendor- and operating system-specific solutions that allow users to carve up a single operating system-specific environment into multiple secure environments. Some examples of these are Sun (now owned by Oracle) Solaris Zones, BSD jails in FreeBSD, HP-UX Containers, and PowerVM on IBM AIX. There are other solutions, such as Parallels Virtuozzo that virtualizes an operating system that all the guests can share.

Because this text focuses on x86 server virtualization rather than some of the other technologies, that is where we will focus as well. Much of the initial shake-out of competitors has already occurred, narrowing the range of choices to a select few. As of this writing, the three solutions discussed in this section represent close to 100 percent of the server virtualization market share. The goal of this comparison is to highlight some of the strengths and differences between the solutions, rather than to come to conclusions about which is superior. As you will see, different opportunities often have different solutions.

VMware ESX

Founded in 1998, VMware was the first company to develop a commercially available x86 virtualization solution. The following year, the company released their first product, Workstation 1.0, which allowed developers to create and work with virtual machines on their Windows or Linux desktops. Two years after that, in 2001, both ESX 1.0 and GSX 1.0 were released. ESX was a Type 1 hypervisor and GSX was a Type 2 hypervisor. Both solutions are still around today and are still being enhanced and updated. GSX, though, has been renamed to VMware Server and is available to download at no cost.

WHICH IS IT, ESX OR ESXi?

The original architecture of ESX was made up of two parts, the actual hypervisor, which did the virtualization work, and a Linux-based console module that sat alongside the hypervisor and acted as a management interface to the hypervisor. VMware decided that this model was not sustainable for two reasons. The first was that the service console was roughly thirty times the size of the hypervisor—in ESX 3.5, for example, the hypervisor was about 32 MB, while the service console required closer to 900 MB. The second reason was security. Linux is a well-understood environment and there was concern that the hypervisor could be compromised through the service console. ESXi was developed as the same hypervisor core, but without the service console. The hypervisor is managed through a command-line interface (CLI) and has been re-architected to allow third-party integrations that had been done through agents in the service console. VMware released two versions, classic ESX and ESXi, from version 3.5 in 2007 through version 4.1 in 2010. As of the 2011 release 5, only the ESXi architecture is available.

Market share is not always the best indicator of a solution’s viability and capability; however, ten years after ESX’s first appearance, according to Gartner, VMware still holds close to 85 percent of the market. VMware has done a good job of using their first-to-market advantage to develop features and capabilities that many of the other virtualization vendors are still trying to replicate. We’ll cover some of those features in a moment, but first let’s take a closer look at ESX. Figure 2.8 shows a simplified architecture of VMware ESXi.

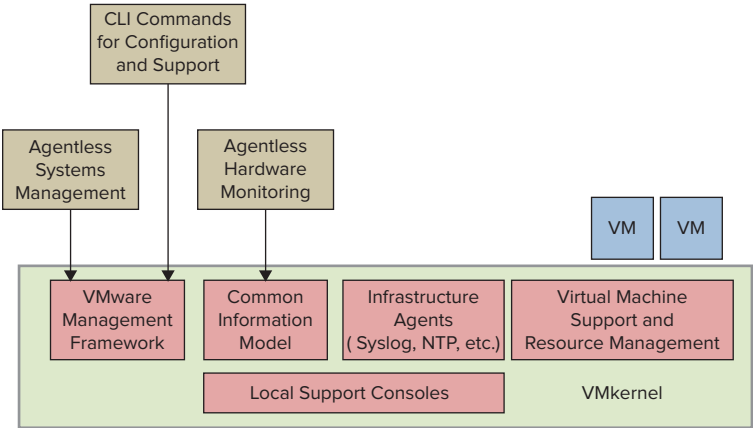


FIGURE 2.8 The ESX architecture


The vmkernel contains all of the necessary processes to support virtual machines and manage the hardware and availability resources. In addition, infrastructure services, such as time keeping and logging, integrations with VMware's management tools, and other authorized third-party modules, such as hardware drivers and hardware monitoring tools, can also run in the vmkernel. This model is one of the largest differences between VMware and many of the other solutions.

Being first to the game has also allowed VMware to develop and mature features and capabilities that are either rudimentary in competitive solutions or not available at all. VMotion, introduced in 2003, allows the migration of a running virtual machine from one physical host to another physical host without interrupting the operating system or the applications running on that guest. Transparent page sharing and memory ballooning are just two of the features that facilitate efficient memory usage. High availability and fault tolerance provide enhanced up time for virtual machines without additional software solutions. These are just a few of the broad range of features that VMware ESX offers.

As you'll see, even though competitors are developing and now offering some of the core capabilities that ESX has, VMware continues to add to and enhance the core functionality of the ESX hypervisor in addition to offering a broad and powerful set of solutions around manageability, security, and availability.

Citrix Xen

The Xen hypervisor began as a research project in the late 1990s at the University of Cambridge, the goal of which was to create an efficient platform for distributed computing. In 2002 the code was made an open source project, allowing anyone to contribute to improving the features and capabilities. XenSource was founded in 2004 to bring the Xen hypervisor to market, but the open source project still remained open, as it does to this day. In 2005, Red Hat, Novell, and Sun all added the Xen hypervisor to their product offerings, bringing it to the mainstream. Two years later, Citrix Systems acquired XenSource to complement their application delivery solutions. Figure 2.9 provides a closer look at the Xen architecture.



There have been stories that ESX originally stood for Elastic Sky X and GSX stood for Ground Storm X, although they have been officially known only as ESX and GSX.

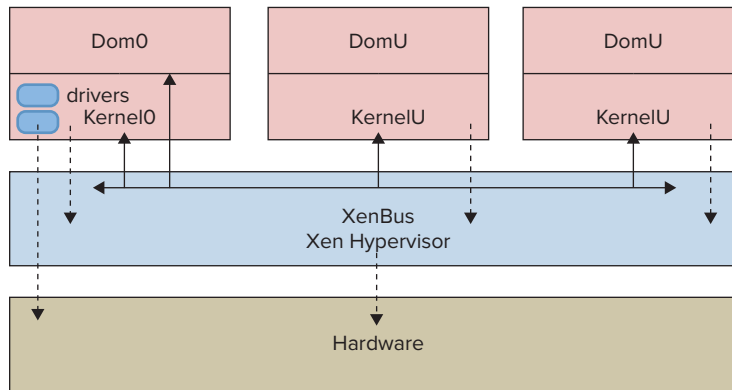


FIGURE 2.9 The Xen hypervisor architecture

The hypervisor is a bare-metal solution and sits directly on the hardware, but the implementation shows some differences from the VMware architecture. The Xen model has a special guest called Domain 0, also referred to as Dom0. This guest gets booted when the hypervisor is booted, and it has management privileges different from the other guests. Because it has direct access to the hardware, it handles all of the I/O for the individual guests. It also handles the hardware device driver support. When additional guests make requests of the underlying hardware resources, those requests go through the hypervisor, up to the Dom0 guest, and then to the resource. Results from those resources reverse that trip to return to the guests.

Having an operating system in the Dom0 guest can affect availability. When OS patching needs to occur, a reboot of Dom0 will interrupt all of the other guests, even if the patches were not related to the virtualization functions. Because Dom0 is also a guest, it consumes resources and contends for resources with the other guests in the system that could lead to performance issues if Dom0 is either short of resources or using guest resources.

Again, the point of this comparison is not to choose which solution is superior (for some people that discussion is akin to picking the Boston Red Sox or the New York Yankees) but rather to explain that there are numerous paths to solve a problem. If the solution you choose resolves whatever problems you had, then it is the correct option for you. As an open source solution, Xen, and by extension Citrix XenServer, has many proponents; however, as of this writing it has captured less than a 5 percent share of the commercial market, with many of those deployments coupled to their virtual desktop solutions.

Microsoft Hyper-V

Microsoft began in the virtualization space with Virtual Server in 2005, after they had acquired the solution from Connectix a few years earlier. Like GSX, Virtual Server was a Type-2 hypervisor, and it is still available today at no cost. Microsoft Hyper-V was released in 2008 as an installable part of the Windows Server 2008 Operating System. Figure 2.10 shows the architecture of Hyper-V.

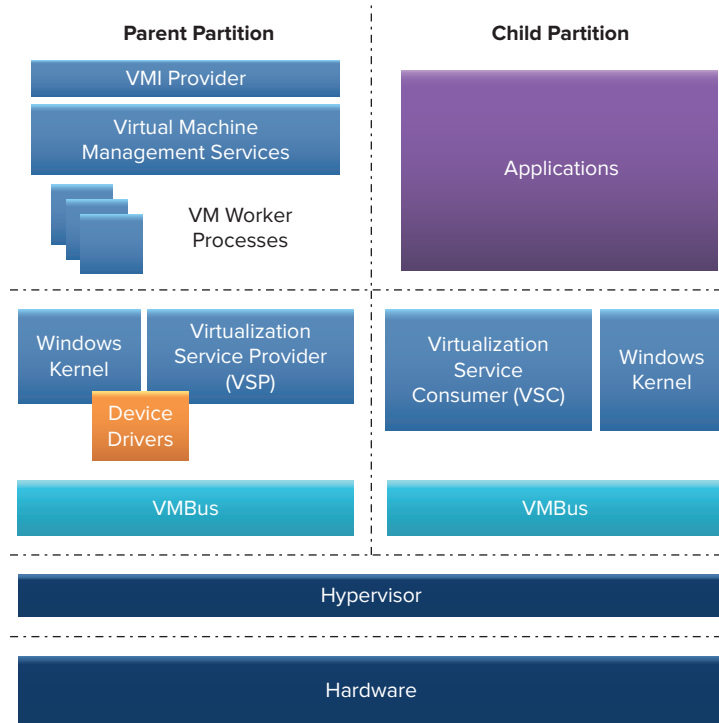


FIGURE 2.10 Microsoft Hyper-V architecture

Hyper-V is a Type 1 hypervisor because the hypervisor code lives directly on the hardware. The nomenclature is slightly different, though—rather than guests, the virtualized workloads are called *partitions*. Similar to the Xen model, it requires a special parent partition that has direct access to the hardware resources. Like Dom0, the parent partition runs an operating system—in this case, Windows Server 2008. This partition creates and manages the child partitions and handles the system management functions and device drivers. Because it utilizes a model similar to XenServer, it is subject to the same availability vulnerabilities regarding patching and contention.

Despite their relatively late entry into the virtualization space, Microsoft has about 10 percent of the market. Though still not at feature parity with some of the other solutions, Microsoft has used aggressive licensing and packaging policies in their user base to encourage Hyper-V adoption. It is a strategy that they have previously used well, in both the operating system and web browser solution areas.

Other Solutions

In addition to the previous three solutions, there are a large number of other virtualization vendors and solutions that as a group comprise, depending on whose numbers you follow, between 1 percent and 5 percent of the market. Most of the remaining solutions are based on the original open source Xen code and have been enhanced and updated by the various solution providers.

Oracle offers a number of solutions, both built and acquired. Introduced in 2007, Oracle VM is a bare-metal hypervisor that is based on the open source Xen code. In 2009, Oracle acquired Virtual Iron, another Xen-based hypervisor solution, with the intent to integrate the technology into the existing Oracle VM. Oracle's acquisition of Sun Microsystems in 2010 brought with it a number of additional virtualization solutions that Sun had developed or acquired as well, including the Solaris-specific Zones and the x86-oriented VirtualBox, a popular workbench tool for developers. VirtualBox has since been rebranded Oracle VM VirtualBox. The Oracle solutions have not gained mainstream traction, mostly due to their later entry into the market and the variety of solutions that is sometimes confusing to users. The users of these solutions are from strong Oracle shops.

Red Hat is another solution that has gone through a few different permutations over time. Initially, they also used the open source Xen code because it fit nicely with their business model of open source solutions. In 2008, Red Hat acquired Qumranet and their Kernel-based Virtual Machine (KVM) solution. KVM, like Linux itself, is also based on the open source project of the same name. The newest releases of Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) currently support both the KVM and Xen virtualization technologies. Red Hat has stated that KVM is their future direction, although Xen will be supported through at least 2014. Like Oracle, KVM usage has not yet acquired any significant following and is mostly limited to existing users of Red Hat itself.

In addition to these, there are about another dozen or so commercial x86-server virtualization solutions available today. The history of this particular software solution area, and other more mature areas in the past, indicates that many of these solution vendors will either be acquired by one of the market

leaders for their technical innovations or fail outright because of the lack of sustainable market share or sufficient financial backing. Whatever happens, it is an exciting time to be watching the birth, growth, and maturation of a significant technology that has changed and continues to change the IT industry.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Hypervisors are the glue of virtualization. They connect their virtual guests to the physical world, as well as load balance the resources they administer. Their main function is to abstract the physical devices and act as the intermediary on the guests' behalf by managing all I/O between guests and device. There are two main hypervisor implementations: with and without an additional operating system between it and the hardware. Both have their uses. The commercial virtualization market is currently a growth industry, so new and old solution providers have been vying for a significant share of the business. The winners will be well positioned to support the next iteration of data center computing, support content providers for consumer solutions, and become the foundation for cloud computing.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Using the Internet, find four different Type-2 hypervisor solutions. What differences do they have? Why would you choose one over another?
- ▶ Hypervisors for server virtualization are just one use for this technology. With microprocessors in many of today's smart devices, where else might a hypervisor and multiple guests be used?
- ▶ Corporations often have to balance wants and needs based on real-world constraints such as financial budgets and the experience of their personnel. How would you convince your manager who wanted a less-expensive, "good enough" virtualization solution to acquire a fuller featured solution that would cost more? How might you convince your manager who wanted to acquire a more expensive, fuller featured virtualization solution to save some money and acquire a "good enough" solution?

Understanding Virtual Machines

Virtual machines are the fundamental components of virtualization. They are the containers for traditional operating systems and applications that run on top of a hypervisor on a physical server. Inside a virtual machine, things seem very much like the inside of a physical server—but outside, things are very different. In this chapter, we will examine these differences, focus on how virtual machines work in relation to the physical machines they reside on, and take the initial steps in understanding how virtual machines are managed.

- ▶ **Describing a virtual machine**
- ▶ **Understanding how a virtual machine works**
- ▶ **Working with virtual machines**

Describing a Virtual Machine

A virtual machine, also referred to as a VM, has many of the same characteristics as a physical server. Like an actual server, a VM supports an operating system and is configured with a set of resources to which the applications running on the VM can request access. Unlike a physical server (where only one operating system runs at any one time and few, usually related, applications run), many VMs can run simultaneously inside a single physical server, and these VMs can also run many different operating systems supporting many different applications. Also, unlike a physical server, a VM is in actuality nothing more than a set of files that describes and comprises the virtual server.

The main files that make up a VM are the configuration file and the virtual disk files. The configuration file describes the resources that the VM can utilize: it enumerates the virtual hardware that makes up that particular VM. Figure 3.1 is a simplified illustration of a virtual machine. If you think of a virtual machine as an empty server, the configuration file lists which

hardware devices would be in that server: CPU, memory, storage, networking, CD drive, etc. In fact, as you will see when we build a new virtual machine, it is exactly like a server just off the factory line—some (virtual) iron waiting for software to give it direction and purpose. In Chapter 4, “Creating A Virtual Machine,” we will do exactly that.

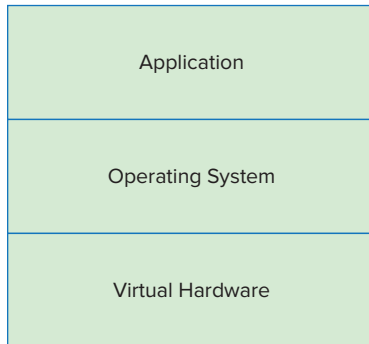


FIGURE 3.1 A virtual machine

Virtual machines have access to various hardware resources, but from their point of view, they don’t know that these devices are actually virtual. The virtual devices they deal with are standard devices—in other words, they are the same within each virtual machine, which makes them portable across various hardware platforms, virtualization solutions, or as you will see later in the chapter, across vendor solutions. In a virtual machine, as in a physical machine, you can configure various types and amounts of peripheral devices. The bulk of this text will cover how to configure and manage these devices. But the real key to understanding virtual machines is to understand that there are two different views of a VM: one from the inside and one from outside.

From outside the virtual machine, what you can see is the composition and configuration of the host server. Whether it is a laptop PC running VMware Fusion, Parallels Desktop, or VMware Workstation or it’s a full-fledged enterprise-class server from Dell, HP, IBM, or Cisco running VMware vSphere or Citrix XenServer; the resources to which you have access are all of the systems devices.

From inside a virtual machine, the view is identical to being inside a physical machine. From the operating system’s point of view, or an application’s point of view, storage, memory, network, and processing are all available for the asking. If you are running Windows and open up the various Control Panel utilities to

examine your system, you will find very little that would make you think twice. Storage devices, C: drives, D: drives, etc. are where they should be; network connections are visible and functional; and system services are running. There is some amount of memory in the server along with one or more CPUs, possibly a CD drive, monitor, keyboard, and maybe even a floppy drive. Everything looks just as it ought to, until you dig down and look at Windows Device Manager, as shown in Figure 3.2.

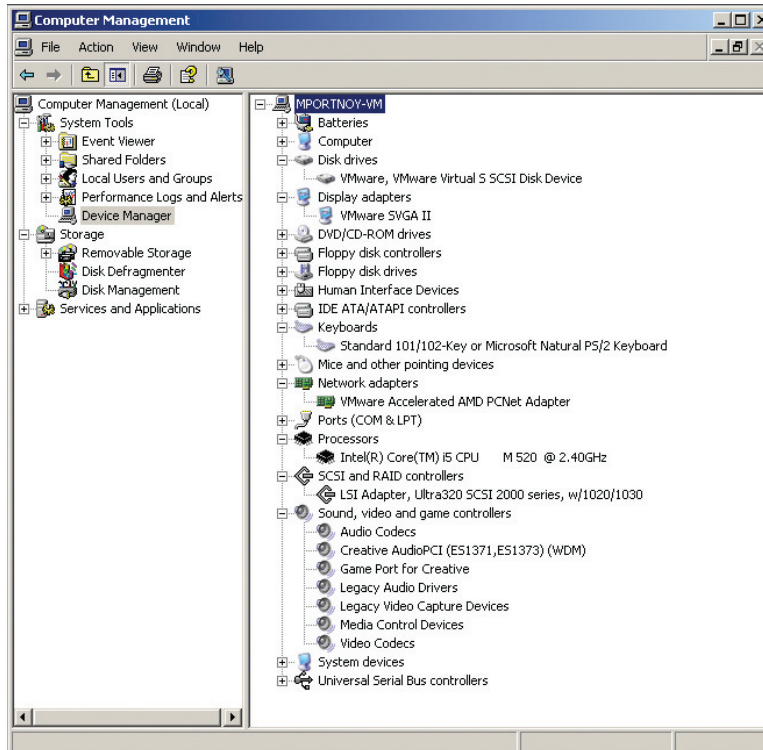


FIGURE 3.2 Windows Device Manager in a VM

Here you can see where real and virtual begin to diverge. Examining the network adapter and the storage adapter also reveals an industry standard device. The display adapter is not the same as your actual monitor. It is created as a standard device driver to be used on any monitor. The disk drives and the DVD/CD drives are also specialized virtual drivers. What happens is that the hypervisor underneath presents the virtual machines with generic resources to which

they connect. The specialized device drivers, which we'll examine closely in Chapter 5, "Installing Windows on a Virtual Machine," are added later to help optimize that connection.

When you're buying a new computer, whether it is a laptop or a server, one of your key decisions will be how it should be configured. VMs give you the capability and the flexibility to easily change that configuration without most of the constraints that the same changes would cause in a physical server.

Examining CPU in a Virtual Machine

Virtual machines are configured to run with one or more processors, depending on the anticipated demand on the system. In the simplest case, a VM will have one CPU and, as you saw earlier, if you examine the hardware from the VM's standpoint, you will see that only one CPU is available. From the host's standpoint, what has been assigned is the virtual machine's ability to schedule CPU cycles on the host's available CPUs. In this case, illustrated in Figure 3.3, the single CPU VM can schedule a single CPU's worth of capacity. The host does not reserve a CPU solely for the use of a particular VM; instead, when the VM needs processing resources, the hypervisor takes the request, schedules the operations, and passes the results back to the VM through the appropriate device driver.

It is important to remember that usually the host has many more CPUs available than any one VM, and that the hypervisor is scheduling time on those processors on behalf of the VMs, rather than a VM actually having a dedicated CPU. One of the main reasons for virtualization in the first place was to gain more efficient use of the resources through consolidation, and a dedicated CPU would defeat that purpose. On another quick note, most servers today have multiple socket CPUs, and each one of those sockets contains one or more cores. For our purposes, a VM looks at a core as a single virtual CPU. As you learn more about virtualization, you will see that it is possible to create multi-CPU, multicore VMs, but that is outside the scope of this text. You will learn more about managing and configuring processor resources in Chapter 7, "Managing CPU for a Virtual Machine."

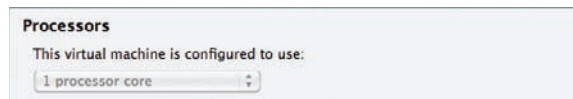


FIGURE 3.3 CPU settings in a VM

Examining Memory in a Virtual Machine

Memory, or RAM resources, is probably the simplest to understand in the virtual environment. Just as in a physical machine, having enough memory resources in a virtual machine is often the difference between success and failure when evaluating an application's performance. As shown in Figure 3.4, a virtual machine is allocated a specific amount of memory, and that is all that it can utilize, even though there might be orders of magnitude more memory available on the physical machine. Unlike physical machines, when a virtual machine requires more memory, you can merely reconfigure the amount and the VM will have access to the added capacity, sometimes without even needing a reboot. As with CPU utilization, vendors have added sophisticated memory management techniques to obtain the best use from the available physical memory. You will learn more about managing and configuring memory resources in Chapter 8, "Managing Memory for a Virtual Machine."

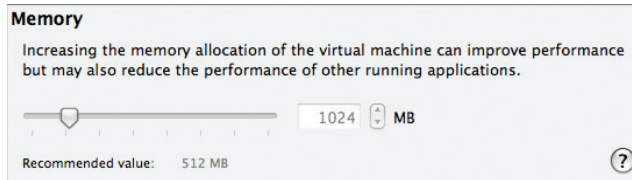


FIGURE 3.4 Memory settings in a VM

Examining Network Resources in a Virtual Machine

Like the physical counterpart, virtual networking provides a VM with a way to communicate with the physical world. Each virtual machine can be configured with one or more network interface cards, or NICs, that represent a connection to a network. These virtual NIC cards, however, don't connect with the physical NIC cards in the host system. The hypervisor supports the creation of a virtual network that connects the virtual NICs to a network that is composed of virtual switches. It is this virtual network that the physical NICs connect to, as shown in Figure 3.5.

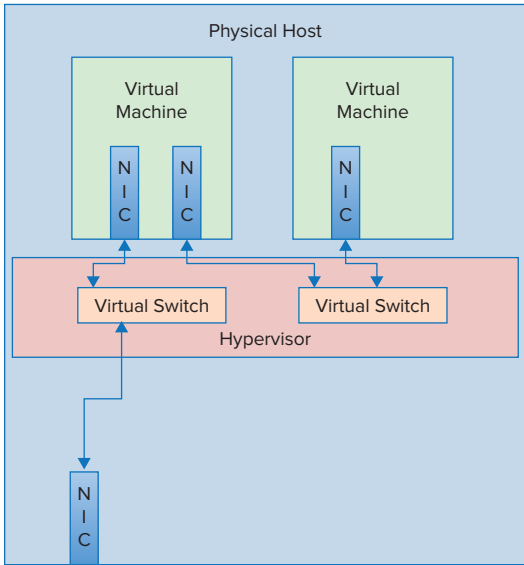


FIGURE 3.5 A simple virtual network

This virtual network is also a vital tool in creating secure environments for the virtual machines that share a host. From a security standpoint, VM-to-VM communications can occur across a virtual switch and never leave the physical host. If a second VM’s virtual NIC connects to a virtual switch, and that switch is not connected to a physical NIC, the only way to communicate with that VM is through the first VM, building a protective buffer between the outside world and that VM. If there were a third VM in the picture, unless it was connected to the same virtual switch, it too would have no way to access the protected VM. Figure 3.6 illustrates how the virtual network connects to the physical network. You will learn more about managing and configuring network resources in Chapter 9, “Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine.”



FIGURE 3.6 Network resources in a VM

Examining Storage in a Virtual Machine

Virtual servers need storage to work with, and like the resources you’ve seen so far, what gets presented to the virtual machine and what the virtual machine believes it is seeing are very different. As shown in Figure 3.7, a virtual machine running Windows will see a C: drive, a D: drive, and maybe many more. In actuality, those “drives” are merely carved out regions of disk space on a shared storage device, and the hypervisor manages the presentation to the VM.

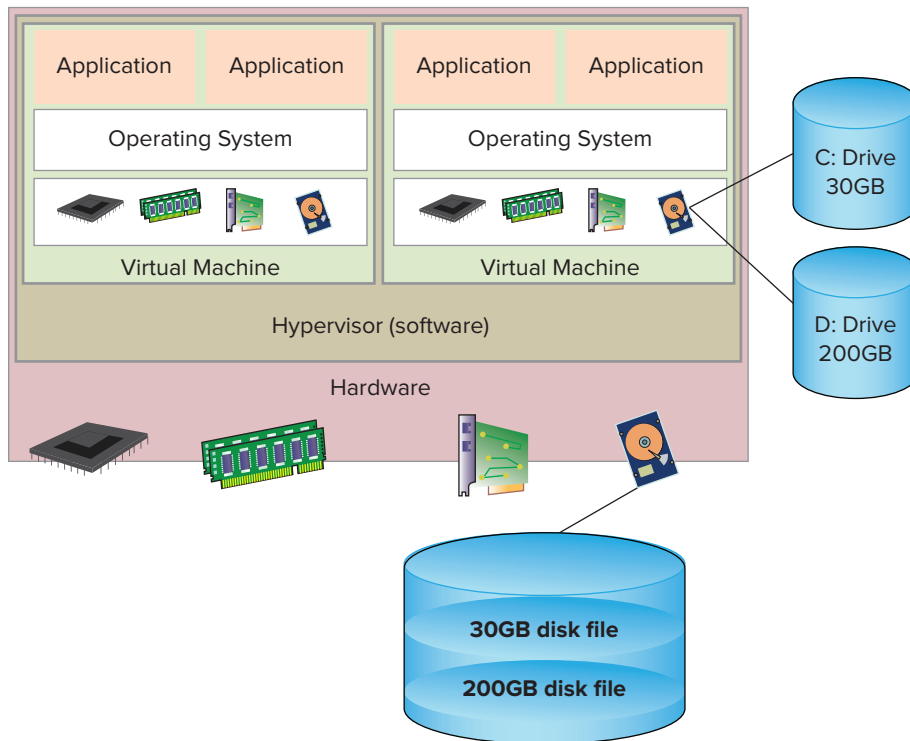


FIGURE 3.7 Virtual machine storage

Figure 3.8 illustrates the virtual machine’s view of storage resources. As a virtual machine talks to a virtual SCSI disk adapter, the hypervisor passes data blocks to and from the physical storage. That actual connection, from the host to the storage, whether it is local storage on the host or on a storage area network (SAN), is abstracted from the virtual machines. Virtual machines usually don’t have to worry about whether they are connected to their storage resources via

fibre channel, iSCSI, or Network File System (NFS) because that is configured and managed at the host. You will learn more about managing and configuring storage resources in Chapter 10, “Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine.”

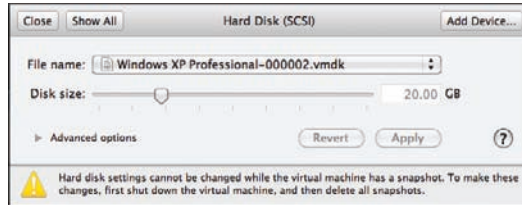


FIGURE 3.8 Storage resources in a VM

Understanding How a Virtual Machine Works

One way to look at how virtualization works is to say that a hypervisor allows the decoupling of traditional operating systems from the hardware. The hypervisor becomes the transporter and regulator of resources to and from the virtual guests it supports. It achieves this capability by fooling the guest operating system into believing that the hypervisor is actually the hardware. In order to understand how the virtual machine works, you need to look more closely at how virtualization works.

Without going too far under the covers, let's examine how a native operating system manages hardware. Figure 3.9 will help illustrate this process. When a program needs some data from a file on a disk, it makes a request through a program language command, such as an `fgets()` in C, which gets passed through to the operating system. The operating system has file system information available to it and passes the request on to the correct device manager, which then works with the physical disk I/O controller and storage device to retrieve the proper data. The data comes back through the I/O controller and device driver where the operating system returns the data to the requesting program. Not only are data blocks being requested, but memory block transfers, CPU scheduling, and network resources are requested too. At the same time, other programs are making additional requests and it is up to the operating system to keep all of these connections straight.

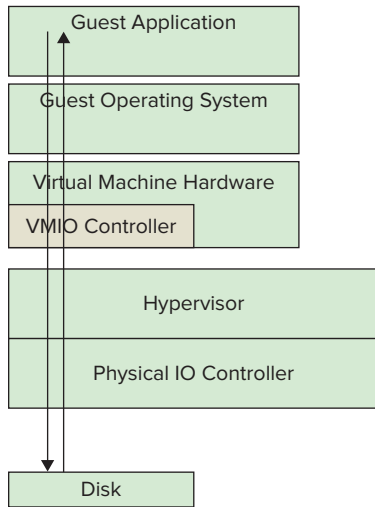


FIGURE 3.9 A simplified data request

Security and safety measures are built into the x86 architecture itself. This is to prevent both accidental and deliberate malicious system calls from co-opting or corrupting the applications or operating system. The x86 processor's architecture provides protection in the form of four different levels on which processor commands can be executed. These levels are often referred to as *rings*. At the center, Ring 0 is the most privileged ring, where the operating system kernel works. Traditionally, Rings 1 and 2 are where device drivers execute, and Ring 3, the least-trusted level, is where applications run. In practice, Ring 1 and Ring 2 are rarely used. Applications themselves cannot execute processor instructions directly. Those requests are passed through the levels via system calls, where they are executed on behalf of the application, as in the simplified example, or they throw an error because the request would violate a constraint.

If a system program wants to affect some hardware state, it does so by executing privileged instructions in Ring 0. A shutdown request would be one example of this. A hypervisor runs in Ring 0, and the operating systems in the guests believe that they run in Ring 0. If a guest wants to issue a shutdown, the hypervisor intercepts that request and responds to the guest indicating that the shutdown is proceeding so the operating system can continue through its steps to complete the software shutdown. If the hypervisor did not trap this command, any guest would be able to directly affect the resources and environment of all of the guests on a host, which would violate the isolation rule of Popek and Goldberg's definition, not to mention the difficulties that could ensue.

Like the native operating system that is managing concurrent program requests for resources, hypervisors abstract one layer further and manage multiple

operating systems requests for resources. In one sense, hypervisors decouple an operating system from the hardware, but they still ensure that resource demands are met in an equitable and timely manner. You might think that adding an extra layer of processing would have a significant impact on the performance of applications running in VMs, but you would be wrong. Today's solutions offer very sophisticated algorithms for dealing with this constantly changing and complex I/O flow from guest to hypervisor to host and back again without having to give noticeable overhead for the hypervisor's needs. Just as in a physical environment, most time performance issues in a virtual environment still come down to correctly provisioning the necessary resources for the application workload.

Working with Virtual Machines

Virtual machines exist as two physical entities: the files that make up the configuration of the virtual machines and the instantiation in memory that makes up a running VM once it has been started. In many ways, working with a running virtual machine is very similar to working with an actual physical server. Like a physical server, you can interact with it through some type of network connection to load, manage, and monitor the environment or the various applications that the server supports. Also like a physical server, you can modify the hardware configuration, adding or subtracting capability and capacity, though the methods for doing that and the flexibility for doing that are very different between a physical server and a virtual server.

We'll defer the "working with a running VM" discussion until the next chapter, and focus for now on understanding why the fact that VMs exist as data files is a key enabler in managing and maintaining them. Since the inception of the computer, files have been the method of storing information. Because of that history and knowledge, managing files is routine. If someone needs to move a spreadsheet from one place to another, she moves the file. If she needs to back up a document, she copies that file and moves the copy to another device for archiving. If someone builds a presentation that will serve as a base for many other presentations, he write-locks that presentation and allows other people to duplicate it for their use. By leveraging these same files properties, you can do some remarkable things with virtual machines.

Understanding Virtual Machine Clones

Server provisioning takes considerable resources in terms of time, manpower, and money. Before server virtualization, the process of ordering and acquiring a physical server could take weeks, or even months in certain organizations, not to mention the cost, which often would be thousands of dollars. Once the

server physically arrived, additional provisioning time was required. A server administrator would need to perform a wide list of chores, including loading an operating system, loading whatever other patches that operating system needed to be up-to-date, configuring additional storage, installing whatever corporate tools and applications the organization decided were crucial to managing their infrastructure, acquiring network information, and connecting the server to the network infrastructure. Finally, the server could be handed off to an application team to install and configure the actual application that would be run on the server. The additional provisioning time could be days, or longer, depending on the complexity of what needed to be installed and what organizational mechanisms were in place to complete the process.

Contrast this with a virtual machine. If you need a new server, you can clone an existing one, as shown in Figure 3.10. The process involves little more than copying the files that make up the existing server. Once that copy exists, the guest operating system only needs some customization in the form of unique system information, such as a system name and IP address, before it can be instantiated. Without those changes, two VMs with the same identity would be running the network and application space, and that would wreak havoc on many levels. Tools that manage virtual machines have provisions built in to help with the customizations during cloning, which can make the actual effort itself nothing more than a few mouse clicks.

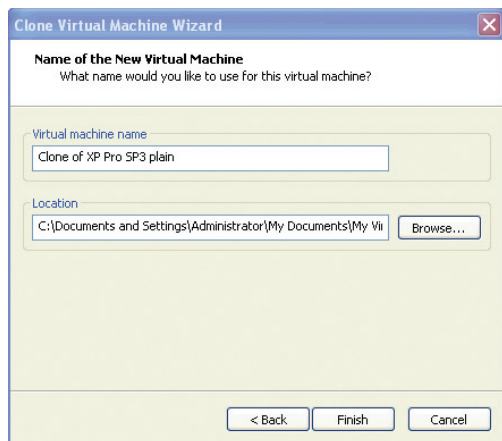


FIGURE 3.10 Cloning a VM

Now, while it may only take a few moments to request the clone, it will take some time to enact the copy of the files and the guest customization. Depending on a number of factors, it might take minutes or even hours. But, if we contrast this process with the provisioning of a physical server, which takes weeks or

longer to acquire and set up, a virtual machine can be built, configured, and provided in mere minutes, at a considerable savings in both man hours and cost. We'll work more with VM clones in Chapter 11, "Copying a Virtual Machine."

Understanding Templates

Similar to clones, virtual machine templates are another mechanism to rapidly deliver fully configured virtual servers. A template is a mold, a preconfigured, preloaded virtual machine that is used to stamp out copies of a commonly used server. Figure 3.11 shows the Enable Template Mode checkbox to enable this capability. The difference between a template and a clone is that the clone is running and a template is not. In most environments, a template cannot run, and in order to make changes to it (applying patches, for example), a template must first be converted back to a virtual machine. You would then start the virtual machine, apply the necessary patches, shut down the virtual machine, and then convert the VM back to a template. Like cloning, creating a VM from a template also requires a unique identity to be applied to the newly created virtual machine. As in cloning, the time to create a virtual machine from a template is orders of magnitude quicker than building and provisioning a new physical server. Unlike a clone, when a VM is converted to a template, the VM it is created from is gone.

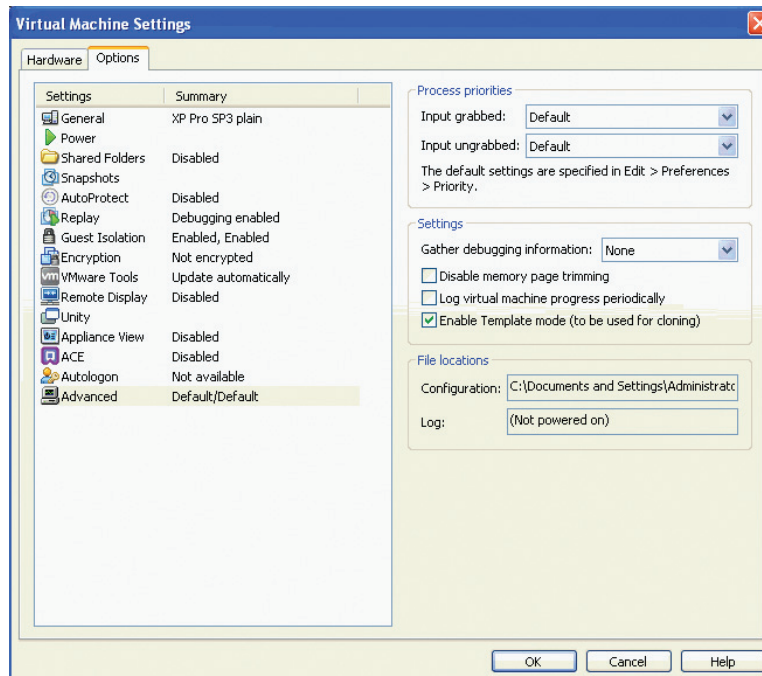


FIGURE 3.11 Creating a VM from a template

Templates are used to do more than just deliver “empty” virtual machines, servers that are comprised of the configured virtual machine with an operating system installed; they can deliver VMs that have applications installed and configured as well. When users need their programs to be loaded, a VM created from a prebuilt template can deliver that application or suite of applications to users, ready for immediate use. In fact, many application vendors are beginning to deliver those applications in the form of virtual machine templates that can be downloaded and then deployed in a minimum amount of time. We will look more closely at templates in Chapter 11.

Understanding Snapshots

Snapshots are pretty much just what they sound like, a capturing of a VM’s state at a particular point in time. They provide a stake in the ground that you can easily return to in the event that some change made to the VM caused a problem you’d like to undo. Figure 3.12 is a basic illustration of how snapshots work. A snapshot preserves the state of a VM, its data, and its hardware configuration. Once you snapshot a VM, changes that are made no longer go to the virtual machine. They go instead to a *delta disk*, sometimes called a *child disk*. This delta disk accumulates all changes until one of two things happens, another snapshot or a consolidation, ending the snapshot process. If another snapshot is taken, a second delta disk is created and all subsequent changes are written there. If a consolidation is done, the delta disk changes are merged with the base virtual machine files and they become the updated VM.

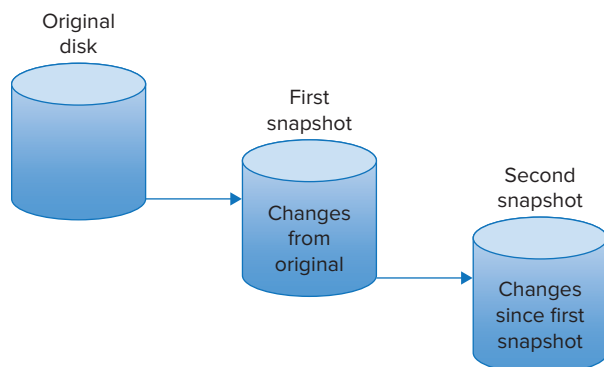


FIGURE 3.12 A snapshot disk chain

Finally, you can revert back to the state of a VM at the time when a snapshot was taken, unrolling all of the changes that have been made since that time. Snapshots are very useful in test and development areas, allowing developers to

◀ Cisco is delivering their Unified Communications solution as a pre-built download. Oracle currently offers more than thirty downloadable templates, including Peoplesoft, Siebel, Oracle E-Business, WebLogic, and Oracle database solutions.

try risky or unknown processes with the ability to restore their environment to a known healthy state. Snapshots can be used to test a patch or an update where the outcome is unsure, and they provide an easy way to undo what was applied. Snapshots are not a substitute for proper backups. Applying multiple snapshots to a VM is fine for a test environment but can cause large headaches and performance issues in a production system. We'll work closer with snapshots in Chapter 11.

Understanding OVF

The OVF standard body is the Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF). The standard is fairly new and still evolving. See www.dmtf.org for more details.

Another way to package and distribute virtual machines is using the Open Virtualization Format (OVF). OVF is a standard, created by an industry-wide group of people representing key vendors in the various areas of virtualization. The purpose of the standard is to create a platform and vendor-neutral format to bundle up virtual machines into one or more files that can be easily transported from one virtualization platform to another. Most virtualization vendors have options to export virtual machines out to OVF format, as well as have the ability to import OVF formatted VMs into their own formats.

The OVF standard supports two different methods for packaging virtual machines. The OVF template creates a number of files that represent the virtual machine, much as the virtual machine itself is composed of a number of files. The OVF standard also supports a second format, OVA, which will encapsulate all of the information in a single file. In fact, the standard states, “An OVF package may be stored as a single file using the TAR format. The extension of that file shall be .ova (open virtual appliance or application).”

VIRTUAL APPLIANCES

Like many other concepts in technology, *virtual appliance* can represent a range of virtual machine deployments depending on who is doing the defining. Initially, the term referred to a specialized virtual machine that contained an operating system and a preloaded and preconfigured application that was designed for a particular function. The user had little access to the tuning and configuration of the appliance, and upgrades or patches involved a download and replacement of the entire appliance, instead of working inside the VM. BEA's Liquid VM was one such implementation that provided an optimized WebLogic Application Server environment. The definition has since expanded to include ordinary virtual machines that have

been preloaded with an operating system and a loaded application, but the user has access to all of the configuration and tuning parameters of both the operating system and application. This model has grown, along with vendor support for their applications running in a virtualized environment.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Virtual machines are the containers that run workloads on top of hypervisors. They are much more manageable and cost effective than their physical counterparts, allowing rapid initial deployment as well as unique configuration alteration capabilities. Traditional server resources are all available in VMs, with the expected interfaces and behaviors, although virtualization provides additional options not possible in physical servers. Application vendors are creating virtual appliances for their customers to download and deploy. The industry standard OVF format allows cross-vendor and cross-platform packaging and distribution of prebuilt, preconfigured servers and applications.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Are there any advantages to physical servers that would preclude someone from using virtual machines? At what point do you think the inherent cost savings and manageability advantages that virtual machines provide would outweigh the physical server advantages you listed?
- ▶ Using the Internet, investigate the amount and type of virtual appliances that are available for download. What different formats are available? Are they all available in OVF format? Why or why not do you think this is true?
- ▶ Examine the OVF standard document. What are the requirements for the VM files to meet the OVF standard? Are they simple or complex?

Creating a Virtual Machine

Virtual machines are the building blocks for today's data centers. Once an infrastructure is in place, the process of populating the environment with workloads begins. There are two main methods of creating those virtual machines, the first being a physical-to-virtual operation (or P2V), and the second being a from-the-ground-up execution. We'll cover both of those and perform the latter to create an initial VM.

- ▶ **Performing P2V conversions**
- ▶ **Loading your environment**
- ▶ **Building a new virtual machine**

Performing P2V Conversions

Virtualization technology and its use by corporations did not spring up instantly out of nowhere. Even though increasing numbers of virtual machines are being deployed today, there are still many millions of physical servers running application workloads in data centers. A large percentage of new workloads are still being deployed as physical servers as well. As data center administrators embraced virtualization, there were two strategies for using virtualization in their environments.

The first of these is containment. *Containment* is the practice of initially deploying new application workloads as virtual machines so additional physical servers will not be required, except to expand the virtual infrastructure capacity. You'll learn more about this later when you create new virtual machines.

The second strategy is consolidation. *Consolidation* is the practice of taking existing physical servers and converting them into virtual servers that can run atop the hypervisor. As you saw in Chapter 1, "Understanding Virtualization," there were and still are millions of physical servers running

business applications. In order to achieve the significant savings that virtualization provided, corporate IT departments needed to migrate a significant portion of their physical server workloads to the virtual infrastructure. To effect this change, they needed tools and a methodology to convert their existing physical servers into virtual machines.

Investigating the Physical-to-Virtual Process

The process of converting a physical server to virtual, often shortened to the term P2V, can take a number of paths. The creation of a brand new virtual machine is usually the preferred method. A new virtual machine provides the opportunity to load the latest operating system version and the latest patches as well as rid the existing workload of all the accumulated detritus that an older server acquires over the course of its working lifetime through application installations and upgrades, tool installation and upgrades, and operating system upgrades, not to mention additional work that may have been done and forgotten over time. Also, as part of creating a virtual machine, you will see that certain physical drivers and server processes are no longer needed in the virtual environment. When you create a new VM, part of the process needs to make these adjustments as well.

Aside from P2V, most tools can also perform V2P (for certain debugging cases) and V2V (to change vendor hypervisors). Some newer editions now cover P2C (Physical to Cloud).

If you were to perform this process manually for multiple servers, it would be tremendously repetitive, time-consuming, and error prone. To streamline the effort, many vendors have created P2V tools that automate the conversion of existing physical servers into virtual machines. Instead of creating a clean virtual server and installing a new operating system, the tools copy everything into the VM. Older servers that run applications or environments that are no longer well understood by their administrators are at risk when the hardware becomes no longer viable. The operating system version may no longer be supported, or even be capable of running on a newer platform. Here is a perfect situation for a P2V—the ability to transfer that workload in its native state to a new platform-independent environment where it can be operated and managed for the length of its usable application life without concern about aging hardware failing. The other advantage of this process, is that a system administrator would not have to migrate the application to a new operating system where it might not function properly, again extending the life and usability of the application with minimal disruption.

One of the disadvantages of a P2V conversion can be an advantage as well. The P2V process is at its very core a cloning of an existing physical server into a virtual machine. There are some changes that occur during the process,

translating physical drivers into their virtual counterparts and certain network reconfigurations, but ultimately a P2V copies what is in a source server into the target VM.

In addition to the various hypervisor solution providers, a number of third-party providers also have P2V tools. Here is a partial list of some of the available tools:

- ▶ VMware Converter
- ▶ Novell Platespin Migrate
- ▶ Microsoft System Center VMM
- ▶ Citrix XenConvert
- ▶ Quest Software vConverter
- ▶ Symantec System Recovery

Unlike many of the other P2V tools, VMware Converter has no V2P capability. There is no official statement as to why, but V2P is directly opposite of VMware's corporate mission.

Hot and Cold Cloning

There are two ways of performing the P2V process, Hot and Cold, and there are advantages and disadvantages to both. Cold conversions are done with the source machine nonoperational and the application shut down, which ensures that it is pretty much a straight copy operation from old to new. Both types involve a similar process:

- ▶ Determine the resources being used by the existing server to correctly size the necessary resources for the virtual machine.
- ▶ Create the virtual machine with the correct configuration.
- ▶ Copy the data from the source (physical) server to the target (virtual) server.
- ▶ Run post-conversion cleanup and configuration. This could include network configuration, removal of applications and services that are not required for virtual operations, and inclusion of new drivers and tools.

Hot cloning, as the name implies, performs the clone operation while the source server is booted and the application is running. One disadvantage to this is that data is constantly changing on the source machine, and it is difficult to ensure that those changes are migrated to the new VM. The advantage here is that not all applications can be suspended for the period of time that is necessary to complete a P2V. A hot clone allows the P2V to complete without

disrupting the application. Depending on where the application data is being accessed from, it may be even simpler. If the data is already kept and accessed on a SAN rather than local storage in the server, the physical server could be P2Ved, and when the post-conversion work and validation is completed, the physical server would be shut down, and the disks remounted on the virtual machine. This process would be less time-consuming than migrating the data from the local storage to a SAN along with the P2V.

The length of time to complete a P2V is dependent on the amount of data to be converted, which correlates directly to the size of the disks that need to be migrated to a virtual machine. More disks and larger disks require more time. Times can vary widely from just an hour to maybe a day. Most systems, however, can comfortably be done in just a few hours, and very often P2Vs are run in parallel for efficiency. Vendors and service organizations have years of experience behind them now with these conversions and have created P2V factories that allow companies to complete dozens or hundreds of migrations with minimal impact on a company's operation and with a high degree of success. At the end of the process, a data center has a lot fewer physical servers than at the start.

Loading Your Environment

In order to build and configure virtual machines, you'll need a workbench. Although you could download and install a Type-1 hypervisor on your PC, it would be outside the scope of this text as well as unnecessary for the work that you will be doing. In fact, many tools are available that will allow you to create VMs using a Type-2 hypervisor as your environment. The benefit is that you will be able to start up virtual machines when they are required, shut them down or suspend them when the work is complete, and then return to your usual PC applications. Many application developers use these tools to create virtual machines that then get migrated to the larger dedicated virtual environment. Here is a short list of some of the more popular applications:

- ▶ VMware Workstation
- ▶ VMware Player
- ▶ VMware Fusion (for Macintosh)
- ▶ Parallels Desktop
- ▶ Virtual Box (open source)
- ▶ Microsoft Windows Virtual PC

The virtualization workbench tools you choose will depend on several factors, including what you are running as a desktop operating system and what, if anything, you are willing to pay for the tools. The examples in this text use VMware Player for most of the work and VMware Workstation for some illustrative elements that Player does not have. Just as Adobe Acrobat Reader allows you to read PDF documents created by other people, VMware Player allows you to play virtual machines. It also allows you to create new VMs. Player is used in these examples for a number of reasons; the first and foremost is that it is available as a free download. The second is that VMware has the lion's share of the virtualization market, so it makes sense to use a solution that would be more prevalent than a lesser-used application. Also, if you are using this text as part of a university class, many schools have agreements with various software companies such as Microsoft, Red Hat, Cisco, and VMware to provide their solutions at little or no cost to students. That means that VMware Workstation might be available to students at a reduced cost or free.

As shown in Figure 4.1, you can download VMware Player from the VMware website from a number of different links including www.vmware.com/downloads. Read the release notes, which are available via the link on the page, to make sure that your computer meets the requirements for the software. Usually, the resource that your computer needs most is memory. If you recall that a Type-2 hypervisor sits on top of a native operating system, you will see that you need to provide memory for the host operating system, VMware Player, as well as any VMs that you will be running. Because you will typically be running only one VM at a time, processor resources don't usually become a bottleneck. This could change if you do run multiple VMs, which is not unusual in a test or development environment.

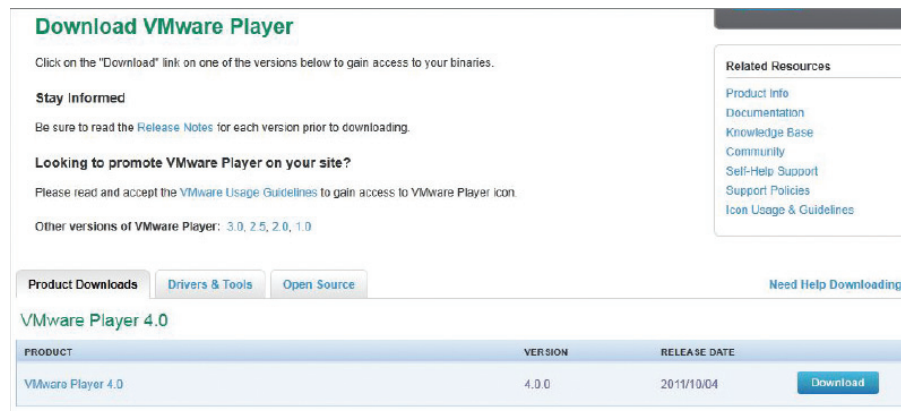


FIGURE 4.1 Downloading VMware Player

I'll be using VMware Player version 4.0.1 and VMware Workstation 8.0.1 for my examples on a Windows 7 SP1 system.

The latest version of VMware Player requires a 64-bit computer. If your machine is a 32-bit system, you can use version 3.0, but your screens may not match the figures. The VMware Player download page at www.vmware.com/downloads/ has both the latest version available and past editions. If you need it, you can download version 3.0 from there.

After downloading the Player executable, as illustrated in Figure 4.2, install it by double-clicking the icon.

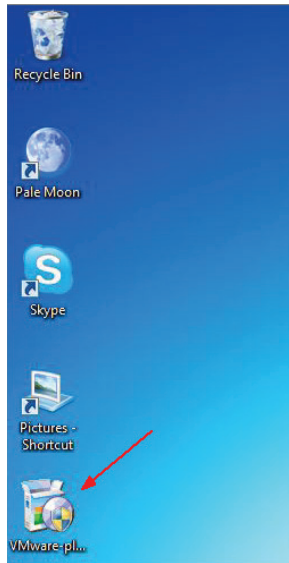


FIGURE 4.2 The VMware Player package

As shown in Figure 4.3, the Windows User Account Control window appears. Select Yes. The Player Setup screen appears. Select Next to continue.

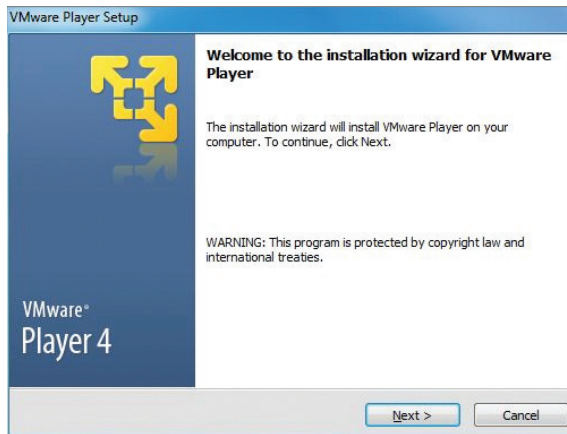


FIGURE 4.3 The Player Setup window

The Destination Folder screen appears, as illustrated in Figure 4.4. Select the destination folder of your choice by clicking the Change button, or select Next to choose the default folder and continue.

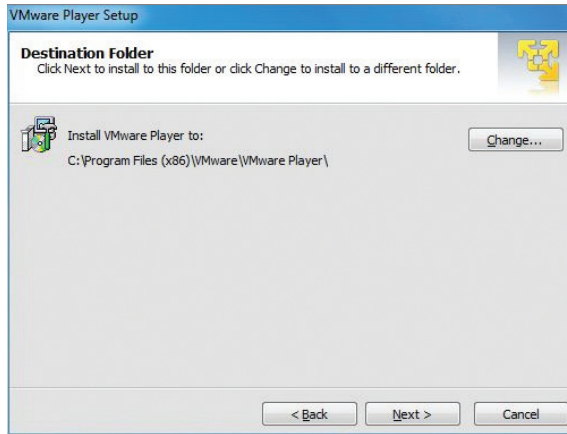


FIGURE 4.4 The Destination Folder window

As shown in Figure 4.5, the Software Updates Window appears. Uncheck the selection box if you do not want to check for updates. Select the Learn More link to find out about the update process. Choose Next to continue.

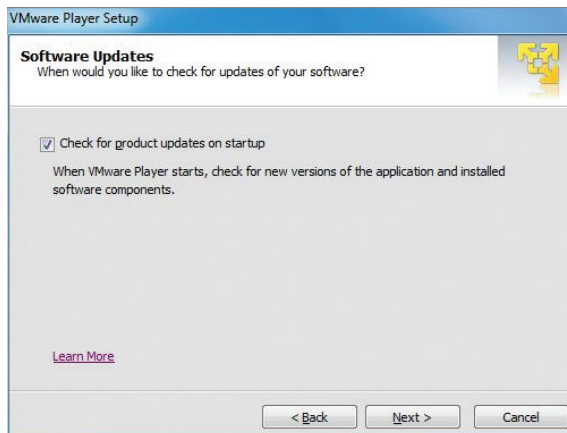


FIGURE 4.5 The Software Updates window

The User Experience Improvement Program Window appears, as shown in Figure 4.6. Uncheck the selection box if you do not want to provide user

feedback to VMware. Select the Learn More link to find out about the feedback process. Choose Next to continue.

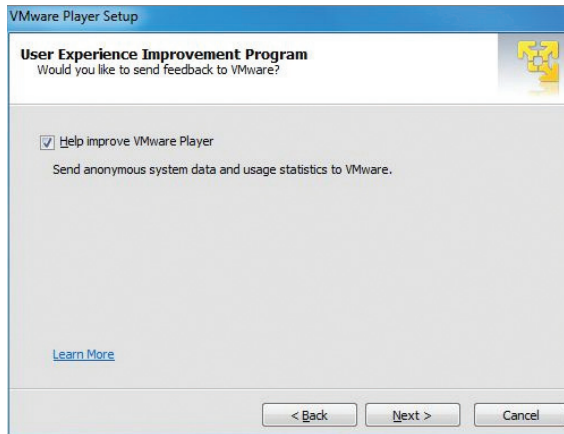


FIGURE 4.6 The User Experience Improvement Program window

The Shortcuts Window appears, as shown in Figure 4.7. Uncheck the selection boxes if you do not want the offered shortcuts created. Choose Next to continue.

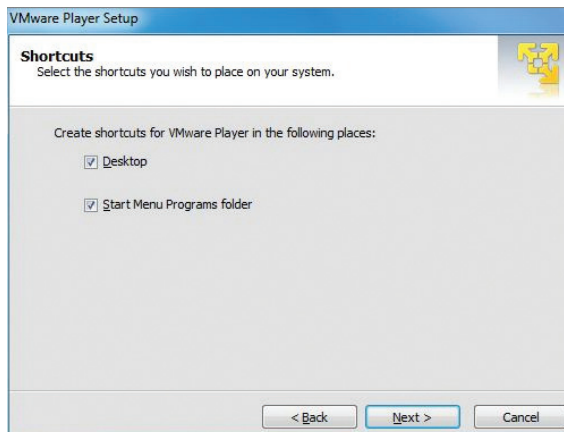


FIGURE 4.7 The Shortcuts window

As illustrated in Figure 4.8, the final acceptance window appears. You can review your selections screen by screen using the Back button. Choose Continue to install VMware Player.

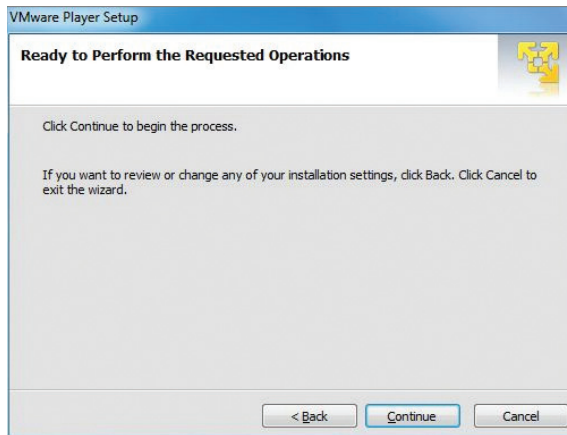


FIGURE 4.8 The final screen before installation

VMware Player will be installed, and there will be a series of update screens showing the progress of the installation, as shown in Figure 4.9. This process will take a few minutes.

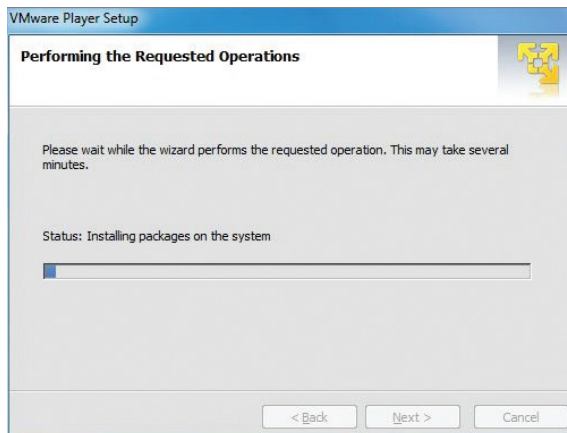


FIGURE 4.9 The installation progress screen

As illustrated in Figure 4.10, at the completion of the installation, a last screen appears saying the installation is completed and that you need to reboot your system as a final step. If you choose to retain the shortcut option, a shortcut appears on the desktop. Select Restart Now to reboot Windows.

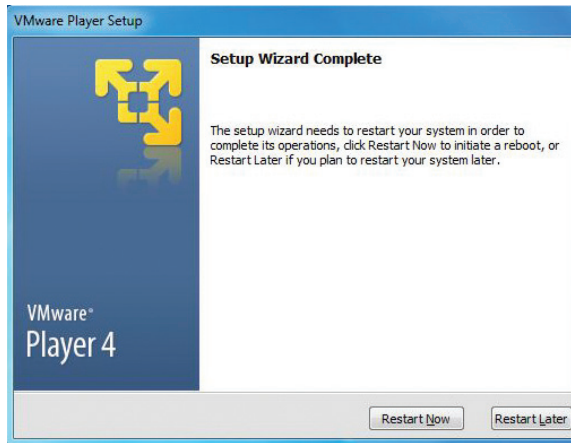


FIGURE 4.10 Installation complete

Exploring VMware Player

Now that Player is installed, fire it up and take it for a short spin before you start building VMs. Double-click the icon to start VMware Player. As Figure 4.11 illustrates, the first time through the application you will need to accept the End User License agreement before continuing. Select the Yes radio button and click OK to continue.

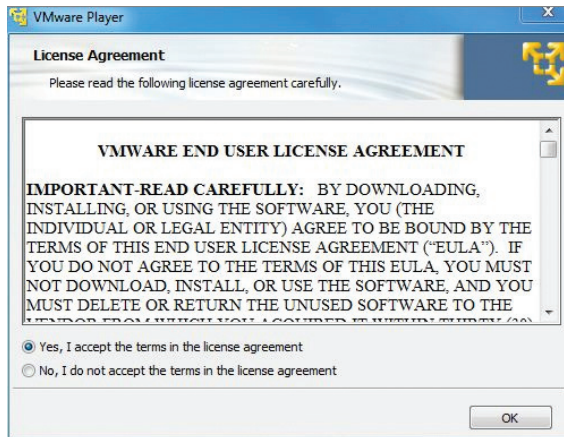


FIGURE 4.11 The License Agreement window

Figure 4.12 shows the main Player window. The items along the right side of the screen are a subset of what is available along the menu bar at the top of the

screen. You can select either the icons or the text along the right side to choose the action. Selecting the house icon on the left side will return to main window.



FIGURE 4.12 The VMware Player main window

Let's look closer at each of the selections under the File menu. They are

- ▶ Create a New Virtual Machine
- ▶ Open a Virtual Machine
- ▶ Download a Virtual Appliance
- ▶ Player Preferences
- ▶ Exit

As with many Windows applications, there are still keystroke commands that will execute the selected function. Create and Open are both fairly self-explanatory, and you will use both of them extensively. Exit is also self-explanatory. Download a Virtual Appliance will open your default browser to the VMware Virtual Appliance Marketplace where you can search for specific prebuilt VMs, or just browse through the thousands that are available. We'll return to virtual appliances later in Chapter 14, "Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine." Finally, select Player Preferences. As shown in Figure 4.13,

there are a number of options that can affect how Player behaves as you work with the application.

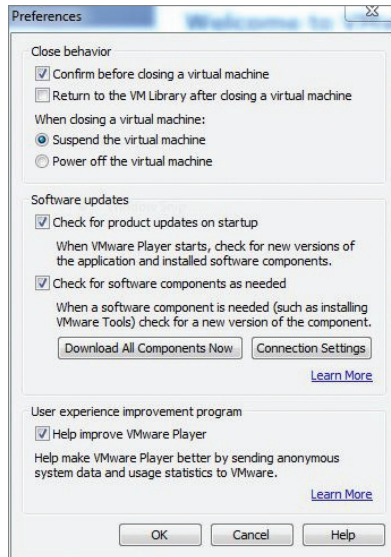


FIGURE 4.13 Player preferences

The selections under the Virtual Machine menu are

- ▶ Virtual Machine Settings
- ▶ Removable Devices
- ▶ Enter Unity
- ▶ Power
- ▶ Send Ctrl-Alt-Del
- ▶ Install VMware Tools

Because there are no currently active or selected virtual machines, all of these items are grayed out and unelectable. We will investigate all of them in the course of creating and working with virtual machines.

Under the Help menu are

- ▶ Help Topics
- ▶ Guest Operating System Installation Guide
- ▶ Migrate Your PC

- ▶ Online Community
- ▶ Request a Product Feature
- ▶ Hints
- ▶ Upgrade to VMware Workstation
- ▶ Software Updates
- ▶ Message Log
- ▶ About VMware Player

The Help Topics section is where you can browse or search through the various topics with which you might need assistance. The Guest Operating System Installation Guide provides a link to a constantly updated resource that will provide detailed information about which guest operating systems are supported and the correct way to install them into a virtual machine. Migrate Your PC connects you to the free VMware Converter utility that you can use to convert your PC into a VM. Online Community provides a link to the VMware Player online discussion areas. Request a Product Feature allows you to make feature enhancement suggestions to the VMware Player product management team. The Hints option allows you to toggle the hints capability. Upgrade to VMware Workstation links you to the VMware Workstation product page for information. Selecting Software Updates will check to see if a newer release of VMware Player is available for download. The Message Log, which is initially grayed out, will show any system messages. Finally, the About VMware Player window provides information about this particular installation of VMware Player, including the version number and various bits of host information.

Building a New Virtual Machine

Once they experience the benefits of consolidation in a data center, administrators quickly look to expand the use of virtualization to increase those benefits. As you saw earlier, *containment* is the practice of initially deploying new application workloads as virtual machines. One large benefit of a containment strategy is a significant decrease in new hardware acquisition costs because most incoming workloads are now deployed as virtual machines. Some necessary workload-configuration education occurs during this process.

When physical servers are purchased for new applications, their configuration is based on a number of assumptions. The first assumption is how long the server will be in use. A typical server's lifespan is between three and five years, at which

point they are replaced by equipment that is newer, faster, and usually less expensive to maintain. In order to configure the system to run for its useful lifespan, you have to take into account two parameters: peak performance and growth.

A server is typically sized to handle what the application owner believes the application will need to handle at the end of its life. For example, if in its initial deployment it will process a thousand transactions a second, and you expect about 10 percent growth every year, at the end of five years, the server will need to process about 1,450 transactions a second. However, from a different perspective, there might be times during that initial year when the expectation is that during peak times, the system would need to process 1,500 transactions per second. That number would grow to about 2,200 transactions per second in the final year. The bottom line is that your server would be sized from day one to handle more than double the need at that time. This is the model that has been in place for many years: the application vendor works with a customer to decide what the long term need will be, and they configure the hardware for that projection. The company pays for that capacity and hardware, even if that projection is never reached. If that projection is reached earlier, then the existing server needs to have resources added, if that is possible, or a whole new server is needed to replace it.

Thinking About VM Configuration

Virtual machines and virtual infrastructure work differently. The platform is an aggregation of resources that are allocated to the various workloads, but the adjustment of that allocation is often very fluid and dynamic, in sharp contrast to the essentially locked-in configuration of a physical server. Two areas that application owners need to understand as they move their applications into a virtual environment are configuration and resource allocation. Though every application is different and its resource requirements are different, most workloads, when they are migrated to a virtual machine, are configured with less memory and fewer processors than they would have been configured with in the physical world.

There are a number of reasons why this is true, the first being that with the many different aspects of dynamic resource allocation in a virtual environment, they can be sized appropriately for the current need rather than an oversized future need. You'll see later that you can configure in cushions of resources that are available if needed but are never used if they aren't required. Those cushions, when they aren't being used, remain as part of the larger resource pool that everyone can use. Both memory management and processor utilization are highly optimized, so the practice is to start smaller with an initial VM and add

resources if necessary, rather than start with a larger VM and subtract them. It is a best practice, with few exceptions, to create every new VM with one virtual CPU (vCPU) and only add additional vCPUs if poor performance dictates the change. Most often, one is more than enough.

Creating a First VM

Taking into account best practices about proper configuration, for your first virtual machine, let's create a VM with one vCPU, 1 GB of memory, 30 GB of storage, and one network connection. Don't forget that the VM is equivalent to a hardware server, so when you are done, you will merely have a container to load an operating system into. Chapter 5, "Installing Windows on a Virtual Machine," will cover installing Microsoft Windows 7 into a VM, while Chapter 6, "Installing Linux on a Virtual Machine," will cover loading Red Hat Linux into a VM.

Let's begin by opening VMware Player. Select the Create a New Virtual Machine option from the main screen or the File menu. Figure 4.14 shows the New Virtual Machine Wizard. There are three choices here. The first two will load an operating system from either a DVD or an ISO image, but we will defer those methods for now. Select the option "I will install the operating system later" and then select Next.

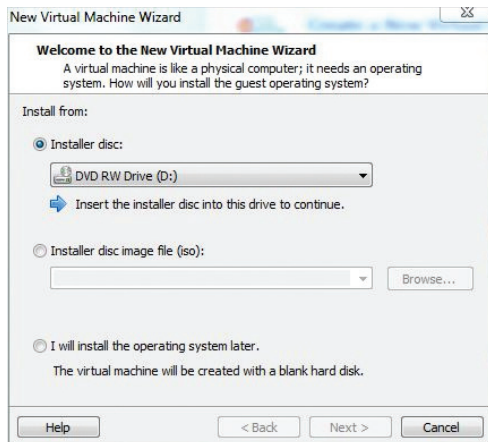


FIGURE 4.14 The New Virtual Machine Wizard

The Select a Guest Operating System screen, shown in Figure 4.15, allows you to choose which operating system you plan to install. You can see there are quite a few operating systems that can be installed in a virtual machine. Choose the Guest Operating System. Choose the Version. This VM will be used as the base for Chapter 5, so Windows 7 x64 is selected. Select Next to continue.

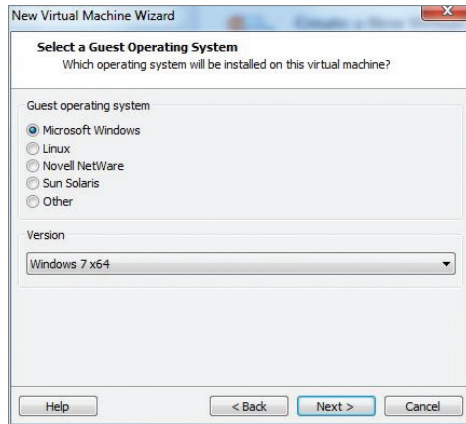


FIGURE 4.15 The Select a Guest Operating System screen

The Name the Virtual Machine screen in Figure 4.16 is where you choose a name for the VM and select where you want the files that comprise the VM to reside. You can choose the defaults or create your own name. Use the Browse button to choose a different place to create the files. Select Next to continue.

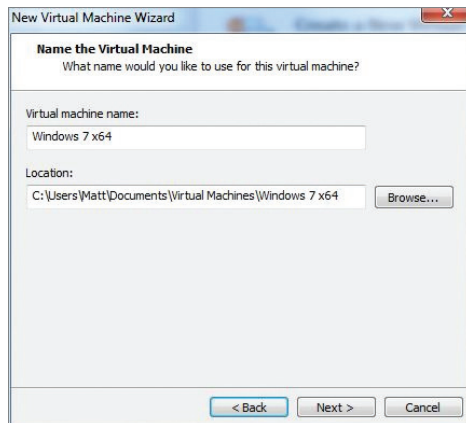


FIGURE 4.16 The Name the Virtual Machine screen

The Specify Disk Capacity screen in Figure 4.17 is where you will size the initial disk for your VM Player. It provides a recommendation, in this case 60 GB, based on the operating system type and version that you plan to install. You can choose to create one large file or many smaller files to represent the disk out on the host file system. Because there are no plans to move this VM, store the virtual disk as a single file and choose a smaller amount of storage space for the disk. Choose Next to continue.

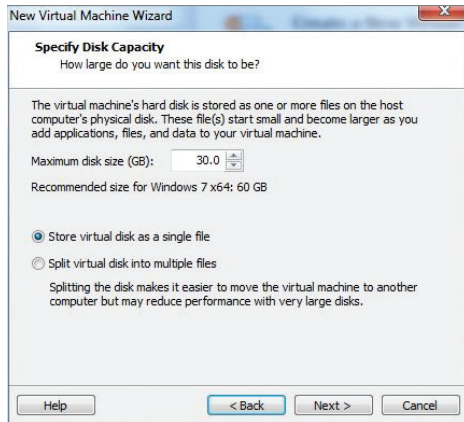


FIGURE 4.17 The Specify Disk Capacity screen

The VM is now ready to be created. If you look at the settings, you will see that some virtual devices included in the VM were not selected, such as a floppy drive and a printer. If you want to make additional changes to the default device selections, you can select **Customize Hardware**. Figure 4.18 shows a summary of the hardware devices that will be configured, as well as the memory settings. You will make adjustments as you go forward, so for the moment just Close the window.

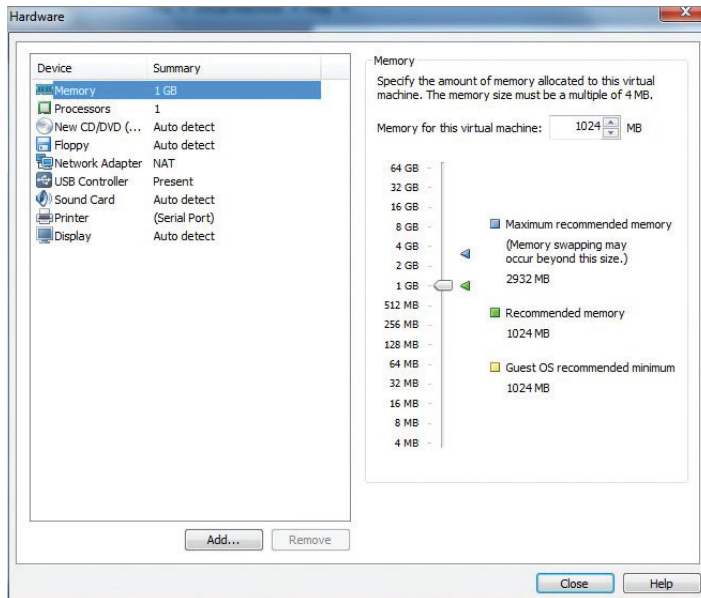


FIGURE 4.18 Customize the hardware

Figure 4.19 shows the final screen. Select Finish to complete the VM creation.

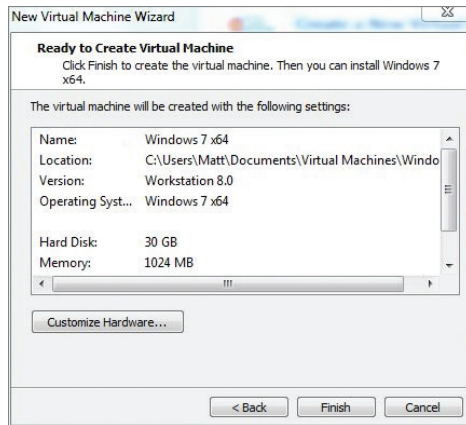


FIGURE 4.19 Create the virtual machine

The Virtual Machine is now created. You can see the new VM in the left column. Because the VM is selected, additional information and operational options appear on the right. We will examine these in the next chapter.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

The twin drivers of consolidation and containment have accelerated the virtualization efforts of most companies. Because physical servers were being replaced with virtual servers, automated tools were developed to more efficiently effect that translation than manual processes could. Deploying new applications as virtual machines requires the creation of virtual hardware to load the operating system into, as you would do with a physical server. This virtual hardware, though, is much more flexible than a physical server with regard to altering its configuration. Virtual machines are fairly simple to create, whether they are built from scratch or P2Ved from existing physical servers. In fact, they are so easy to generate, some IT departments now struggle with virtual server sprawl. This is forcing many administrators to change their provisioning practices to include lifecycle parameters as they allocate resources to their users. This helps ensure that short-lived projects and their associated VMs are properly terminated rather than left to consume shared resources long past the time they should have.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- On the Customize Hardware screen, the memory settings have some minimum and maximum values. How are they determined?

- ▶ In the initial virtual machine that was created, what hardware devices could be removed without affecting the use of the system? Are any devices missing that should be added?
- ▶ Use the file system browser to examine the virtual machine files that were created. Examine the .vmx file with a text editor. What can you determine about the VM? Are there other ways to adjust a VM configuration aside from VMware Player? How could you discover what other options might be available?

Installing Windows on a Virtual Machine

Like a physical server, a virtual machine needs to have an operating system installed to function and run applications. Although there are still dozens of different operating systems that can work on the x86 platform, the bulk of virtualization today is done on the more recent versions of Windows. Understanding how to install Windows and then optimize it for a virtual environment is crucial.

- ▶ **Loading windows into a virtual machine**
- ▶ **Understanding configuration options**
- ▶ **Optimizing a new virtual machine**

Loading Windows into a Virtual Machine

A Windows operating system can be loaded into a virtual machine in a number of ways. In the last chapter, you saw that during the process of creating a virtual machine, VMware Player offers the option to install Windows. Most virtual machines are created through a template. *Templates* are virtual machines that already contain an operating system and often are already loaded with application software as well. These prebuilt VMs are stored in a nonexecutable state that allows an administrator to rapidly stamp out copies of the selected configuration. Once a copy is created, a few more personalization and system configuration steps, such as providing a system name and network address, will need to be completed before the new VM can be deployed. We will cover more about templates in Chapter 11, “Copying a Virtual Machine.”

Periodically, a virtual machine requires a pristine copy of Windows. Some administrators create a new template with every new major release, while others merely power on the existing template and apply the service packs. Some administrators prefer the new install because it forces them

to look at the other pieces of software in the VM that might also need updates or refreshes. Others believe that loading a version of Windows with the service packs (SPs) already as part of the distribution is somehow intrinsically superior to applying the service packs separately. There is no correct choice here. Most people choose a path that works for them. Instructions for installing VMware Tools follow those for installing Windows 7. These steps are optional but highly recommended.

Installing Windows 7

In order to install Windows, or any operating system, you need the source disks so that you can execute from them. These disks can take the form of actual CDs, DVDs, or image files of the software on those media. In the case of Windows, you can purchase a copy at a retail store and come home with the disks, or buy it online and download the images to your computer. That image can be burned to a CD or DVD for backup or execution purposes. If you are using this text as part of a class, you may have a student version of Windows. Many universities have agreements with Microsoft to allow students to download Windows for educational use at little or no cost.

The steps that follow are not the only method you can use to create a Windows 7 VM, but rather, one of many possible options. For these examples, a 64-bit version of Windows 7 SP1 was used (see Figure 5.1). The ISO image is staged on the desktop for the VM to access.

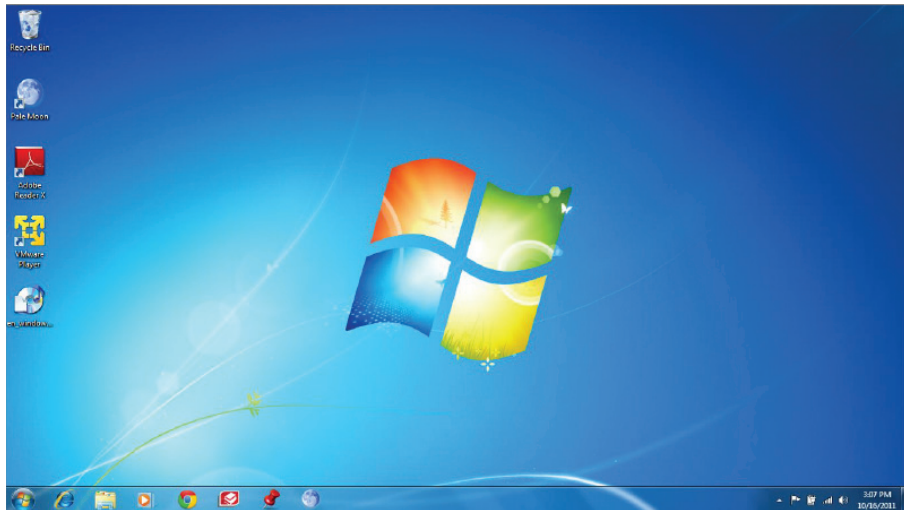


FIGURE 5.1 The Windows image

1. Open VMware Player.
2. As shown in Figure 5.2, select the Windows 7 virtual machine you created earlier by left-clicking on the image. You can also select the VM by choosing the Open a Virtual Machine option on the right. Either method will work.



FIGURE 5.2 Select the VM

3. Note that the machine state is powered off. You need to tell the VM to boot from the ISO image, much as a physical server needs the CD or DVD drive in the boot sequence so it can find the Windows disks you would stage there. Select Edit Virtual Machine Settings, which is illustrated in Figure 5.3.

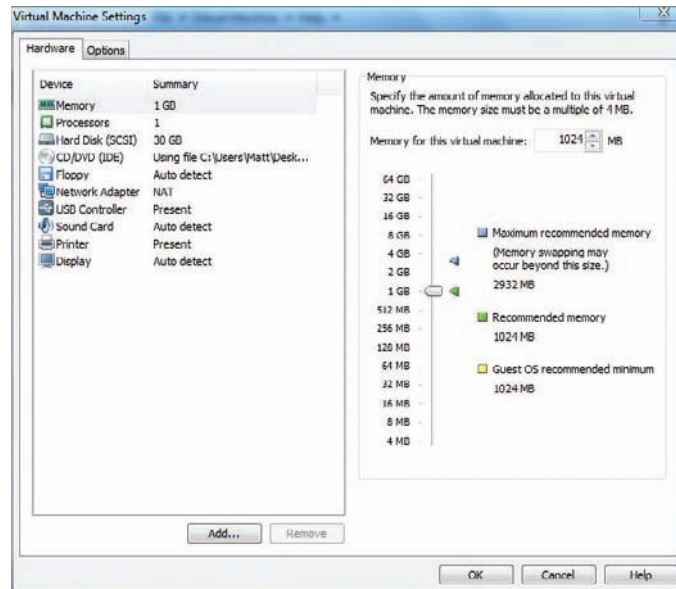


FIGURE 5.3 Edit the virtual machine settings

4. As shown in Figure 5.4, select CD/DVD (IDE).

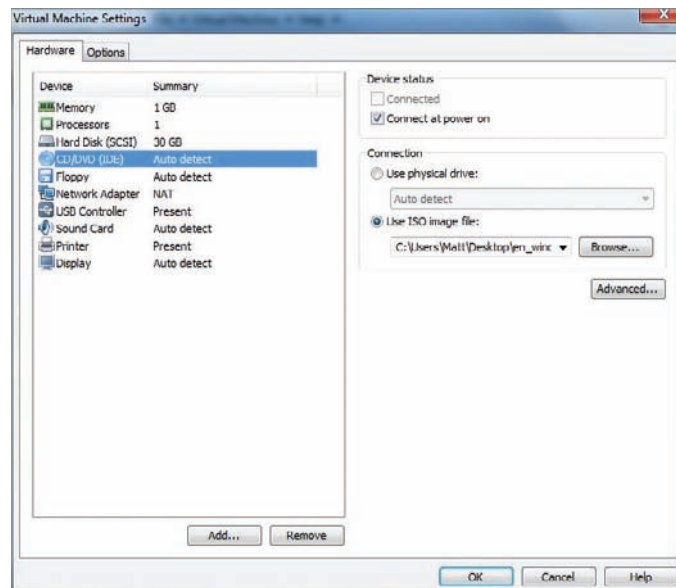


FIGURE 5.4 Using the ISO image to connect

5. You can see a number of choices regarding the CD/DVD devices. Under Connection, choose Use ISO Image File. This will allow you to have the VM use the ISO image you have staged. Use the Browse button to locate and select the ISO image. Select OK to continue.
6. Now select Play Virtual Machine. You might get a message similar to that shown in Figure 5.5. It means that you have additional hardware devices on your physical computer that could be added to the virtual machine for use. Select OK to continue.



FIGURE 5.5 Removable devices

7. The virtual machine boots up and connects to the Windows 7 ISO image as if it were a DVD in a disk drive. If you are prompted to Download VMware Tools for Windows 2000 and Later, you can cancel the download and continue with Windows 7. The Install Windows screen appears, as shown in Figure 5.6. Notice at the bottom of the screen, outside of the virtual machine is an alert bar with some choices regarding the installation of VMware Tools. We will cover this separately after the installation. Select Remind Me Later and the alert bar disappears.
8. In the VM Window, click inside the Install Window and select your menu choices. Select Next to continue.



FIGURE 5.6 Windows installation

9. The next screen, illustrated in Figure 5.7, allows you to get some installation information before continuing. Select **Install Now** to continue.

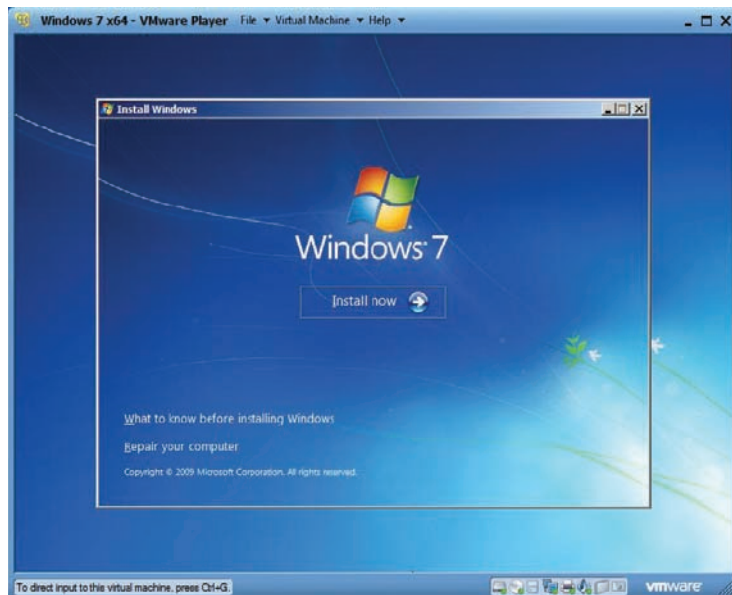


FIGURE 5.7 Install now

10. As with most software, you will need to accept the license terms. Select the checkbox as shown in Figure 5.8, and then select Next to continue.

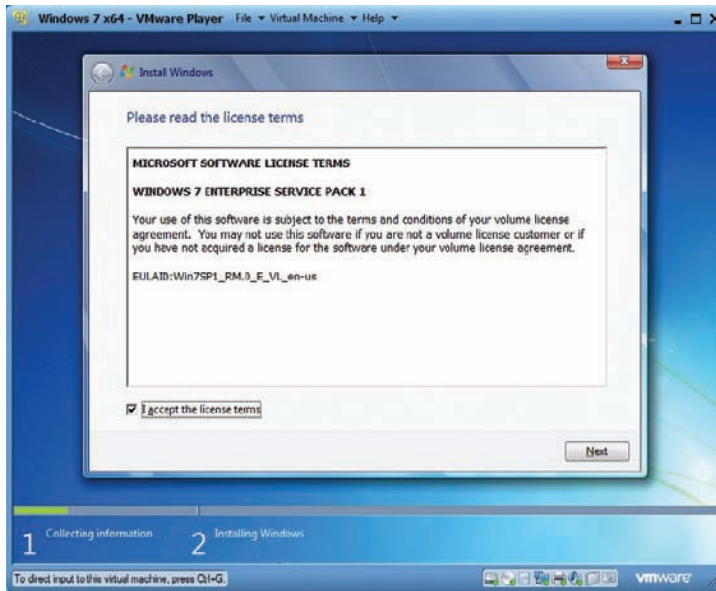


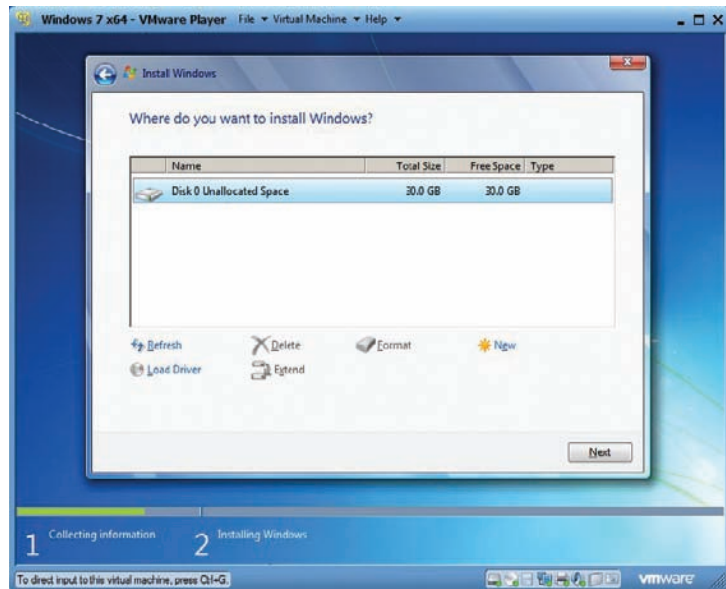
FIGURE 5.8 The license terms

11. Because this is a new installation, you will be doing a Custom installation rather than an Upgrade of an existing system. As shown in Figure 5.9, choose Custom to continue.

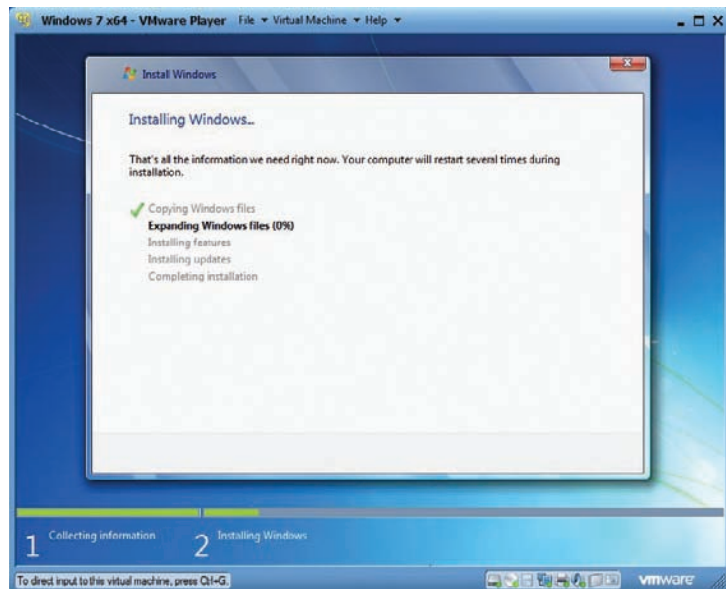


FIGURE 5.9 The installation type

12. The example VM was created with one 30 GB disk drive. If you select advanced options, you can see in Figure 5.10 some of what those options will allow with regard to disk storage. Select Next to continue.

**FIGURE 5.10** Disk choice and options

13. The Windows installation process will proceed with a number of steps, including formatting the disk storage, creating a file system, and copying the files to the disk. This is usually the most time-consuming step. You can see the steps and the progress in Figure 5.11.

**FIGURE 5.11** Installation progress

14. Windows will reboot a number of times during the process. It will then run through a number of first-time use initialization steps. The first of these, as shown in Figure 5.12, prompts you to choose a user name and a system name. Choose the appropriate values for both of these and select Next to continue.

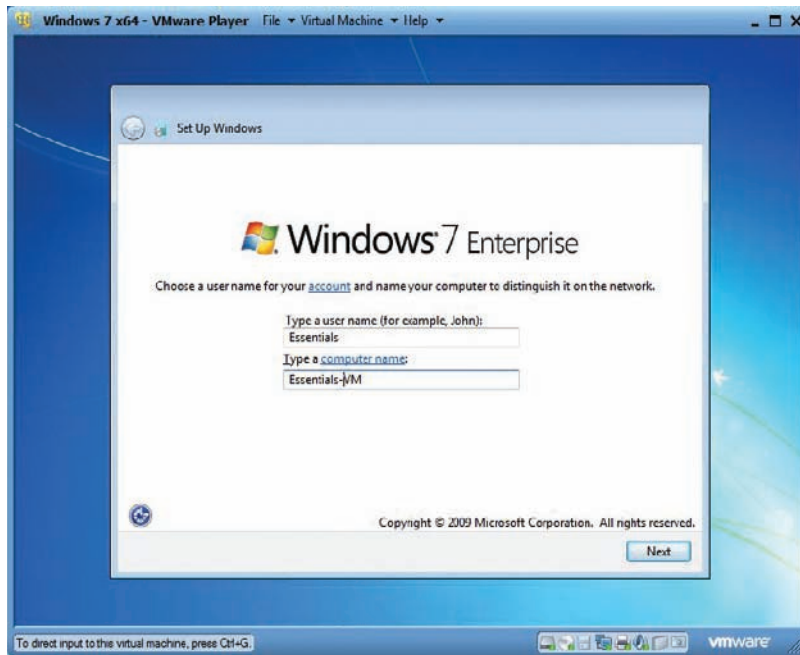


FIGURE 5.12 Choose user and system names

15. You will need to choose a password and a hint for that password for the user you just created. Figure 5.13 shows this screen. Create a password and a hint, and then select Next to continue.

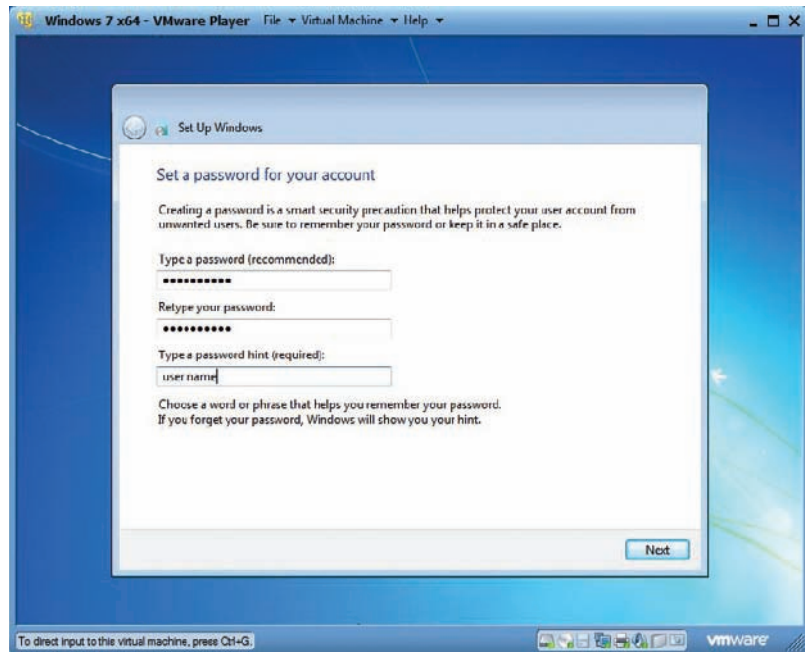


FIGURE 5.13 Create the user password and hint

16. The Windows Product Key prompt is in the next screen, illustrated in Figure 5.14. If you have a product key, enter it at this time. If you do not have a key, you can enter it later when you acquire one. Windows will remind you if you do not. Select Next to continue.

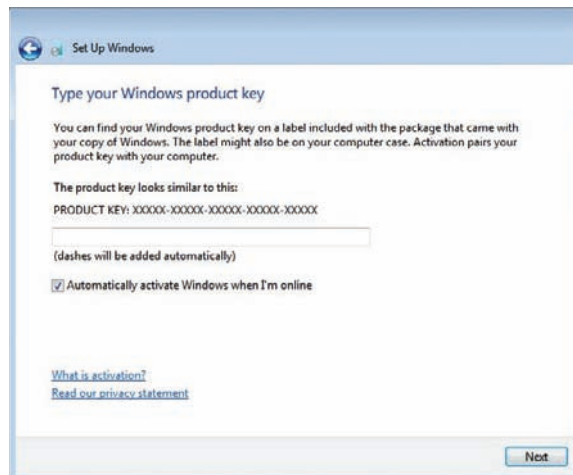


FIGURE 5.14 The Product Key prompt

17. The next screen, shown in Figure 5.15, allows you to choose how to implement the Windows Updates. Whichever method you choose, you can change it later. Select Use Recommended Settings to continue.



FIGURE 5.15 Choose the security update method

18. In the next screen, illustrated in Figure 5.16, you may set the correct date and time for your system. Select the correct time zone, date, and time. Select Next to continue.

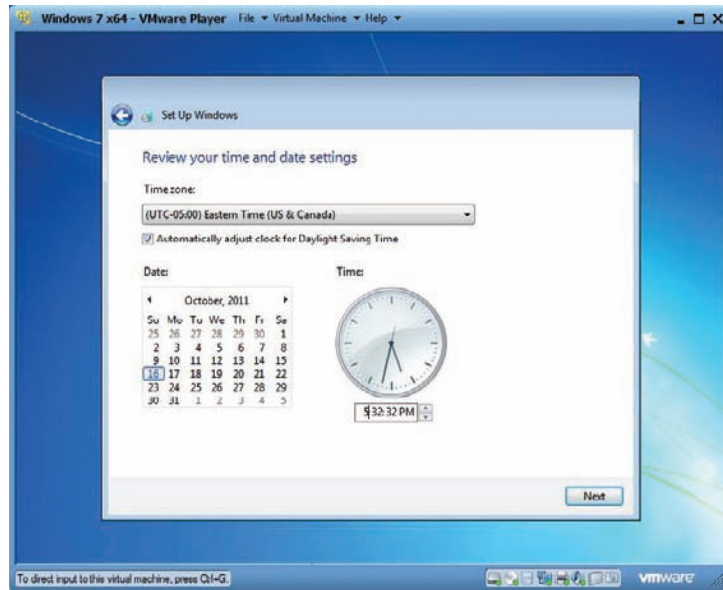


FIGURE 5.16 Select the correct time and date

19. Figure 5.17 shows the Network Setup screen. You will be able to make adjustments later when you investigate virtual networking. Choose Home Network to continue. Windows will attempt to connect to your network through the virtual machine and VMware Player.

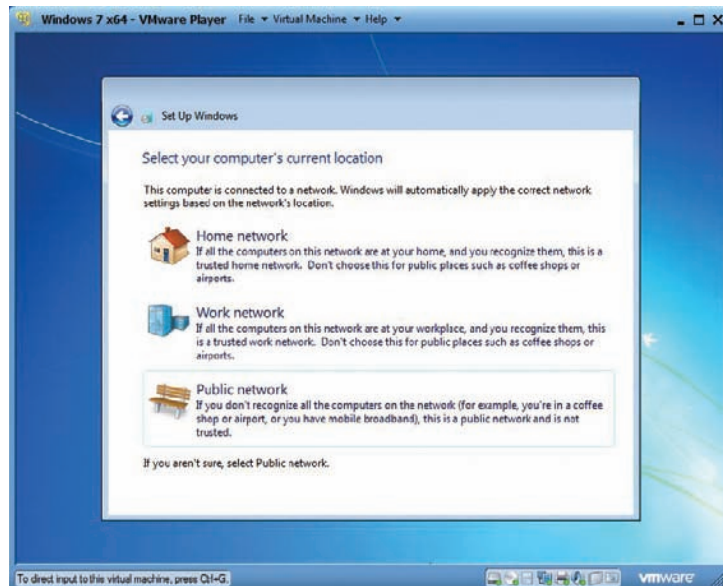


FIGURE 5.17 Network selection

20. As you can see in Figure 5.18, Windows will complete the one time setup and be ready for use.

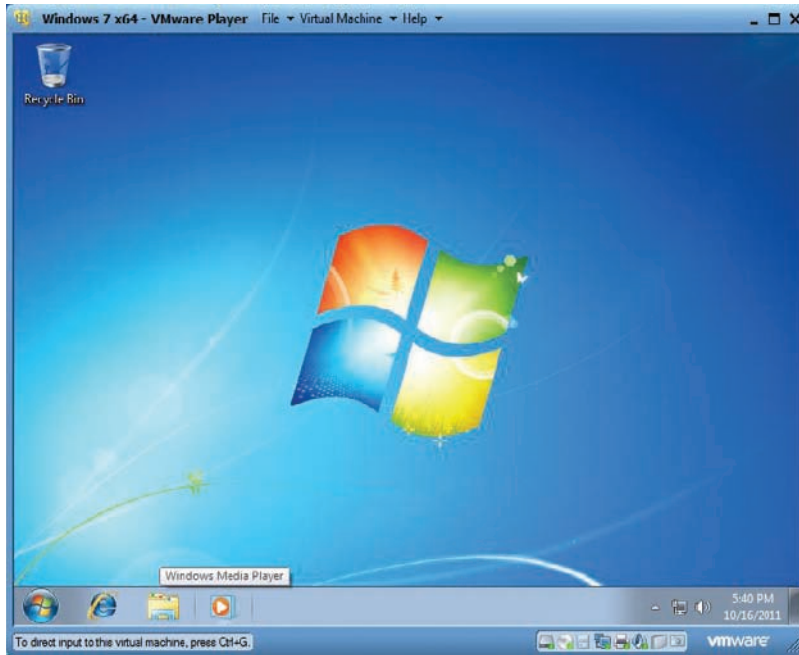


FIGURE 5.18 The completed Windows 7 installation

Installing VMware Tools

You have one more step left to complete before you can work in this virtual machine, and that is adding the VMware Tools. VMware Tools are a combination of device drivers and processes that enhance the user experience with the VM, improve VM performance, and help manage the virtual machine. Although installation of the VMware Tools suite is not mandatory, it is very highly recommended for VMs in any of the VMware environments.

1. Select Virtual Machine from the menu at the top of the VMware Player window. Choose the Install VMware Tools menu option. If you are presented with a Software Updates screen, like that shown in Figure 5.19, Select Download and Install.

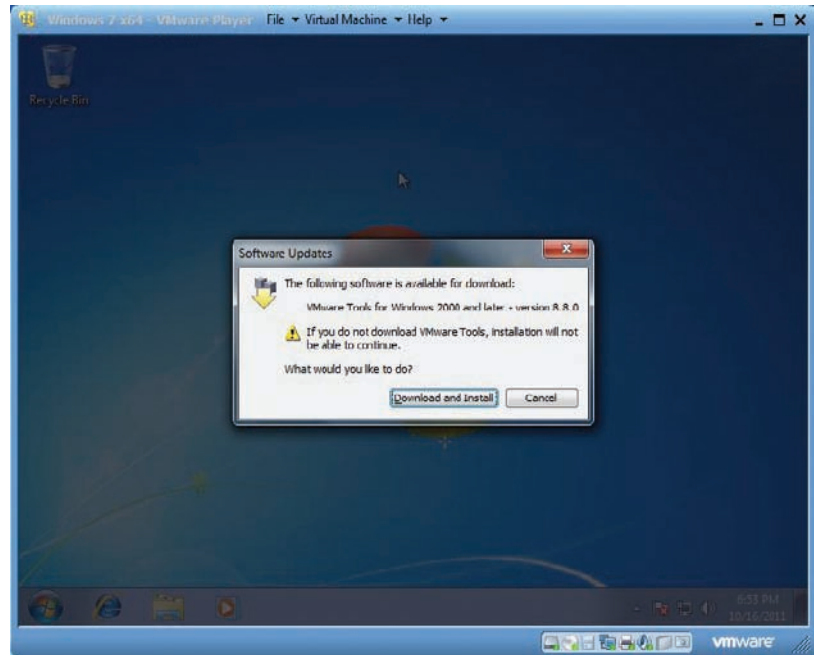


FIGURE 5.19 Download the latest VMware Tools

2. If you do need to perform the download, as shown in Figure 5.20, the host operating system will ask if it is okay for the application to update. You should choose Yes for the update to continue. When the Update is completed, close the window to continue.

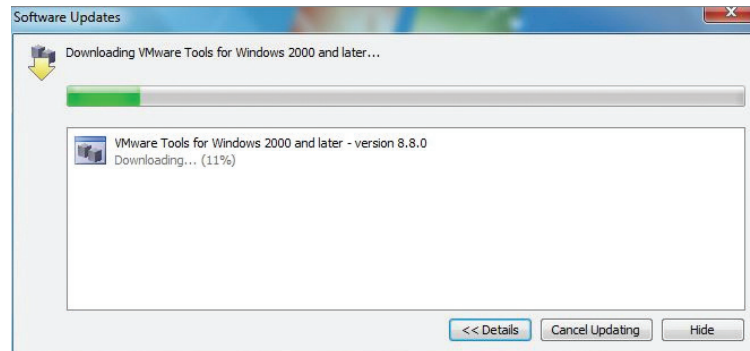


FIGURE 5.20 VMware Tools download progress

3. The AutoPlay screen, illustrated in Figure 5.21, appears. Choose Run setup64.exe to continue. Again, answer Yes to the Allow Changes screen.

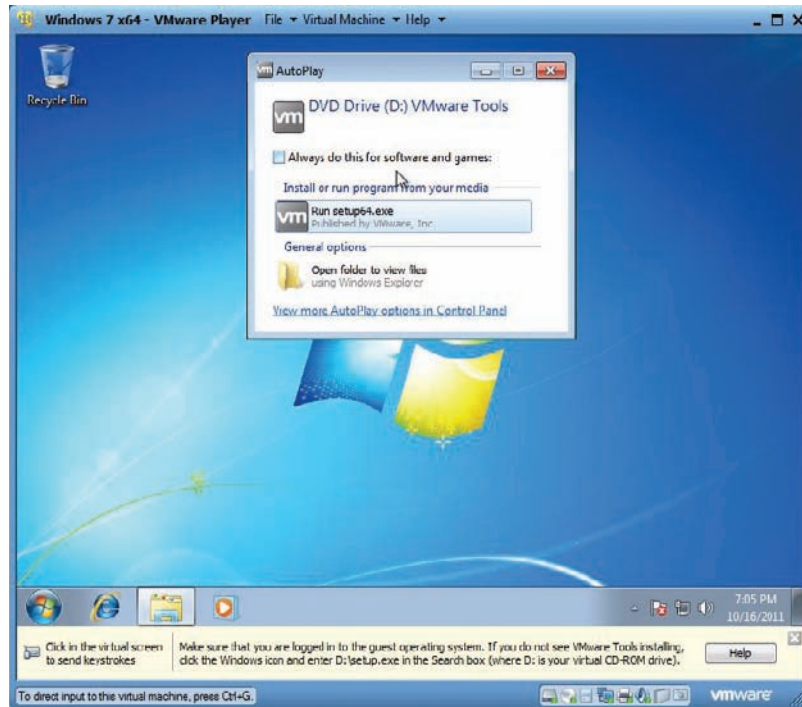


FIGURE 5.21 AutoPlay

4. The initial VMware Tools installation screen appears, as illustrated in Figure 5.22. At the bottom of the VMware Player window is a message stating that VMware Tools is installing. You can dismiss the message. Choose Next to continue.

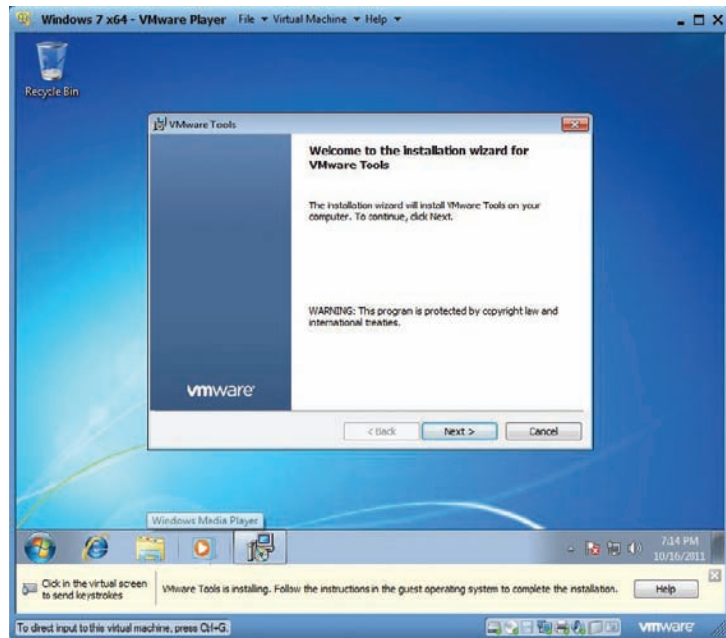


FIGURE 5.22 The VMware Tools Welcome screen

5. Figure 5.23 shows the Setup Type selection window where there are short descriptions of the three options. The default is Typical, which is sufficient for your needs. Choose Next to continue.

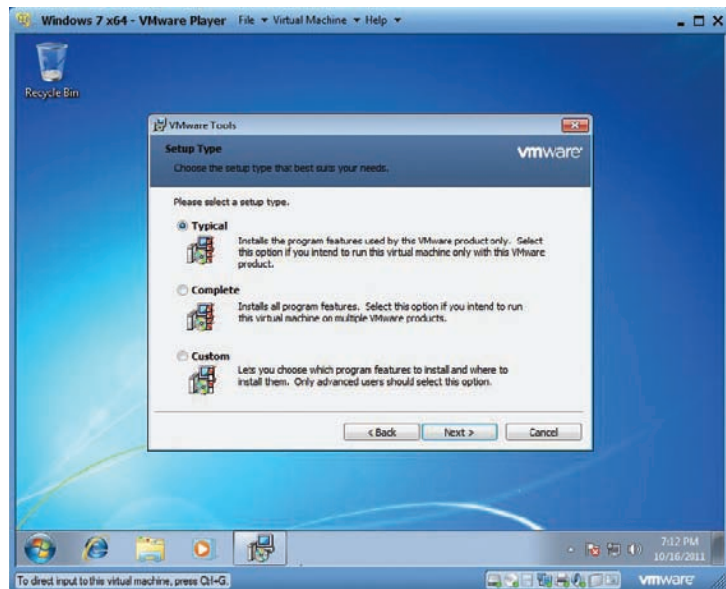


FIGURE 5.23 Setup type

6. The Install screen appears, as shown in Figure 5.24. If any changes need to be made, you can use the Back button to scroll back through the preceding screens to make those changes. If you are ready to continue, select Install.

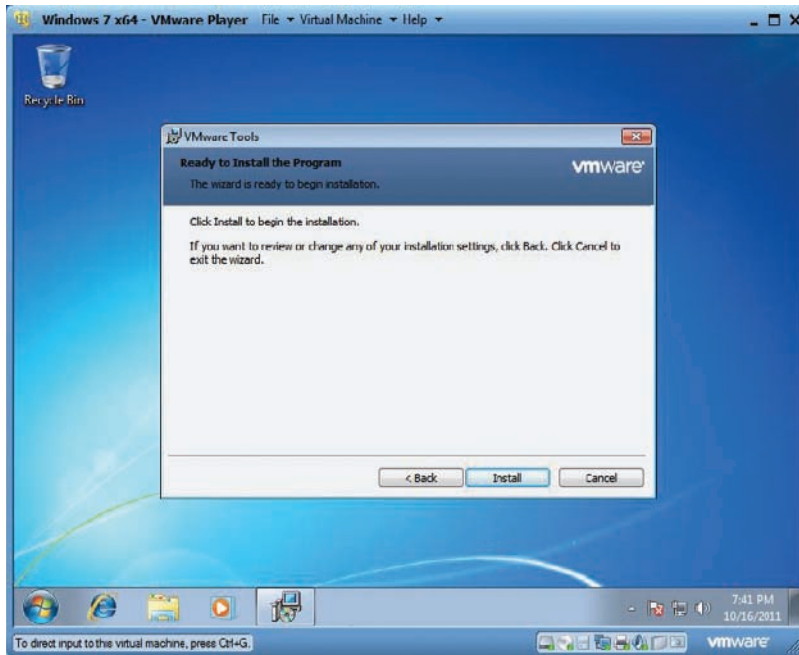


FIGURE 5.24 Ready to install

7. The VMware Tools are installed, and you can mark the progress on the displayed Status screen. It is typically a very short process, requiring only a few minutes. When it is completed, the final screen, as shown in Figure 5.25, is displayed. Select Finish.

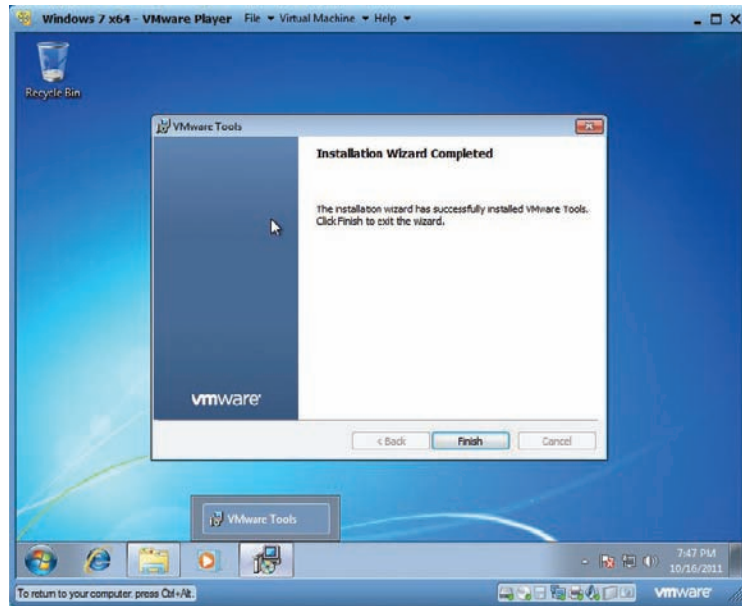


FIGURE 5.25 The installation is complete

8. Finally, you will need to reboot the VM one more time. The system prompts you, as shown in Figure 5.26. Select Yes to restart the VM.

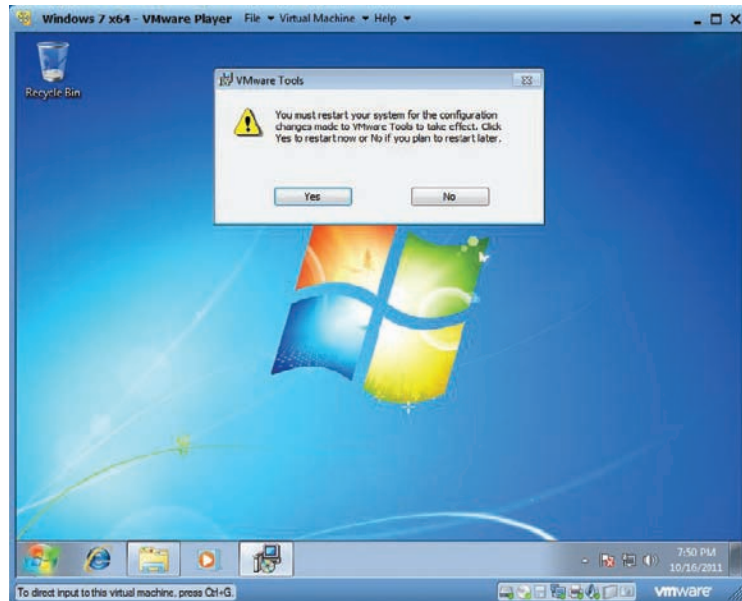


FIGURE 5.26 Restart the system.

Understanding Configuration Options

Now that you have a working VM, let's take a closer look at what you've built. The first thing to observe is that the VM looks identical to the physical desktop, which is exactly what you want. If you select the Start icon, as in Figure 5.27, you'll see exactly what you would expect to see in a fresh install of Windows 7 SP1. It is easy to tell that you are using a virtual machine by looking at the VMware Player application bar at the top of the VM window. However, most virtual machines are run on servers and are connected to by users who never see the physical or virtual servers with which they work.

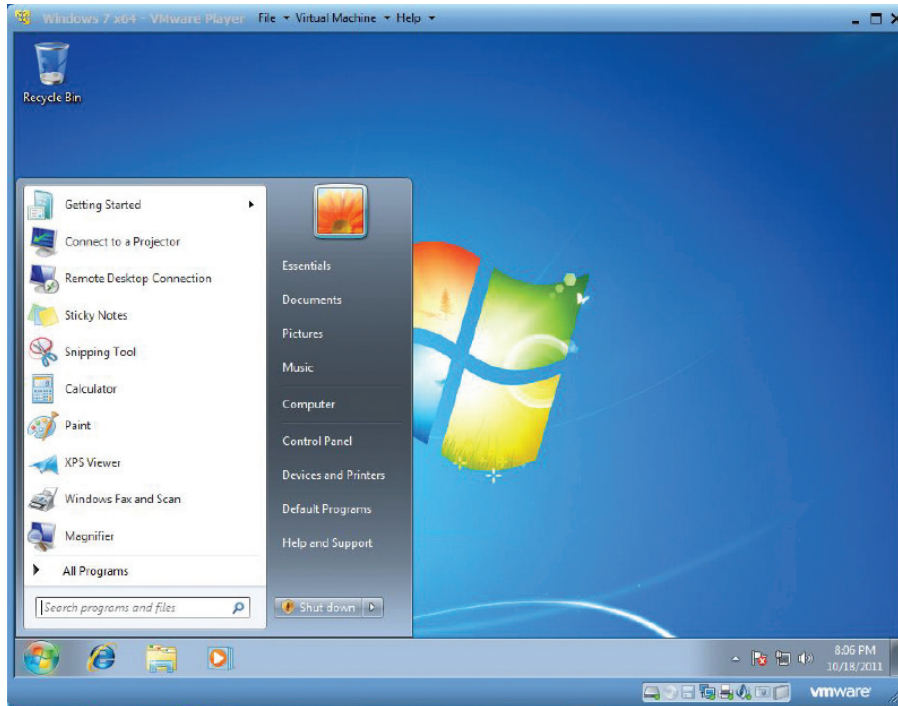


FIGURE 5.27 A running Windows 7 VM

If you were to connect to this VM via the network using the Remote Desktop Connection, could you determine if it was a physical or virtual server? The

answer is yes. There are a number of key giveaways that you could quickly check to make that determination. First, by highlighting the hidden icons at the bottom right, you will see a VM logo. This indicates that VMware Tools has been installed on this particular VM. You can open the utility and examine some of the properties, as shown in Figure 5.28. Note on the properties screen that you can uncheck the option for the VMware Tools to display in the taskbar. Remember, though, that installing the VMware Tools is recommended, but not mandatory. This means that the absence of VMware Tools does not automatically indicate that it is a physical machine.

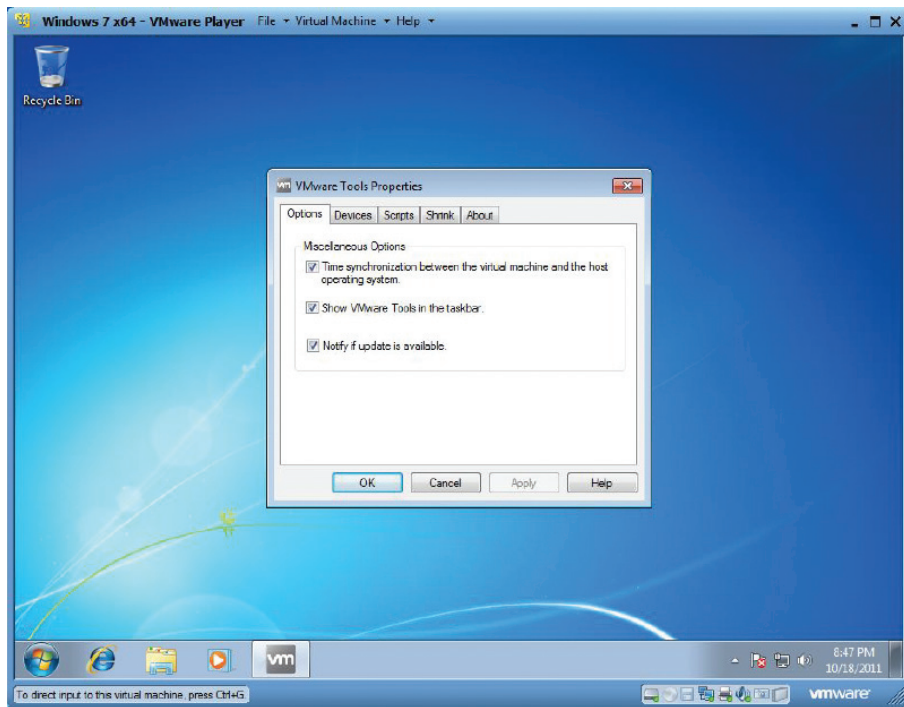


FIGURE 5.28 VMware Tools properties

There are some places that would be more definitive in determining what type of system you're using. By choosing the Start icon and selecting the Devices and Printers icon, you can instantly see that some of the devices do not match any

physical vendor hardware. Figure 5.29 shows a VMware virtual mouse and a virtual SCSI disk device, but even more telling is when you select the machine icon on the top left of the devices window.

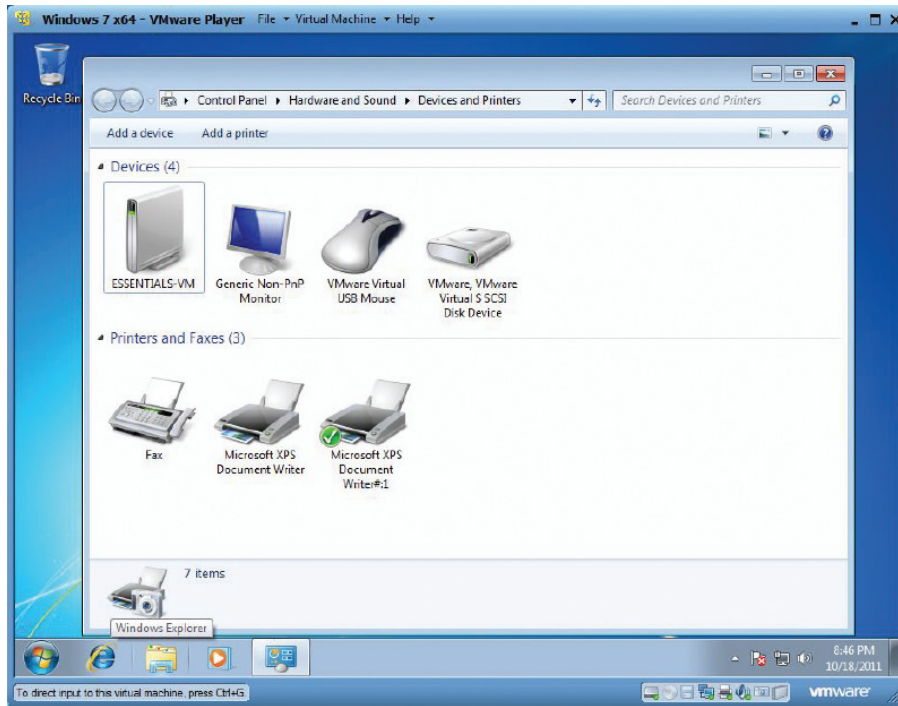


FIGURE 5.29 Windows 7 devices

When you highlight the image, you can see preliminary information at the bottom of the window. It is fairly obvious that this computer is of the virtual variety manufactured by VMware. On your PC, select **Start > Devices and Printers** and highlight the computer icon; you should see the difference immediately. When you double-click the image, a properties window appears, and you can see that the VM is a virtual machine. Select the **Hardware** tab and scroll through the devices, as shown in Figure 5.30, to confirm that virtual devices compose the system. Close the windows to continue.

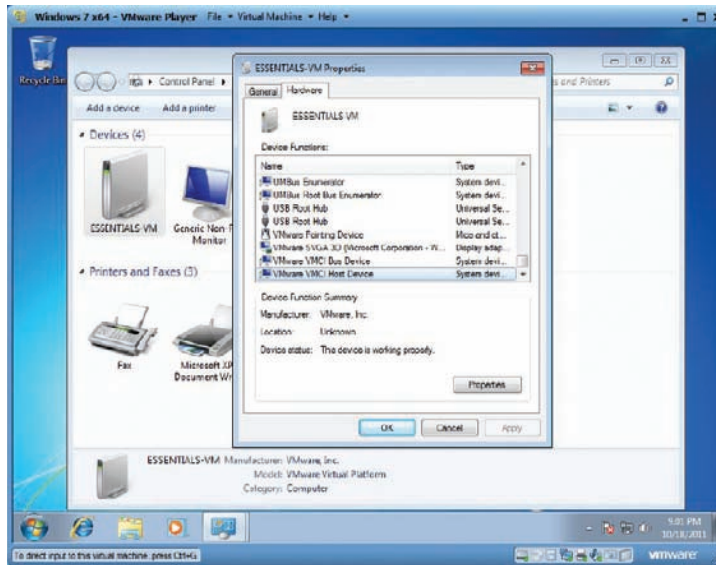


FIGURE 5.30 System properties

Let's look at two more items that will help illustrate the differences between what the physical machine has and what the virtual machine thinks it has. Again, select **Start > Computer**. Here you can see the single disk drive that you created; the C: drive still has about 20 GB free out of the 30 GB it has. But what is the actual size of the storage on this physical system? By following the same steps for the physical system, as shown in Figure 5.31, you can see that the physical C: drive is considerably larger. We'll look closer at this in Chapter 10, "Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine."

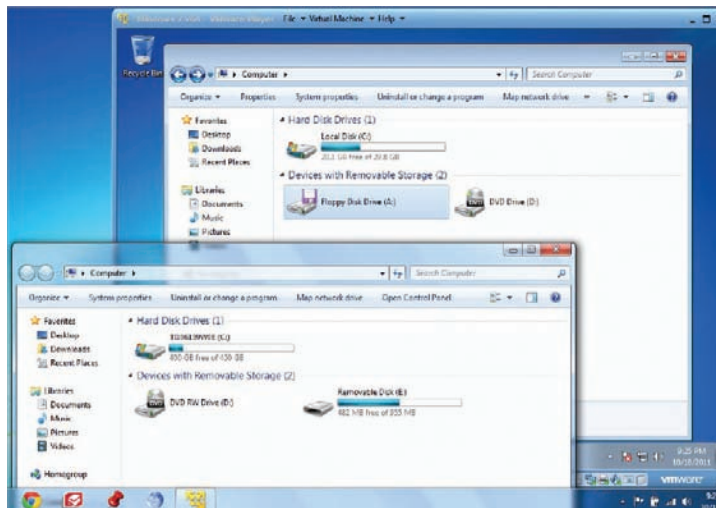


FIGURE 5.31 Disk sizes

1. Minimize the physical machine's property window and select System Properties from the menu bar on the top of the virtual machine's property window. The key information is displayed. The Windows version is, as you'd expect, Windows 7 SP1. You have 1 GB of memory (RAM), just as you configured. The processor information is also available.
2. Maximize the physical machine's property window. Also select System Properties from the menu bar. As you can see in Figure 5.32, the physical machine actually has 4 GB of memory, again more than what is configured for the virtual machine.
3. You can examine some of the other similarities and differences and close those windows.

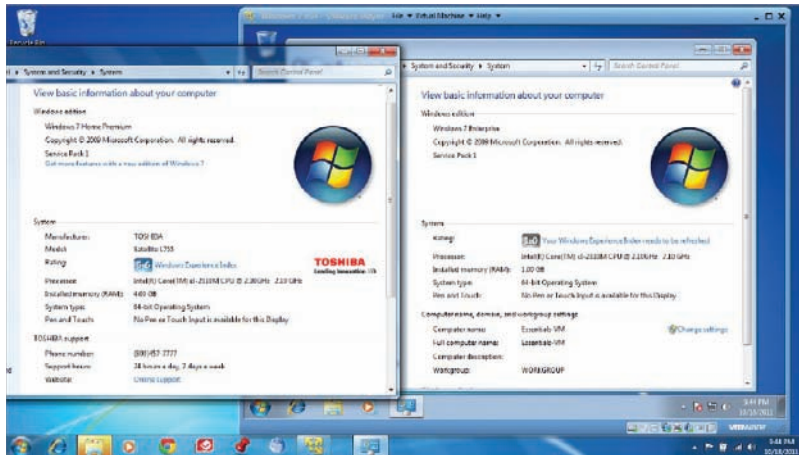


FIGURE 5.32 Memory sizes

Now let's make one small adjustment to the VM just to experience the flexibility of changing the configuration. You've allocated 1 GB of memory to the VM, but if you look at the Windows 7 system requirements, a 64-bit implementation, which is what is deployed, should have a minimum of 2 GB. You haven't done anything yet to stress the VM from a performance standpoint, so the 1 GB has been sufficient to operate without any ill effects.

1. Select Virtual Machine from the VMware Player menu bar.
2. Select Virtual Machine Settings from the menu.

The minimum system requirements for Windows 7 are available at <http://windows.microsoft.com/en-US/windows7/products/system-requirements>.

3. As shown in Figure 5.33, highlighting the Memory device in the Hardware tab shows the controls for adjusting the memory in the VM. There are values that are selected by VMware Player as minimum, recommended, and maximum values. You can adjust the memory right to those values by selecting the colored boxes next to those suggestions. You can also manually adjust memory by moving the slider up or down, or by entering a specific value into the field indicated by Memory for this virtual machine.

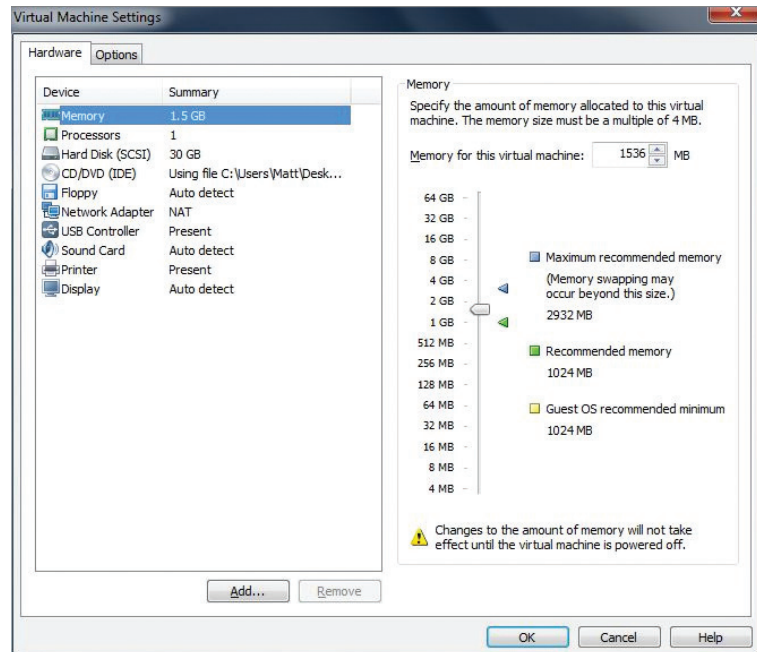


FIGURE 5.33 Adjusting the memory in a VM

4. Adjust the memory value to 1.5 GB by entering 1536 into the Memory For This Virtual Machine field. Notice the warning at the bottom of window that states the change will not occur until the VM is restarted. This is an operating system requirement, not a virtual machine requirement.
5. Selecting OK will save and restore the VM state as the configuration is saved. By clicking in the VM window, the VM will reappear.
6. Reopen the System Properties. The VM is now provisioned with 1.5 GB of memory. To do the equivalent reconfiguration in a physical


server would not only require the same system restart, but actual hardware changes, installing additional memory, which would take anywhere from tens of minutes to hours, depending on the environment. Multiply the time of that operation by dozens of servers, or hundreds, and it is easy to see why rapid reconfiguration is one of the many strengths of virtualization.

Optimizing a New Virtual Machine

The process we just executed is not very different from what system administrators go through as they deploy workloads onto a virtual platform. There are automation options and other methods of improving their operational efficiency available, and we'll cover some of these as we progress, but the basic template is here. This, however, is only the first step in creating an application's virtual machine. You have completed a fairly generic Windows installation, but there are two more important steps you need to take to help the VM perform its very best for the application that will run there. The first is specific to virtual machines, while the second is just good practice for physical or virtual servers.

Many services that run as part of the Windows operating system help optimize how the physical environment runs. Some of these services don't optimize a virtual environment, so it makes good sense to just disable them. Many of the wireless networking services, for example, while perfectly reasonable for a Windows 7 implementation running on a local laptop, do nothing for a Windows 7 VM running on a host server because that physical hardware wouldn't normally have access to a wireless network. There are other physical world features that PCs have that don't translate to a virtual world. Administrators routinely disable power management features because they don't apply to a VM. Virtualized servers often have many of the personalization features removed or disabled because fancy fonts and customized sounds are not necessary for an application server. They also take up disk space and use CPU and memory resources.

Wallpapers are removed, as are screen savers. Various visual effects, such as Aero, are often disabled for virtual application servers. The intent of all of these modifications is to provide VMs that do not needlessly consume extra CPU cycles, memory blocks, IO bandwidth, or disk space. On one virtual machine, all of these savings are small, but when you stack multiple VMs on a physical server, they provide significant efficiencies—and virtualization is all about improving efficiencies. Administrators apply these optimizations into their templates so they can be replicated again and again to newly provisioned VMs.



One guide to honing an operating system is the Optimization Guide for Windows 7 available at <http://www.vmware.com/resources/techresources/10157>. The document comes with a command script to automate the optimizations.

As you learned earlier, the second step could apply to either physical or virtual machines. One of the best practices for moving physical application workloads to virtual machines is to ensure that enough resources are allocated to the virtual machine to provide equal or better performance on a virtual platform. So that you can understand what those resource requirements are, some type of performance metrics need to be collected while the application is still staged in a physical environment. There are professional services engagements as well as automated tools that can help gather this information and translate it into recommendations for virtual machine configuration sizes and even host server configurations.

However those metrics are acquired, the information is vital to properly configuring the virtual machine. Then there are certain applications that seem to have been created for virtualization. Very often web servers, which in the physical world typically each require their own server, can be densely packed onto a single host, because of memory optimization technologies available within certain hypervisors. We'll cover this in more depth in Chapter 14, "Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine."

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

The steps to install a Windows operating system into a VM are at times tedious, but necessary. Both tools and processes make this step in the creation of a functional virtual machine less and less mandatory, requiring less time than in the past when a manual install was more the norm than the exception. Although we've spent time examining the ways to identify a VM, with best practices and proper resource allocation, today there is little reason to be concerned whether an application is staged on a physical platform or a virtual one.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Examine the supported versions of Windows for a particular vendor's virtualization platform. Are there advantages to supporting older versions of various operating systems?
- ▶ Compare your results from the previous exercise with another vendor. Do all vendors support the same operating systems? Do they support the same operating system versions? Are these differences a reason to select one virtualization vendor's platform over another?

Installing Linux on a Virtual Machine

While a large number of virtual machines today are running with Microsoft Windows, an increasing number have Linux installed. Linux has been adopted in many corporate data centers as a way to decrease license costs and decrease dependency on Microsoft as a single source for operating systems. Because many of today's modern applications run on a number of different operating systems, the choice is up to the customer, rather than the vendor. The slow and steady adoption of open source solutions also has contributed to this shift.

- ▶ **Loading linux into a virtual machine**
- ▶ **Understanding configuration options**
- ▶ **Optimizing a new linux virtual machine**

Loading Linux into a Virtual Machine



Though still a significant portion of the server market, the various vendor-specific versions of UNIX like HP/UX, IBM's AIX, and Oracle/Sun's Solaris continue to shrink.

Why Linux? Although Microsoft Windows is still the predominant operating system in the x86 server arena, and by extension the x86 virtualization space, there is an ongoing decline of that position, in part because of devices like smart phones and tablets that do not run Windows. In the desktop space, there is no discussion when it comes to who owns the market; however, the server space is a bit more dynamic. The original push into the server space for Windows came because companies were tired of being forced into paying premium prices to purchase proprietary hardware along with proprietary operating systems to run their applications. Even though many of the operating systems were UNIX derivatives, vendors had enhanced them to run for their specific server hardware. That hardware was much more expensive than generic Windows servers that a company could acquire from

▶ According to IDC (International Data Corporation), as of the first quarter of 2011, Linux had acquired 17 percent of the server operating system market share, the sixth straight quarter increase. Microsoft was at 75 percent.

a number of different vendors. In addition to having a choice, competition drove the hardware cost of those servers down, making the Windows choice a better financial option as well.

Today, a similar trend is continuing. As before, the cost disparity between legacy UNIX platforms and Windows continues to increase. Applications that have been tied to those systems now have a lower cost, open source option in Linux—and as before, they can run Linux on a generic hardware server that is available from a number of vendors. In a virtual environment, Linux servers can be converted to virtual machines and run alongside Windows servers on the same hardware hosts. While this trend of migrating UNIX to Linux continues, Windows users, now feeling the same operating system lock-in issues earlier proprietary operating systems felt, are looking to Linux as a less-expensive option to their ongoing Microsoft licensing costs.

Installing Linux into a Virtual Machine

There are a few things you need to do before loading Linux into a VM. First, you will need to have a VM to use. Using the steps outlined in Chapter 4, “Creating a Virtual Machine,” build another VM without an operating system by choosing the I Will Install An Operating System Later option. The configuration is similar as well: 1 CPU, 2 GB of memory, and 20 GB of disk space. The disk setup is slightly different because of Linux’s requirements; you will learn about that during the installation.

As with the Windows procedure, you will need to have the Linux installation images to use. There are many different providers of open source Linux. The examples will be using Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 6.1, which you can download from Red Hat’s website. If you are using this text as part of a class, you may be able to obtain financial relief. Many universities have agreements with Red Hat to facilitate students downloading RHEL for educational use. Unlike Windows, you would not have to pay license costs, only support costs, if you chose to use this operating system in production.

For the purposes of this demonstration, you can download a 30-day evaluation version at <https://www.redhat.com/rhel/details/eval/>.

The example will use the 64-bit version of Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 6.1, the Workstation edition. The steps that follow should not be considered the only path to create a Linux VM, but rather a possible outline of the steps to follow. The ISO image is staged on the desktop, as you can see in Figure 6.1.

▶ Other popular versions of Linux to use include SUSE, Ubuntu, and CentOS, but dozens of other free distributions are available.



FIGURE 6.1 The Red Hat Linux ISO image

1. Open VMware Player.
2. As shown in Figure 6.2, select the Red Hat 6.1 virtual machine you created. You can also select the VM by choosing the Open A Virtual Machine option on the right, or the Open A Virtual Machine (Ctrl+O) option under the File menu on the menu bar. Any of these options will work.

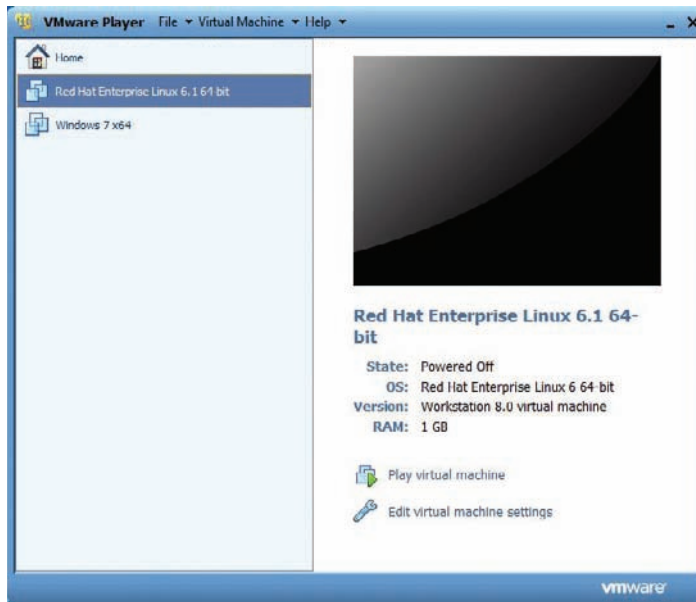


FIGURE 6.2 Select the virtual machine.

3. Note that the VM is in a powered off state. You need to tell the VM to boot from the ISO image, much as a physical server would need the DVD or CD drive to be in the boot sequence to locate the ISO disks from which you would stage. Select Edit Virtual Machine Settings, the Hardware Settings screen will appear as shown in Figure 6.3.

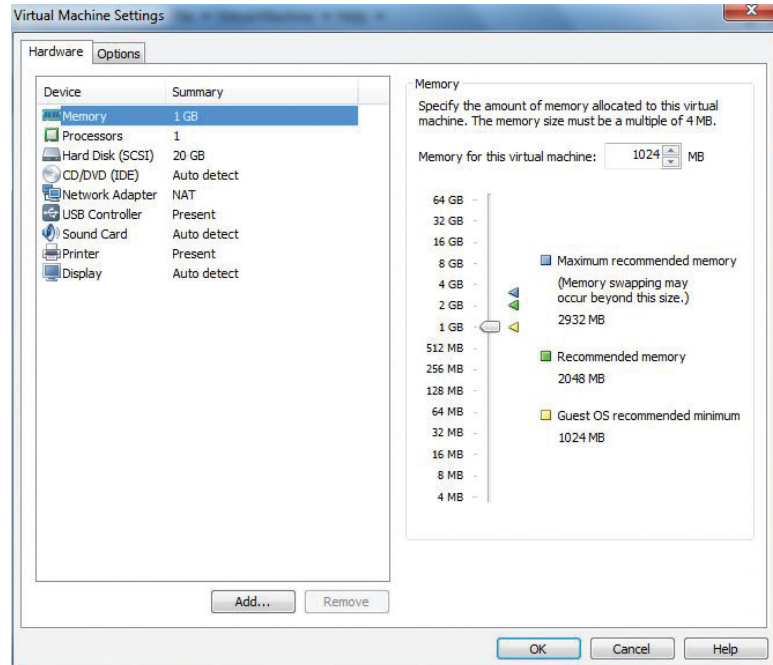


FIGURE 6.3 Edit the virtual machine settings.

4. As shown in Figure 6.4, select CD/DVD (IDE).
5. You can see a number of options regarding the CD/DVD devices. Under Connection, choose Use ISO Image File. This will allow you to have the VM use the ISO image that is staged on the desktop as boot source.
6. Use the Browse button to locate and select the Red Hat Linux ISO image. Select OK to continue.

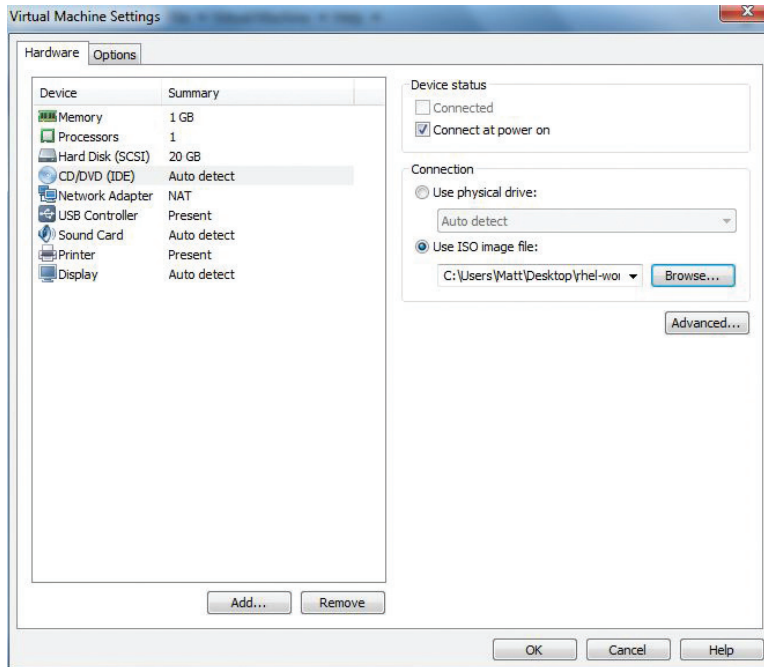


FIGURE 6.4 Using the ISO image as a boot source

7. Now select Play Virtual Machine. You may get the message shown in Figure 6.5. You will need the VMware Tools for Linux, but let's defer this work until after the installation. Choose Remind Me Later to continue.

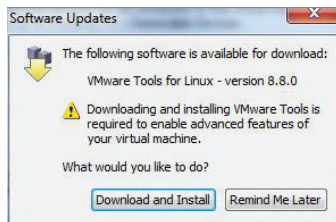


FIGURE 6.5 VMware Tools for Linux

8. You might also receive a message similar to the one shown in Figure 6.6. It means that you have additional hardware devices on your physical computer that could be added to the virtual machine to use. Select OK to continue.

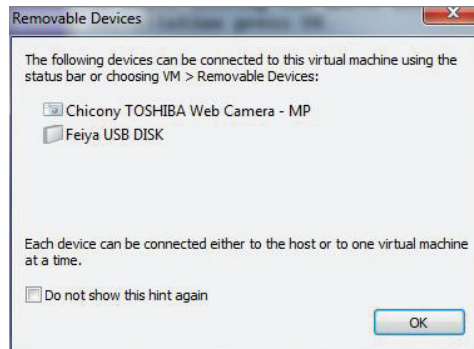


FIGURE 6.6 The Removable Devices message

9. The virtual machine boots up and connects to the Red Hat ISO image as if it were a DVD in a disk drive. The Red Hat screen appears, as shown in Figure 6.7. At the bottom of the screen, outside of the virtual machine, an alert bar offers some options regarding the installation of VMware Tools. We will cover this separately after the installation. Select Remind Me Later and the alert bar will disappear.

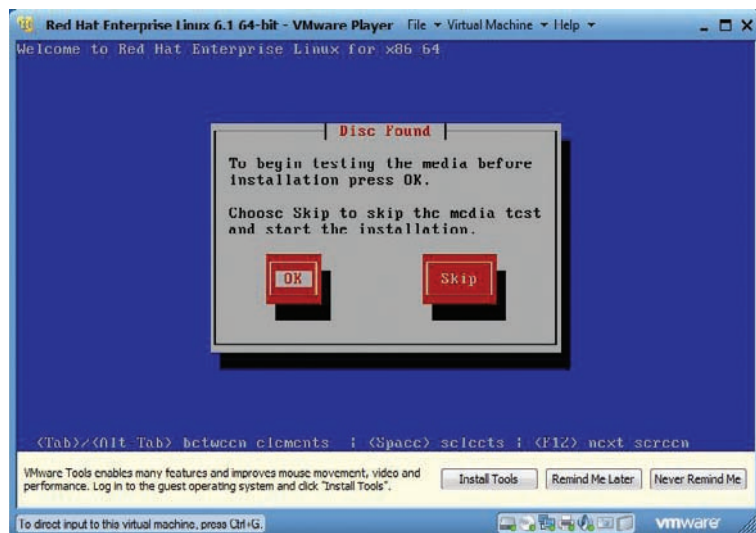


FIGURE 6.7 The Red Hat Installation screen

10. In the VM window, an option is displayed to test the installation media. This is usually done to check the physical media that the image is on for data corruption before beginning the installation. The download is less likely to have any issues. If you choose to run the test, it will take a few minutes and you will be presented with a status bar showing the percentage of work completed. At the end of the test, you will (hopefully) see the screen illustrated in Figure 6.8.
11. Select OK with the spacebar to continue.
12. You will be returned to the media test screen. Use the Tab key and then the spacebar to select continue.

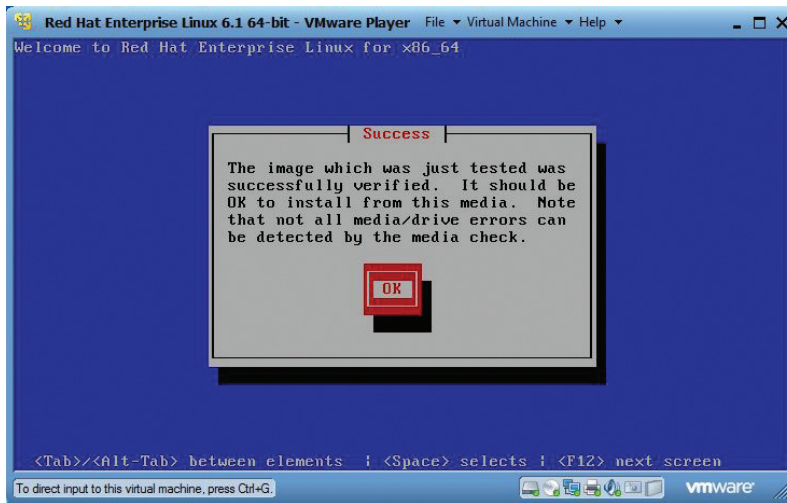


FIGURE 6.8 The media test is completed.

13. You should see the Welcome screen, as shown in Figure 6.9. If you do not, you can power off the virtual machine by choosing the Power Off option under the Power Selection of Virtual Machine menu at the top of the window, and then selecting Play Virtual Machine from the right column or from the Power Selection of the Virtual Machine menu. The Red Hat Welcome screen has a 60-second timer, so you may have missed the options.
14. Choose the Install Or Upgrade An Existing System option.

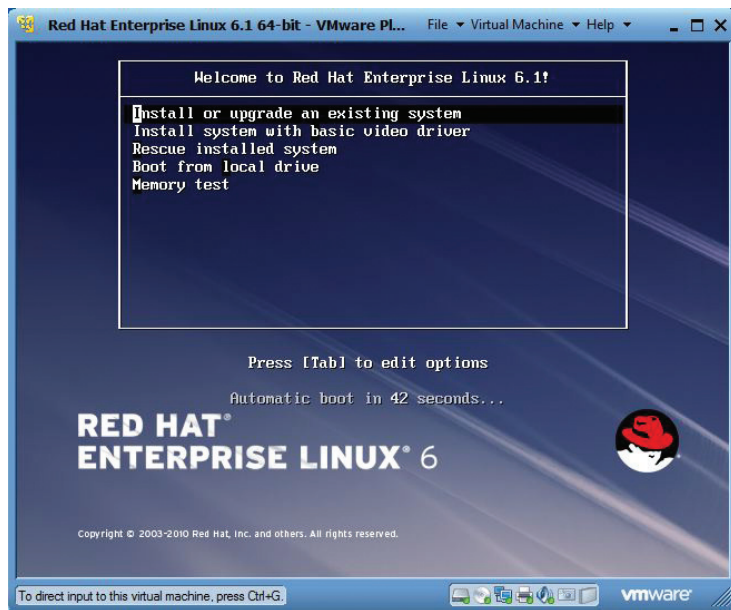


FIGURE 6.9 The Timed RHEL Welcome screen

15. The installation goes through a series of loads and brings up the first screen. Choose Next to continue.
16. If the bottom of the screen is not visible, you can use the Ctrl+Alt keys to exit VMware Player and scroll down. Alternatively, you can select the Maximize icon on the top-right corner of VMware Player to make the full screen visible.
17. The list of languages is presented. English is already highlighted. Select Next to continue.
18. A second language screen appears, and U.S. English is highlighted. Select Next to continue.
19. The Storage Devices screen appears. The Basic Storage Devices choice is already selected, as illustrated in Figure 6.10. Select Next to continue.



FIGURE 6.10 Select the storage devices.

20. A warning, shown in Figure 6.11, appears showing the Red Hat installer has located the 20 GB virtual disk that was created for use in the VM. Choose Yes, Discard Any Data to continue.



FIGURE 6.11 Use the presented storage.

21. The new virtual server needs to be given a name, as shown in Figure 6.12. Enter an appropriate name and select Next to continue.

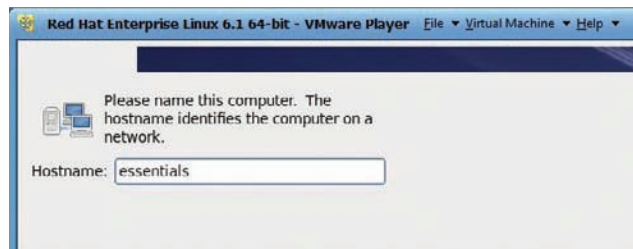


FIGURE 6.12 Enter a hostname.

22. The next screen, as shown in Figure 6.13, is where you select a time zone. You can use the list to choose, or you can select an appropriate city on the map display. There is an additional field regarding the system clock, but you can leave it at the default. Then select Next to continue.



FIGURE 6.13 Select the correct time zone.

- 23.** Next, you need to select a root password. Root is the master administrative account for a Linux system. Enter an appropriate password and confirm it, as shown in Figure 6.14. Select Next to continue. Depending on the strength of your password, you may receive a warning. You can press Cancel and try a new one, or select Use Anyway to keep the one you've chosen.

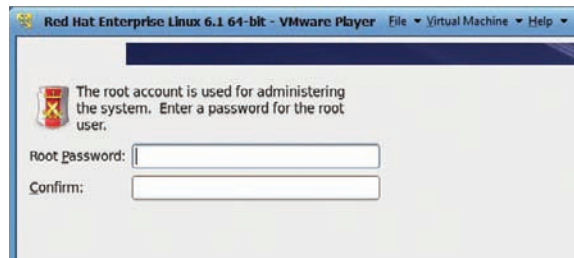


FIGURE 6.14 Enter a root password.

- 24.** Choose the installation type, as show in Figure 6.15. Because you would like to use the entire virtual disk drive, select Use All Space. Toward the bottom left are two additional parameters. Select the Review And Modify Partitioning Layout checkbox. This will give you the opportunity to see how the installer is going to create the partitions for the installation. Select Next to continue.

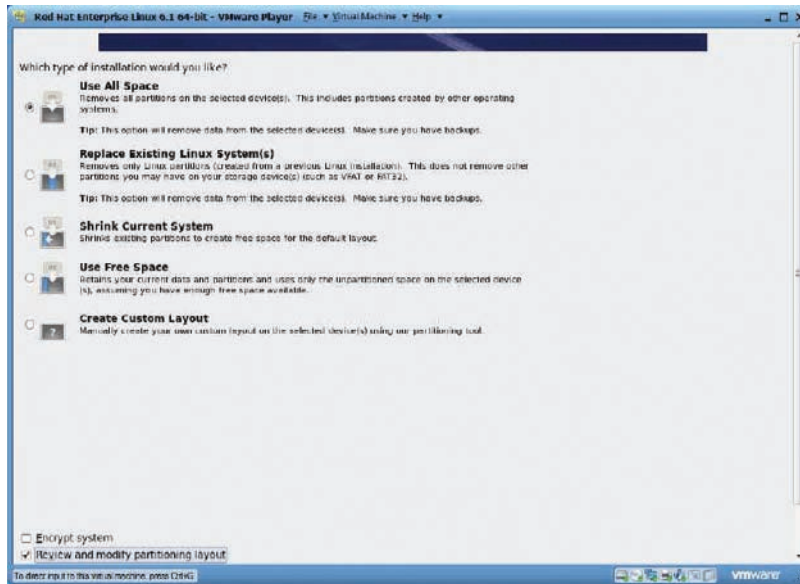


FIGURE 6.15 Choose the installation type.

25. Figure 6.16 displays the partition mapping that the installer will create. You can see that two partitions are going to be built on the device, a small 500 MB boot partition shown as sda1, and the remainder of the device for the file systems. That second partition is broken into two file systems: a 2 GB swap area for system work and the remaining 17.95 GB for operating system, application, and user files.
26. If you were to modify the default configuration presented here, you could select the various partitions and use the Edit and Delete buttons (grayed out in the illustration) to make those changes. You could also add partitions with the Create button, but you would have to stay within the 20 GB allocated for the current virtual machine configuration.
27. Select Next to continue.

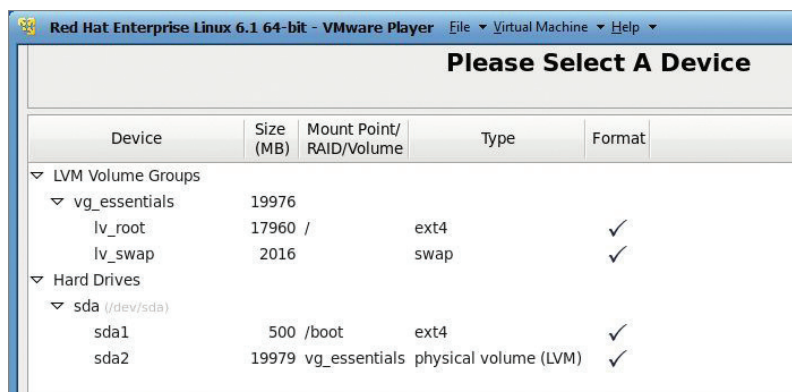


FIGURE 6.16 Examine the disk partitions.

28. A warning appears that the virtual disk is going to be formatted, as shown in Figure 6.17. Select Format to continue.
29. A second message appears confirming the choice. Select Write Changes To Disk.

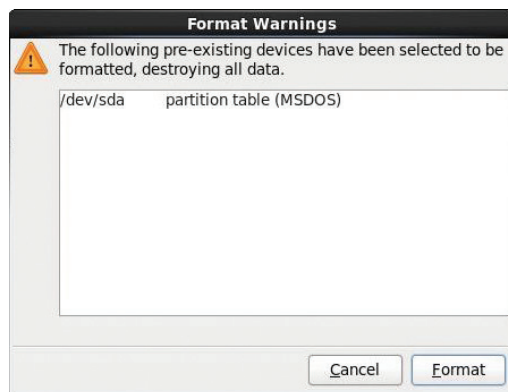


FIGURE 6.17 The storage format warning

30. After the partitions are created on the virtual disk drive, the boot loader screen appears, as illustrated in Figure 6.18. This step installs the boot software into the boot partition just created. When you power on the VM, this is the software that instantiates RHEL. Select Next to continue.

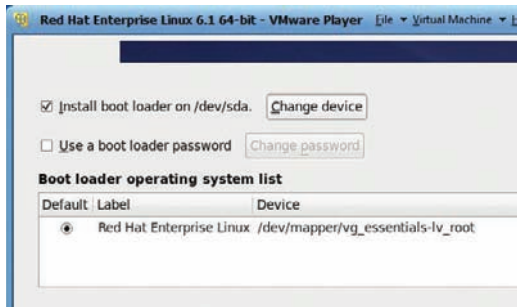


FIGURE 6.18 The boot loader

31. The Package Group selection screen is presented, as shown in Figure 6.19. The different packages install different application software suites in addition to the Red Hat Linux operating system. The example uses the default to provide a basic desktop edition. Other choices may require customizations of the application suites that are part of those packages.
32. Select Next to continue.

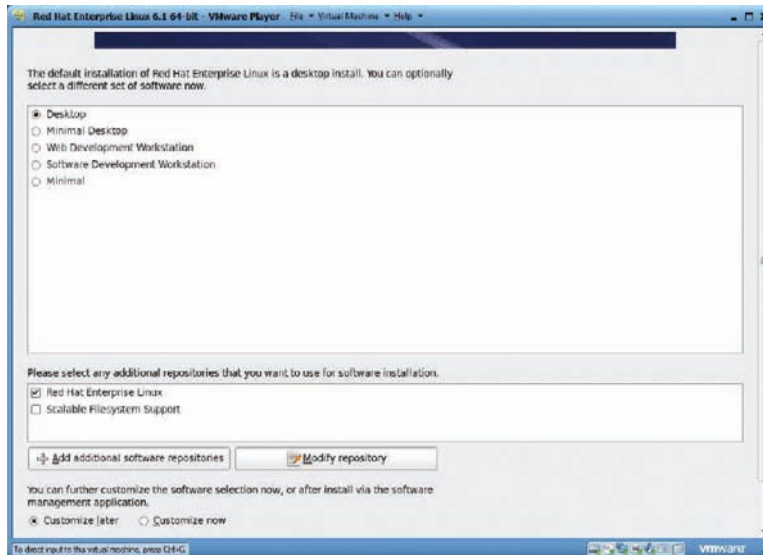


FIGURE 6.19 Package group selection

33. The installer then verifies that the package selected has no dependencies that cannot be satisfied and the installation begins. The status

bar displays the progress of the installation as the various software packages are installed. This is usually a good time to refill your coffee or grab a quick snack.

34. The example installation process needed about 25 minutes to complete. Yours may vary depending on your hardware configuration. A number of post-installation configuration steps are executed. The installation has been completed, as shown in Figure 6.20.
35. Select Reboot when you are prompted.

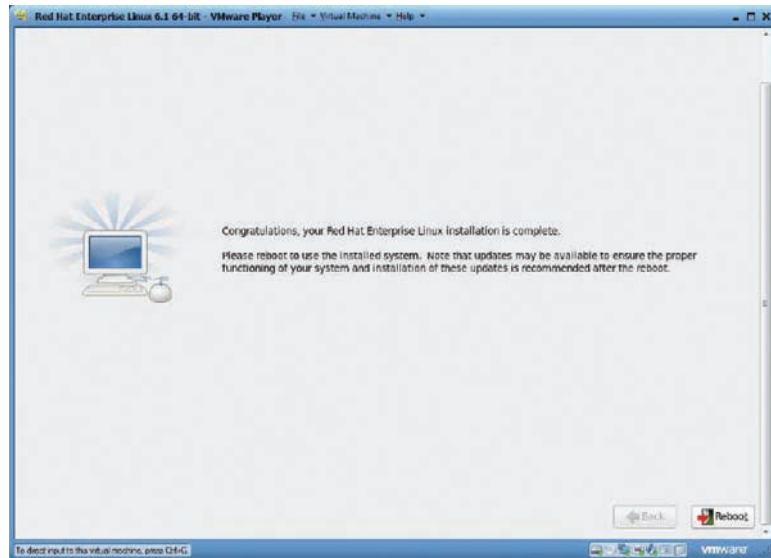


FIGURE 6.20 Completed installation

36. After the reboot, Linux needs to be set up; the process is similar to the Windows setup process. The Welcome screen, shown in Figure 6.21, outlines those steps. Select Forward to continue.

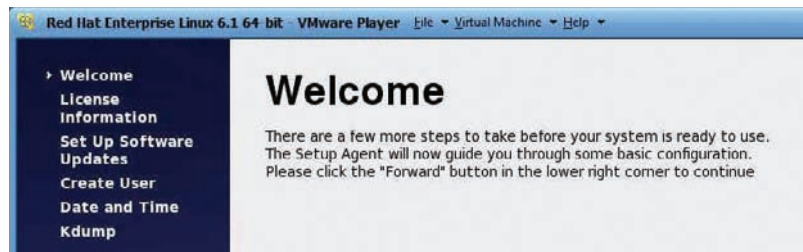


FIGURE 6.21 The Welcome screen

37. The End User License Agreement is presented, as shown in Figure 6.22. Agree to the License Agreement and select Forward to continue.

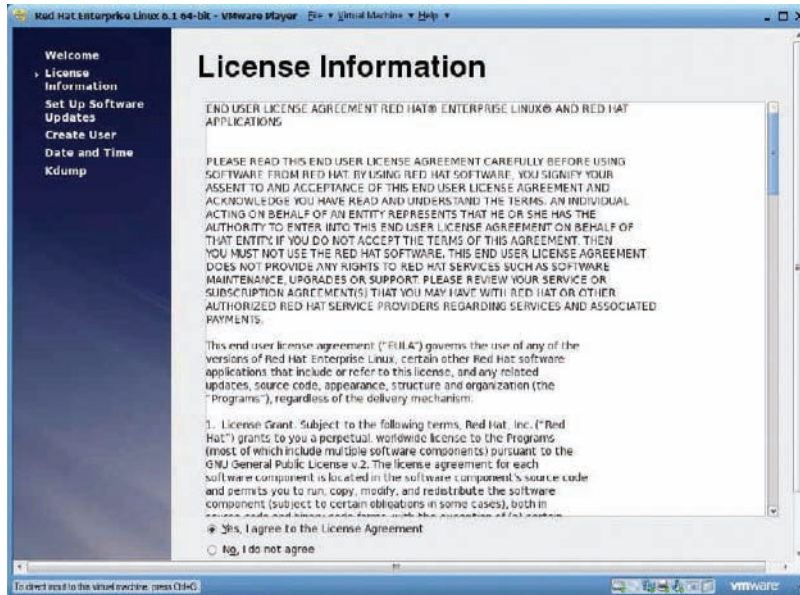


FIGURE 6.22 The End User License Agreement

38. As shown in Figure 6.23, the network connection is not yet activated, so you cannot configure System Updates yet. Select Forward to continue.



FIGURE 6.23 Software updates

39. A user, aside from the administrative root user, must be created. As shown in Figure 6.24, enter an appropriate username, the user's full name, a password, and its confirmation. Select Forward to continue.

As with the root password, if you have not chosen a strong option, a warning message will appear. You can resubmit a stronger password, or chose Yes to keep the one you have chosen.

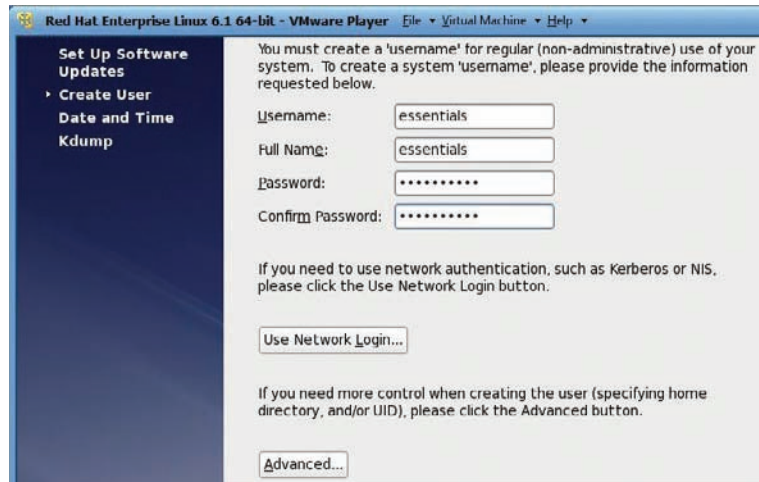


FIGURE 6.24 Create a user.

40. As illustrated in Figure 6.25, set the date and time of the system. Select Forward to continue.

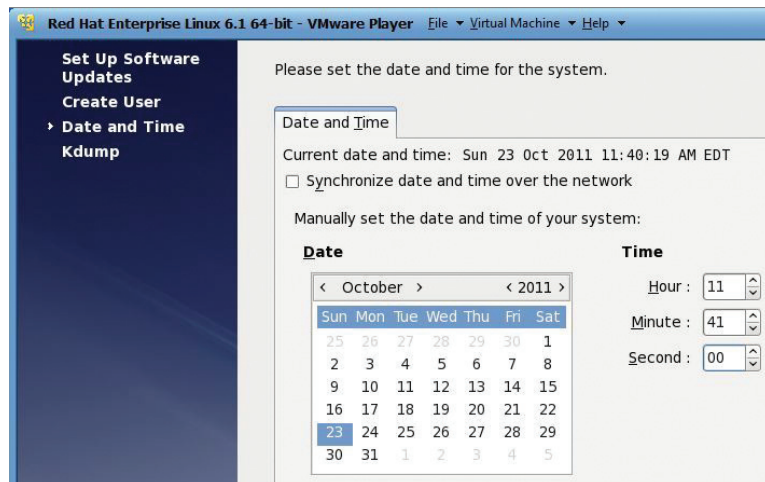


FIGURE 6.25 Set the date and time.

41. As shown in Figure 6.26, an error appears complaining about insufficient memory to configure kdump. The kdump process is called in the event of a system crash. This message is a known bug for some systems with less than 4 GB of memory. In some future update, it will be resolved and this message will not appear. For our purposes it is a nonevent, so you can select OK to continue.
42. The kdump screen appears, but it is all grayed out. Select Finish to continue.

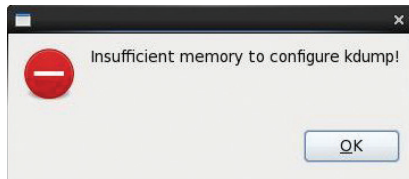


FIGURE 6.26 The kdump memory warning

43. The virtual machine reboots and the login screen appears, as shown in Figure 6.27. Because VMware Tools needs to be installed as root, select Other.
44. Enter root into the Username field and select Login to continue.
45. Enter the password you created and select Login to continue.
46. A warning message will appear explaining that most work should be done as a normal user. Select Close to continue.

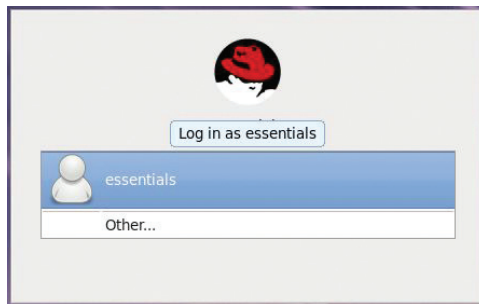


FIGURE 6.27 Login

Installing VMware Tools

As with the steps you followed for the Windows installation, installing the VMware Tools into a VM will enhance the user experience with the VM, improve

performance, and help manage the VM. While installation of the VMware Tools is not mandatory, it is very highly recommended for VMs in any of the VMware environments. There are similar utilities for the XEN platform as well, and we will discuss these further in Chapter 12, “Configuring VM Supporting Devices.”

1. Choose the Install VMware Tools option from the Virtual Machine menu on the VMware Player window. A screen appears prompting the download of the VMware Tools for Linux, as shown in Figure 6.28.
2. Select Download and Install to continue.

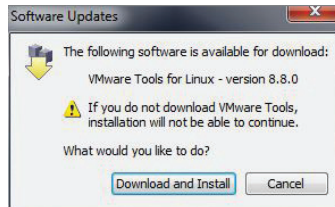


FIGURE 6.28 Download VMware Tools for Linux.

3. A status bar indicates the progress of the download. The example Windows 7 system needed to have the software update for VMware Player verified, but continued and then completed the download. As shown in Figure 6.29, the VMware Player lists the steps below the VM window to complete the install:
 - ▶ Make sure you are logged into the VM.
 - ▶ Mount the virtual CD drive.
 - ▶ Launch a terminal.
 - ▶ Uncompress the installer with the tar utility.
 - ▶ Execute `vmware-install.pl`.

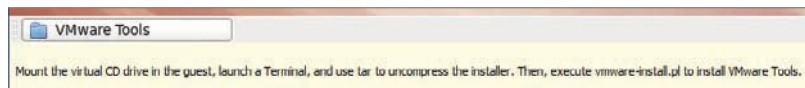


FIGURE 6.29 Tools instructions

4. You are already logged into the VM, and the VMware Tools virtual CD was automatically mounted. As shown in Figure 6.30, you can drag the archive file to the desktop.

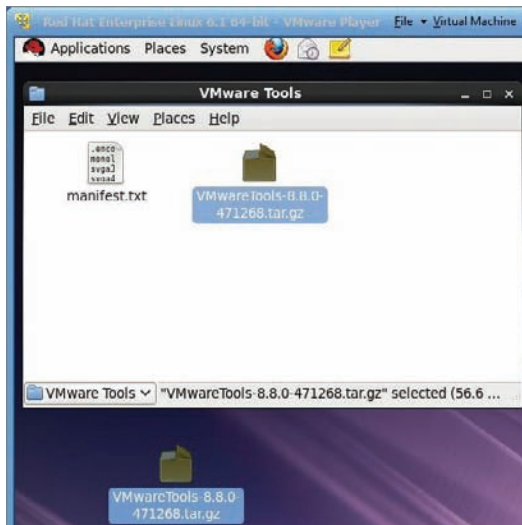


FIGURE 6.30 Copy the archive.

5. Double-click on the archive and the Linux Archive Manager opens.
6. Select Extract.
7. Select Desktop so the folder will be created there, as shown in Figure 6.31.
8. Scroll down and select Extract to continue.

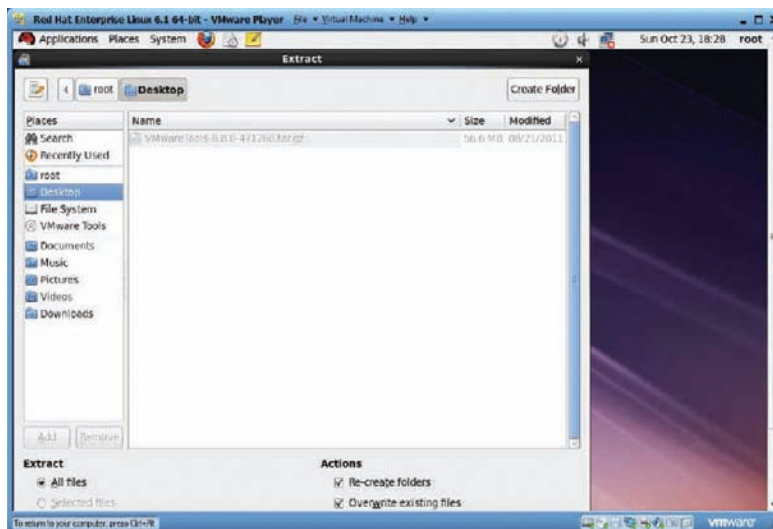


FIGURE 6.31 Extract the files.

9. When the extraction is complete, select Quit and close the Archive Manager.
10. Open the vmware-tools-distrib folder on the desktop.
11. Double-click the vmware-install.pl file.
12. As illustrated in Figure 6.32, a screen appears asking to Run or Display the file. Select Run In Terminal.

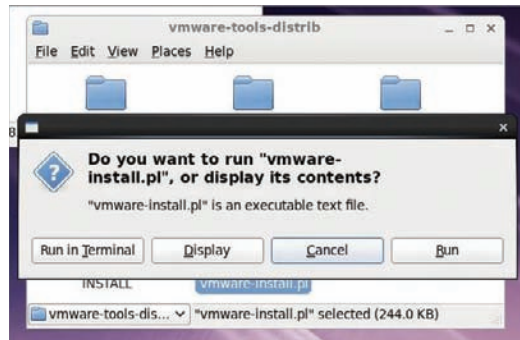


FIGURE 6.32 Run the install script.

13. In the Terminal window, the script will prompt you with default options. As shown in Figure 6.33, press Enter to choose all of the default options.

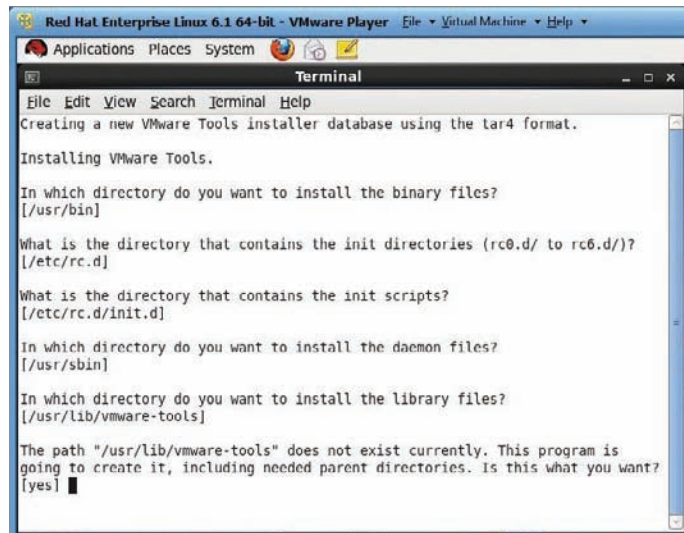


FIGURE 6.33 Select the install options.

14. As shown in Figure 6.34, the installation completes successfully and the script leads into the VMware Tools configuration. Press Enter to execute the configuration script.

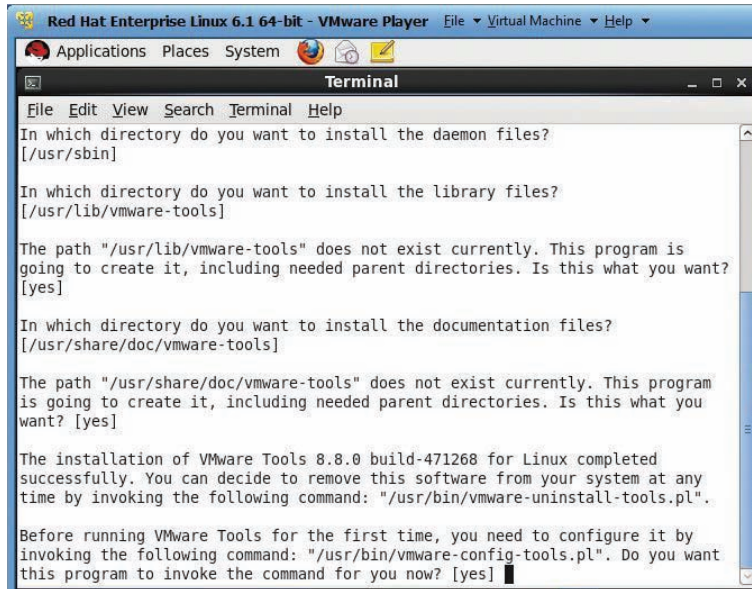


FIGURE 6.34 Launch the configuration script.

15. When the configuration is complete, the Terminal window automatically closes. The VMware Tools are now installed.
16. You can delete both the Tools Archive and the directory of extracted files.

Understanding Configuration Options

Now that you have a working Linux VM, let's take a closer look at what you have built. The first thing to observe is that the virtual machine looks identical to a physical server, which is exactly what you want. It is easy to tell that you are using a virtual machine in this case. Just look at the VMware Player application bar at the top of the VM window. Most virtual machines, however, are run on servers and are connected to by users who never see the physical servers on which the VMs are hosted.

1. There are a few quick adjustments you might want to make before you examine the VM configuration. The first is the screen resolution. The example screen had scroll bars in both directions, hiding the bottom of the screen. The screen can be adjusted in a few steps. First, open the Display utility, which is under the System > Preferences menu on the Linux Tool menu. Set the resolution for a smaller resolution, as shown in Figure 6.35. Select Apply.
2. If the resolution looks good, select Keep This Configuration. The VMware Player window should now be smaller than the desktop.
3. If you maximize the VMware Player window (select the maximize icon on the right VMware Player window or drag the corners of the window) to fill your screen, you can see the entire Linux desktop, including the Trash and Workspace icons at the bottom.
4. Notice too, the resolution values in the Display Preferences utility has changed as you resized the window. Close the Display Preferences Window to continue.

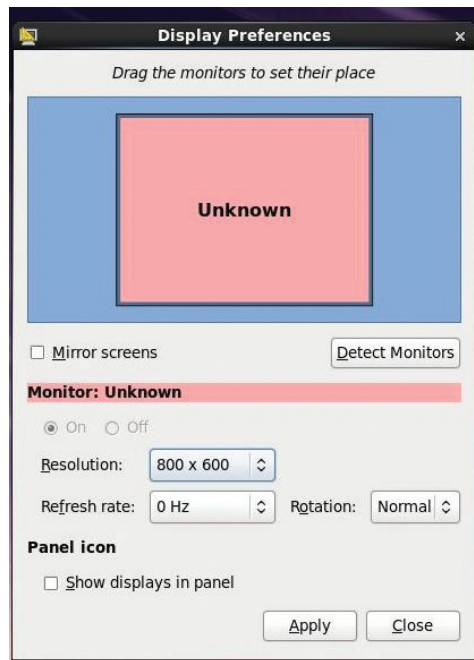


FIGURE 6.35 The Linux Display utility

If your network connection is not yet working, there are a few steps to perform as well.

CONNECTING TO THE NETWORK

You can see immediately if your network is not connected by looking at the icon at the top right of the screen, as shown in the graphic. Opening a browser will also indicate if you have connectivity to the Internet from the VM. It goes without saying that your host machine, or PC, should have Internet connectivity for the VM to be able to connect.



5. Under the Virtual Machine menu on the menu bar of VMware Player, select Virtual Machine Settings.
6. Select the Network Adapter entry in the left column, as shown in Figure 6.36.
7. Select the entry NAT: Used To Share The Host's IP Address. You will learn more about networking in Chapter 10, "Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine."
8. Select OK to continue.

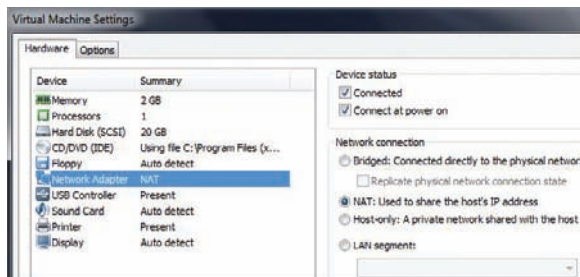


FIGURE 6.36 Setting the network connection

9. Click on the Network icon located at the top-right corner.

10. Select the System eth0 entry underneath the Available indicator.
11. The network should now show as connected.

If you were to connect to this VM via the network using Terminal Services Client or VNC Client, you would be able to tell that this is a VM rather than a physical server.

12. Under the Linux Applications menu, under System Tools, select the System Monitor entry.
13. When the System Monitor window loads, select the Processes tab and scroll down to the bottom, as shown in Figure 6.37. Here you can see the VMTools daemon running.
14. Minimize the window to continue.

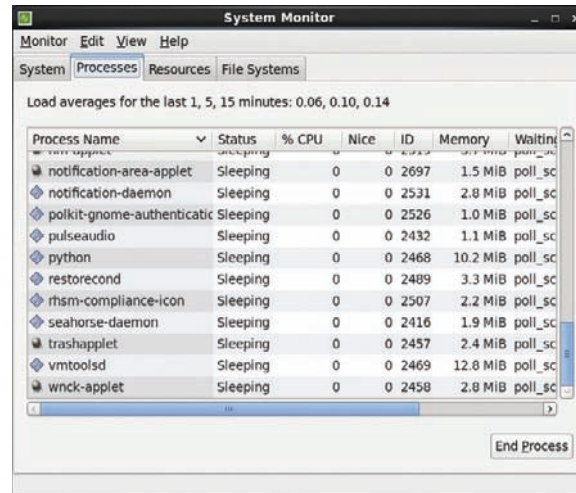


FIGURE 6.37 The LinuxVMTools daemon

If VMTools weren't installed, you would still be able to determine if this is a VM rather than a physical server.

15. Under the Linux Application menu, under System Tools, select the Disk Utility. Highlight the 21 GB Hard Drive entry in the Storage Devices Column, as shown in Figure 6.38. Under the Model designation, you can see that it is a VMware virtual drive. Note that the

Capacity Entry under the Volumes section of the screen shows 524 MB. This is the .5 GB allocated for the boot section of the disk.

16. Highlight the 4.2 GB Hard Disk entry in the Storage Devices column, and you can see the 4 GB allocated for the system swap space.
17. Highlight the 17 GB Hard Disk entry in the Storage Devices column, and you can see the user space that is allocated for the system.
18. As in the Windows VM, the 20 GB of storage space that was allocated for this VM is there and available to the Linux OS in the form of a boot partition, swap space, and user space. As before, you also know that the physical disk has more space than that.
19. Close the Disk Utility window to continue.

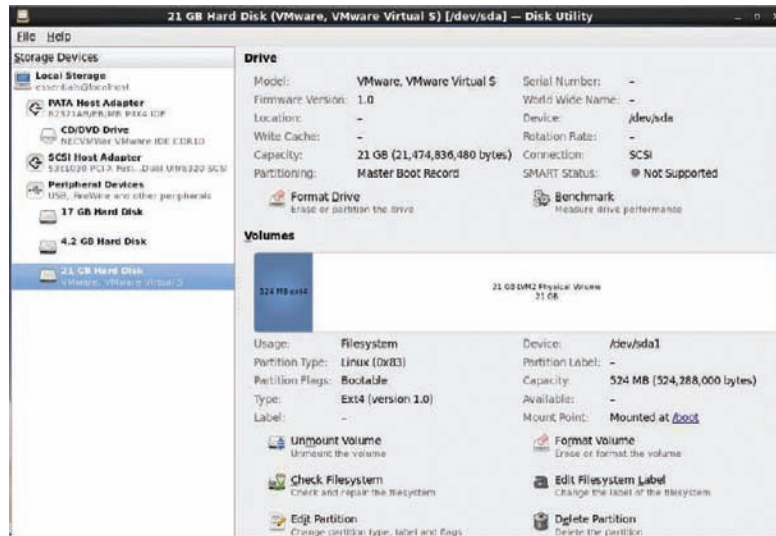


FIGURE 6.38 Virtual disks in Linux

20. Reopen the System Monitor. Select the System tab, as shown in Figure 6.39.
21. Here you can see that the VM has 2.0 GB of memory, just as you allocated. Again, you can see that the physical hardware has more memory available.



FIGURE 6.39 Linux RHEL system configuration

Now you have a complete, functional, Linux virtual machine. From inside the virtual machine, Linux can see the processor and memory resources that you've assigned to it, and the amount of those resources are only a subset of what are available in the physical machine. The VM has access to storage that is also abstracted from what the actual physical storage has available—and there is access to the network, through the physical machines network port.

Optimizing a New Linux Virtual Machine

While a generic install of Linux as you have just done will be fine for educational, or even for test and development purposes, production systems should be modified to be as efficient as possible. Inefficient VMs waste system resources and, when multiplied over many VMs, waste data center resources. The economies of scale that comes with virtualization and consolidation also apply to performance. Ensuring that VMs are as efficient as possible multiplies these performance gains and leads to higher consolidation ratios and greater ongoing cost savings.

Linux comes “out-of-the-box” with a number of processes (or in the Linux/Unix parlance, *daemons*) that are automatically started as part of the operating system boot. The Processes tab in the System Monitor Utility you used earlier shows the list of these processes and also provides a short description of their individual functions. Disabling some of these processes should be a standard practice when creating VMs for production systems. Other published resources

are available that can itemize which daemons should be eliminated based on the deployed applications and hardware configuration. One example might choose the NOOP scheduler, which passes all the I/O through the system in a first-in, first-out manner, assuming that optimization will occur somewhere else. Another might be disabling NFS daemons if you are using a different method to access storage.

Linux distributions are made up of packages. Each *package* contains an application suite or a set of functionality to be installed. Installing only the packages necessary to the operation of a particular virtual machine will save space on the storage side and usually will require fewer daemons running, which means less CPU and memory utilization as well. Everything that runs in the VM uses resources; slimming down the operating system is a good practice on many levels.

One parameter that has been of particular interest with Linux virtual machines is that of time synchronization. Computers have always used time to monitor and control many of the operations that occur on a subsecond basis. Closer to home, applications use time voraciously, for everything from time-stamping business transactions, to ensuring that clustered technologies work effectively. If a computer's clock is not reliable, the work it performs will also be unreliable. To ensure that computers stay in time with each other, there are time servers available on the Internet that you can synchronize with using the Network Time Protocol (NTP). Even if your computer's CPU is slightly off-tune and tends to drift out of sync, the NTP server provides a steady source of reliable time with which to align. Virtual machines have no physical processors, so the guest operating systems need a way to tie to a time source. They do this through the host machine that can be synchronized to an NTP server. This way, all of the virtual machines on a host will have the same time. Groups of machines tied to the same NTP server also guarantee synchronization. Linux systems, because of the way timekeeping is implemented in the Linux kernel, have always had some challenges in a virtual environment. Numerous best practices concerning NTP configuration are available at the Network Time Protocol project website, www.ntp.org, but the various hypervisor vendor sites and knowledge bases have more current information. As Linux kernels have matured, these issues have mostly been resolved, but it is definitely something about which you should be aware.

Finally, as in the physical world, there is no way to effectively judge the performance of a virtual machine without metrics. Before an application is P2Ved, performance measurements should be taken so that a baseline is in place to measure against. Once in place, those measurements should be periodically repeated to determine how an application is faring in the virtual environment.

As the application gets updated, workload requirements change, or hardware alterations occur, physical or virtual, the metrics will prove an invaluable tool to ensuring good continued performance and satisfied users.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

The Linux operating system continues to increase its share of the datacenter server market based on a number of factors including cost, performance, and open source heritage. Applications that in the past were tied to proprietary UNIX versions are now available or being ported to the various Linux editions. Vendors are also taking the open source versions and customizing them for use on their platforms. Two examples of these are the Red Hat–based Oracle Linux and IBM’s z/Linux, which are run on mainframe systems. As these trends continue, expect to see Linux usage grow significantly in the datacenter as a platform for key business applications. Virtualization of these workloads will continue to grow as well.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Change the VM memory to 2.5 GB (2560 KB) in the Virtual Machine Settings. Will the memory be applied?
- ▶ Open the System Monitor under Applications. Select the Processes tab and examine the various processes there. By convention, daemon processes usually end in the letter *d*. How many daemons do you see? Now, switch users to the root user. You can do this beneath System. Choose Log Out, select Switch User, and log in as root. Open the System Monitor again and check for daemons. Are there more or fewer? Why do you think that is?

Managing CPUs for a Virtual Machine

The CPU is the heart of any computer, whether it is a server, a laptop, tablet, or mobile device. As such, virtualization of the processor is a critical part of achieving good performance of the virtual machine, as well as good overall use of the physical resources. Not only is the actual virtualization operation important, but so is the correct allocation and configuration of the VM's CPU. A poorly implemented deployment will cause performance issues and undermine the virtualization effort.

- ▶ **Understanding CPU virtualization**
- ▶ **Configuring VM CPU options**
- ▶ **Tuning practices for VM CPUs**

Understanding CPU Virtualization

Along with memory, network I/O, and storage I/O, CPUs are some of the main resources used to help size and then determine how well a server is behaving. One of the core properties of virtualization, as defined by Popek and Goldberg, is that there should be little or no difference in the *performance* between the virtual machine and its physical counterpart. If any one of the resources is suffering *contention*, or is constrained, then the entire performance of that virtual server appears degraded, even though only one of these resources may be bottlenecked. The CPU is the first of these that we will examine.

The first electronic computers were very large, covering almost 2,000 square feet of space and weighing almost 30 tons. Most of the machine was directed at supporting the actual processing work—the calculations that provided results. Those initial computers were literally programmed by

hand, having wires and patch panels that were reconfigured by a computer scientist to provide a certain set of calculations. When the program was changed, the wires were unplugged and reconnected in a different arrangement to accommodate the updated calculation set. Today's microprocessors are both more powerful and faster by orders of magnitude than those room-sized behemoths.

▶ In 1946, the 30-ton, room-sized ENIAC, considered the first computer, could execute 5,000 additions per second. Today's microprocessors execute billions in considerably less space.

The CPU, or *Central Processing Unit*, is the computer inside the computer, and its function is to execute the programs passed to it from the various programs running on the machine. Programs run on the CPU in the form of a relatively small instruction set. These instructions perform bits of work on the data that accompanies the instructions passed to the CPU. The speed at which these instructions execute directly relates to the apparent performance of the CPU, although it would be more accurate to say that performance is more a measure of the number of instructions executed in a certain amount of time rather than the actual number of instructions being executed. If a particular application workload's requirements cannot execute within a certain amount of time, it appears slow; whether it is because the CPU is older or the application demands more processing time than is available is irrelevant. One solution to this issue is a well-known tradition: throw more hardware at the problem by adding a second CPU. There are other strategies to handle this—for example, hyper-threading, which we'll cover shortly, and resource pooling, which we'll cover in Chapter 14, "Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine."

In the context of virtualization, the question is, "How do you virtualize a CPU?" The short answer is, most times you don't. There are virtualization solutions that attempt to emulate the CPU itself, but emulation often suffers from performance and scalability issues because large amounts of processing overhead are devoted to the effort. Instead, the hypervisor schedules slices of time on the available processors in the physical host server for the virtual instructions to run. A simple example is illustrated in Figure 7.1. The first virtual machine needs to execute a set of commands on the virtual hardware, and that request is directed to the hypervisor. The hypervisor schedules an execution session for that virtual machine's request. The physical CPU executes the instructions on the associated data and passes the results back to the hypervisor, which returns them to the first virtual machine. As the physical CPU frees up, the hypervisor schedules the next set of instructions from the second virtual machine to be performed. In this way, the virtual machines are serviced in a timely and efficient manner while the physical resource, the CPU, is also utilized most effectively. Also, virtual CPUs are not mapped to physical CPUs. A hypervisor will schedule work on behalf of a virtual machine on any available physical CPU, so the work from a particular virtual machine might actually be run on any and all of the host processors over a period of time.

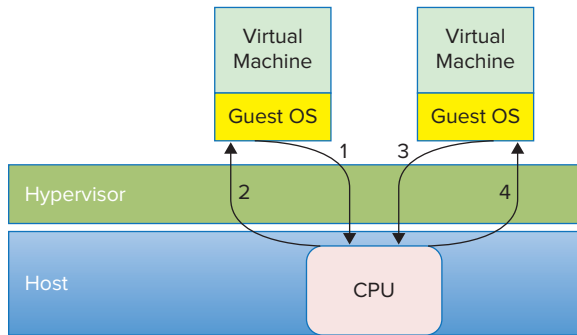


FIGURE 7.1 VMs using a host CPU

If each virtual machine had only one virtual CPU and each physical server had only one physical processor, the model would be that simple. Of course, reality is much more complex. The first wrinkle is that most servers today are configured with more than one processor. That does not greatly affect this model aside from providing additional resources in the form of CPU time that can be allocated by the hypervisor. The next change is that most of today's modern CPUs contain more than one processor in their makeup. Each of these processors in the CPU is called a *core*, and even today's personal computers have multicore CPUs. Table 7.1 illustrates the number of cores available in various processor configurations. Early releases had two (dual-core) or four (quad-core) processors, but servers today have eight, twelve, or more cores. Again, adding more cores to each CPU adds more available processing resources for the virtual machines to utilize.

◀ In 2009, Intel demonstrated an experimental 48-core CPU dubbed a “Single-Chip Cloud Computer.” The postage-stamp-sized chip consumes only the power of a current day quad-core equivalent.

TABLE 7.1 Cores Available in Various Processor Configurations

# of processors	single core	dual core	quad core
1	1	2	4
2	2	4	8
4	4	8	16
8	8	16	32

To distinguish between physical server CPUs and virtual machine CPUs, we'll refer to the latter as vCPUs. What happens when you add vCPUs to virtual machines? If you have a virtual machine with two vCPUs, the hypervisor will need to schedule work on two physical CPUs. That means two physical CPUs would need to be available at the same time for the work to be performed. Don't forget, virtualizing a CPU is really just scheduling slices of time on the physical CPU. In the case of a VM with more than one vCPU, you need more than one physical CPU to be available to do the work. Depending on the scheduling algorithm, which might be an issue in a busy system or a system with a limited number of CPUs, a multi-vCPU system might wait a long time to be scheduled. As an example, if a virtual machine is configured with four vCPUs and it was running on a host that had four physical CPUs, all of those physical CPUs would need to be idle for that virtual machine's work to be scheduled. On a system with other virtual machines, those single vCPU VMs get to grab resources sooner because they only need to hold one CPU. Even VMs configured with two vCPUs would have an easier time being scheduled than the four vCPU VMs. Relaxed scheduling models have made that challenge less likely, allowing CPUs to be allocated in a staggered manner rather than in strict lockstep, which would penalize virtual machines configured with multiple vCPUs.

So far, even with multi-vCPU systems, we have kept things fairly simple when it comes to scheduling time on the physical CPUs, but we have only been discussing uncore processors. When multicore processors are added to the equation, things get more complex. As chip technology has matured, manufacturers have learned to deliver more processing power into compact packages. A "processor" today is usually a package of multiple CPUs, also known as multiple "cores." The mapping of a vCPU to a physical CPU changes by matching a vCPU to one core of the physical CPU. In the previous example, a four-CPU server that had four cores per CPU (quad-core) would have sixteen resources that could be scheduled by the hypervisor. Obviously, the odds of four out of sixteen processors being available at a particular moment in time are much greater than four out of four being free. Since virtualizing CPUs is really just a time scheduling exercise, from a performance standpoint, the more efficiently you can schedule, the better throughput you can receive. Even with multiple cores on both the physical and virtual side of things, which might complicate that scheduling, more resources are better.

Looking at this a little closer, when you plan for how many virtual machines can fit on a host, one of the criteria is the number of vCPUs and physical CPUs. In this simple model, with four uncore physical CPUs on the host, you actually can allocate more than four vCPUs for the guests because individual guests

don't monopolize a physical CPU. If they did, you would need to assign them additional vCPUs. Instead, each guest uses a portion of a physical CPU, and you can allocate more than one vCPU for each physical CPU in your server. The question then becomes, how many more vCPUs can you allocate?

Each vendor has different supported recommendations and different limitations. Vendors have a total number of vCPUs that can be allocated on each individual host, although that theoretical limit is rarely reached. More often, that limit is the vendor's recommended value of vCPUs you can allocate per physical CPU. As of this writing, Microsoft Hyper-V supports eight vCPUs per physical CPU. In a four CPU uncore server, it can support up to 32 single vCPU VMs. VMware's latest release will support up to 25 vCPUs per CPU or a 100 single vCPUs in this four-CPU uncore server. If you were to go through the same exercise with a multicore machine, four CPUs with four cores, you would have sixteen physical CPU resources on which to schedule, and the numbers would increase appropriately. Again, these numbers would vary depending on the workload that the actual deployed virtual machine required.

One last fly in the ointment is hyper-threading, an Intel technology that improves parallel operations in each core by making it appear as two logical cores, almost doubling the throughput available. It does require that the operating system support multiple processors as well as the hyper-thread technology. Most hypervisors support both requirements.

The examples illustrated here are considered guidelines, but actual performance is dependent on the host server hardware configuration, as well as workloads of the guest VMs. An underconfigured host will be able to support fewer VMs than a correctly sized host. Likewise, a host will be able to support more virtual machines that require fewer CPU resources than those that require more. CPU is a key resource and if not planned for properly, contention will cause a bottleneck and overall performance will suffer.

Configuring VM CPU Options

In the case of virtual CPUs, there are very few items that you can adjust to affect the virtual machine's performance. In fact, as part of the virtual machine, there is really only one parameter that you can adjust: the actual number of vCPUs. Until recently, you could increase the number of processors in a virtual machine only when the virtual machine was shut down. This was because the operating systems would not recognize additional processors when they were added. Certain operating systems today, like Linux and Windows Server 2008 R2, will

allow you to hot-add resources such as additional processors. This is a welcome capability because it means that processor resources can be added to a server without needing to interrupt the application or the users, while providing more horsepower for the work to be done. Currently, you cannot similarly reduce the number of CPU resources in a running virtual machine. In that case, you would need to shut down the VM, change the number of CPUs, and then restart the system. Again, this is because the operating systems do not support a hot-remove capability.

1. To examine or change the number of processors in your virtual machine, you can Select Virtual Machine from the VMware Player menu bar.
2. Select Virtual Machine Settings from the menu.
3. As shown in Figure 7.2, selecting the Processors line on the left side of the screen under the Hardware window will display the Processor options.
4. By selecting the Number of Processor Cores dropdown menu, you can chose up to four vCPUs for your virtual machine. If you have an application that requires more than a single vCPU, you can increase its number of vCPUs at this time. VMware Player limits you to four vCPUs in a single virtual machine, but other Tier-1 hypervisor solutions, from VMware and others, allow you to configure many more.

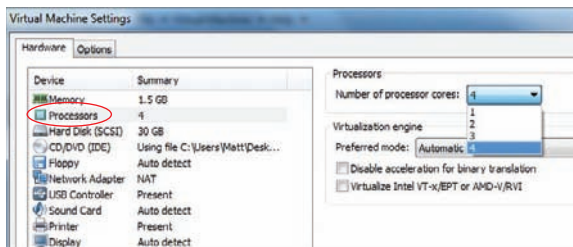


FIGURE 7.2 Processors in a virtual machine

Tuning Practices for VM CPUs

Although a CPU is one of the core resources for correctly sizing and managing virtual machine performance, it is also the one with the fewest number of moving parts when it comes to tuning. Essentially, you can affect the number

of vCPUs that you allocate to a virtual machine and you have some ability to control how those vCPUs are seen by the virtual machine. Aside from that, there are few factors on the physical server that are changeable that can effect on how well the virtual machines perform.

Choosing Multiple vCPUs vs. a Single vCPU

When you're building a virtual machine, one of your initial configuration choices is the number of virtual CPUs that will be allocated to the VM. The choice would seem to be fairly simple, either one or more than one, but this is one of the largest areas of discussion when it comes to virtual machine performance. As with physical servers, having multiple CPUs in virtual machines would provide more CPU resources to utilize; but as you have seen, having additional vCPUs can actually hinder performance because the additional vCPUs need to be scheduled simultaneously, which is not always possible on a busy system. Despite this, administrators often overallocate the number of vCPUs in a virtual machine.

The reason this happens is primarily due to demands from the application owner or the application vendor who may not be knowledgeable about virtualization performance. The history of an application in the physical world is usually one of "more is better." As you saw earlier, even though processor speed and efficiency increases regularly, the use of those processor resources do not. Compounding the effect is the fact that hardware vendors have configured more processors and more cores per processor into each server, so very often an application is using a mere fraction of the CPU power available to it. So, when a company undertakes a virtualization project, it is not unusual for application owners to push back on the virtual machine configurations that are allocated to them. Their thinking is that the application is currently running on a physical server that has two dual-core processors, so the virtual machine should also have four vCPUs, even though that physical server may be using less than 5 percent of those processors.

This is not to imply that there are not applications that require multiple vCPUs. There definitely are, and they should be configured accordingly. But the majority of virtual machines can be and should be configured with one vCPU. Before workloads are P2Ved, a number of different performance tools can be run to determine a baseline of expected CPU performance. One advantage of a virtual machine is that its configuration can be modified quickly and easily as capacity requirements change. Instead of sizing the virtual machine for a future workload three years down the line, as you would do with a physical server, the VM can be adjusted on an as-needed basis. Earlier, you saw that vCPUs can potentially be hot-added without interrupting the application at all. Again, it

It is outside the scope of this text and beyond VMware Player's capability to create a multicore vCPU. For more information, go to <http://kb.vmware.com/kb/1010184>.

is best to begin with a single vCPU and then adjust upward if circumstances demand it, rather than to start with many and work downward.

Finally, some operating systems can run only on a limited number of CPUs. In the case of Windows XP Professional Edition, the maximum physical processor limit that is supported is two. If you load Windows XP Professional Edition on a server with four processors, it will use only two of them. Similarly, if you create a virtual machine with four vCPUs, Windows XP Professional Edition will utilize only two of them. However, it will take advantage of multicore processors, so if you could build a VM with multicore vCPUs, you could use more resources. Fortunately, certain hypervisors have this capability, allowing you to create a dual-core vCPU, for example. Creating a virtual machine with two dual-core vCPUs would allow Windows XP Professional Edition to use four CPUs, much the same as it would if it were installed on a physical server with two dual-core CPUs.

Hyper-Threading

Hyper-threading is an Intel microprocessor technology that improves performance by making more efficient use of the processor scheduling. Prior to hyper-threading technology, only one set of instructions could be executed on a processor at a time. For each physical processor, hyper-threading presents two logical processors. Each logical processor can process an individual *thread* of work, so for each physical core, two threads of work can be scheduled. Hyper-threading doesn't double the capability of a processor, but it might provide an additional 30 percent efficiency under the right circumstances.

A few prerequisites are required for hyper-threading to work. First, the processor must be an Intel microprocessor that is capable of hyper-threading. The operating system must support multiple processors, and it must be capable of supporting hyper-threading. Windows and Linux support hyper-threading, as do most hypervisors. This means that a hypervisor can schedule two threads of work on each physical processor or core on the physical server. Let's check your system to see if hyper-threading is enabled.

1. From the Windows Start menu, choose Control Panel.
2. From the Control Panel entries, choose System and Security.
3. From the System entries, choose System.
4. As shown in Figure 7.3, select Performance Information and Tools from the left menu.

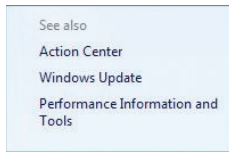


FIGURE 7.3 The System Screen Control Panel menu

5. As shown in Figure 7.4, select Advanced Tools from the left menu.

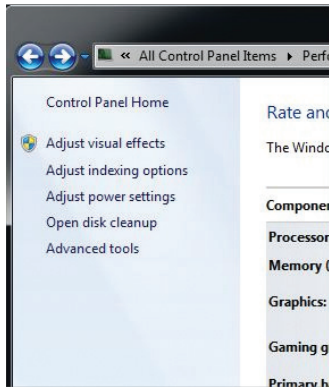


FIGURE 7.4 The Performance Information Tools menu

6. Choose View Advanced System Details In System Information from the list shown in Figure 7.5.

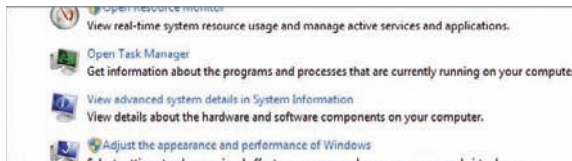


FIGURE 7.5 The Advanced Tools menu

In Figure 7.6, next to the item Processor, you can see that the example system contains two processor cores, and four logical processors, which translates back to two threads per core. Hyper-threading is enabled on the physical system.

System Manufacturer	TOSHIBA
System Model	Satellite L755
System Type	x64-based PC
Processor	Intel(R) Core(TM) i3-2310M CPU @ 2.10GHz, 2100 Mhz, 2 Core(s), 4 Logical Processor(s)
BIOS Version/Date	INSYDE 1.70, 4/19/2011
SMBIOS Version	2.7
Windows Directory	C:\windows
System Directory	C:\windows\system32
Boot Device	\Device\HarddiskVolume1

FIGURE 7.6 The System Information summary

Working with Intel and AMD Servers

When it comes to virtualization, questions often arise regarding which x86 chip set is best for performance. At present, the best answer is that no x86 chip set is particularly better than another. As a proof point, companies are not making hardware decisions based on the chipset in the server. Companies refresh their server hardware and improve the platforms on which they run either through a consolidation effort as they move to a virtualized environment or by replacing their virtualized environment. Sometimes these upgrades involve switching to a vendor that uses a different x86 microprocessor—for example, when going from Intel to AMD. From a performance standpoint, typically there is not that much fluctuation in CPU performance, but there is a potential change in operational performance.

Hypervisors will run just as well on either an AMD or Intel platform; in fact, there is no way to discern what chip you are running on from an operational standpoint. However, issues can arise when you are working in a mixed environment, supporting both Intel-based and AMD-based servers. You'll learn later about *clustering* hosts for increased performance and availability. For now, you just need to know that one feature of clustering is the ability to migrate a virtual machine from one physical server to another, while the virtual machine is still running, without interrupting the application on that virtual machine. This capability is used for dynamically load balancing virtual machines across a number of physical hosts and for evacuating a physical host so that maintenance can be done. This is true for a cluster made up of physical servers that share the same vendor microprocessor. In a mixed environment, the instruction sets of the different microprocessors are not identical, so you cannot live-migrate the virtual machines from an AMD host to an Intel host, or vice versa. In order to move a virtual machine from an AMD host to an Intel host, or the reverse, you need to shut down that virtual machine, and then you can restart it on the second host with the different chipset.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

CPUs are the engines that drive computers in all of their many forms. Virtual machines depend on their CPUs even more than their physical counterparts because of the way they are shared among many VMs. Poor configurations on both the physical and virtual side can magnify performance issues, causing problems for applications and users alike. Modern physical servers are configured with CPUs that contain multiple processors or cores. Each of these cores can be used to schedule work on behalf of a single vCPU, adding additional capacity and flexibility when you're planning for performance. Capabilities that physical CPUs can take advantage of, such as hyper-threading, can also be utilized by virtual machines and their vCPUs.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ You have a virtualization host that has four processors and each processor has four cores. According to the vendor guidelines, the virtualization solution you've chosen will support up to 18 vCPUs per physical CPU. If you want to keep about twenty percent of your CPU capacity in reserve for growth and performance spikes, how many single vCPU virtual machines will you be able to deploy on this host?
- ▶ At the last moment, your procurement group was able to contribute additional monies for the host and instead of a quad-core server, you are able to acquire a virtualization with four eight-core CPUs. The trade off is that you will need to support an additional application that consists of 17 virtual machines configured with four vCPUs each. Keeping that same twenty percent reserve, in addition to the 17 larger VMs, how many single vCPU virtual machines will you be able to deploy on this host?

Managing Memory for a Virtual Machine

Memory, like the central processing unit (CPU), is a crucial part of the virtual machine. Unlike the CPU, memory is usually the resource that is consumed the fastest. Hypervisors abstract memory by handling data blocks between the server's physical memory and what has been allocated to the virtual machines. The management of memory resources by both the hypervisor and the administrator is important to effective use of the physical resources.

- ▶ **Understanding memory virtualization**
- ▶ **Configuring VM memory options**
- ▶ **Tuning practices for VM memory**

Understanding Memory Virtualization

Fifteen years ago, the concept of computer memory was isolated in a few pockets of people who, in some way or another, were involved with computer technology. They didn't even refer to it as memory, but rather as RAM, which stands for Random Access Memory. RAM was thought of and treated as another storage device, like a disk, but it was much faster and you could access data in memory with a more flexible model than accessing data from disk storage devices. System memory sizes were much smaller as well, measured in kilobytes and then megabytes. Let's contrast that with today's environment. The devices we discussed earlier, personal computers and smart phones, routinely are offered with gigabytes of memory. iPads and other tablets are similarly provisioned as well. In addition to those items, many other devices that are part of our daily experience have memory as part of their configuration. Digital cameras, mp3 players, and game systems have all added to our pool of common consumer electronics. With the spread of these commercial devices, the idea and understanding of what memory

provides to computing has also spread throughout the population so that today both 12-year-old children and 70-year-old grandparents are aware of, and often knowledgeable about, memory.

MEMORY GROWTH IN CONSUMER DEVICES

The initial commercial personal computers in the 1980s came with 64 KB of memory. One popular model was named the Commodore 64 because that amount of RAM came configured with the system. Like today, initial limitations in memory size were due to cost, the ability of the chip (CPU) to manage large amounts of memory, and the ability of operating systems to address large amounts of memory. The Apple iPad 2 offers 512 MB of memory, which is eight thousand times larger than the memory offered in a Commodore 64.

Memory is a computer's workspace. When an operating system boots up, certain regularly used routines are loaded into memory and stay there. As programs are executed, those routines are copied into memory as well for speed of execution and quick access for reuse. When programs work on information, that data is also moved into memory so all of the calculation's various parts and pieces can be quickly transferred to the CPU for processing and then written back to memory after whatever transformations the CPU has performed. With more memory, computers can access and process larger amounts of data faster. In game systems, DVD players, and digital video recorders (DVRs), memory is used as a buffer to stage data so it can be smoothly presented to a screen. With the growing spread of real time multimedia in the consumer marketplace, memory is a critical part of the equation.

The same holds true in virtualization. More than any other resource, memory is the one with the largest impact on how well or how poorly the virtual environment will perform. As with CPU virtualization, the hypervisor abstracts memory by using the physical server's memory on behalf of the virtual machines it supports. To understand how memory works in a virtual environment, we need to return to the Windows virtual machine that was created in Chapter 5, "Installing Windows on a Virtual Machine." We began with 1 GB of memory, and, as shown in Figure 8.1, we later adjusted that to 1.5 GB. The physical system that the virtual machine is hosted on has more than that, whether it is the 4 GB that the test system is using, or the hundreds of gigabytes with which current servers are outfitted. The point is that the virtual machine, and by

extension, the operating system in the virtual machine, is only aware of the 1.5 GB that is allocated.

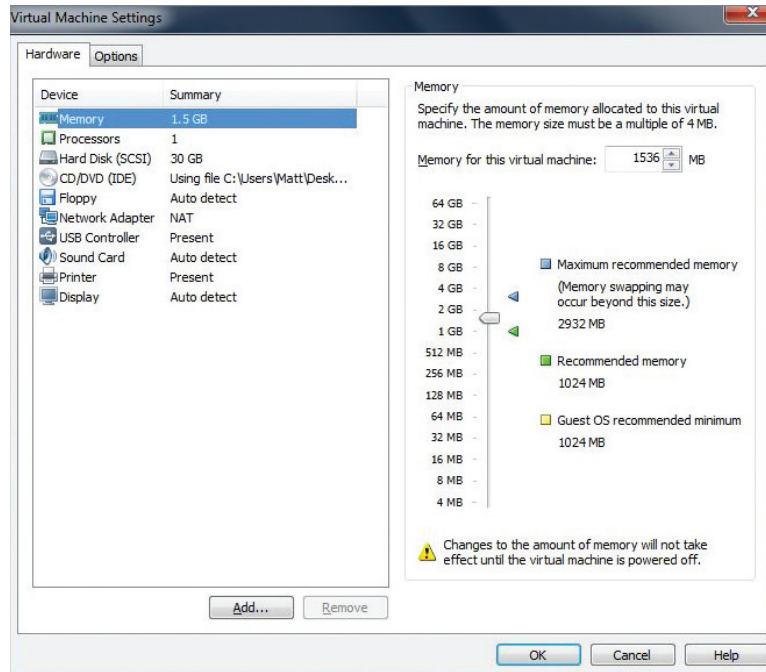


FIGURE 8.1 Memory in a virtual machine

But that 1.5 GB is not nearly enough working area to hold an operating system, some applications (for example, Microsoft Word, Adobe Acrobat Reader, and Mozilla Firefox), and the data that you might be using with those applications. Because of this, operating systems have been developed to constantly shuttle program and data information between physical memory and disk storage. Memory blocks are referred to as *pages*, and they are usually moved around in uniform sizes; in today's architecture, a typical memory page size is 4 KB. When memory blocks need to be freed up so newer information can be loaded, the older, less-recently used blocks are written to disk. The disk acts as an extension of the physical memory, and the process of copying the pages to the disk is called *paging*. The file that the memory pages are copied to is usually called the *page file*. Processors have physical memory, called *cache*, as part of their makeup, where work is queued up before entering the CPU. A very simplified illustration of the process is shown in Figure 8.2. Because working with

disk storage is much slower than working with memory, from a performance standpoint, paging is an expensive process.

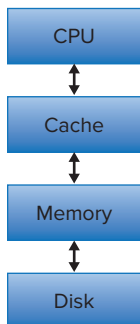


FIGURE 8.2 Moving memory pages

Configuring VM Memory Options

For such an important part of the virtual machine, it is a bit ironic that there is only one adjustment that can be made to a virtual machine's memory and that is to either increase or decrease the size. Additional elements are built into the hypervisor that can be adjusted on a macro level to adjust memory usage throughout the host, but we'll cover them in the next section. Just as with a physical server, a virtual server must be configured with enough resources to do the job it has been assigned. If too much memory is assigned, then memory could be wasted, not being available to other virtual machines. If too little memory has been configured, then memory will constantly be paging to the physical disk and affect the performance of the applications. The trick is to find the sweet spot between too much and too little. Fortunately, best practices and performance tools are available to help guide the way.

1. Although we went through this exercise when you created your virtual machine, let's take another look at setting the memory in a virtual machine. In VMware Player, select the Windows 7 virtual machine.
2. At the bottom right or from the Virtual Machine menu, select Edit The Virtual Machine Settings.
3. The first hardware device highlighted is Memory. As shown in Figure 8.3, on the right-hand panel, you can see the memory

configuration for the Windows 7 virtual machine. As you saw previously, you can adjust the memory up or down using the slider, or by directly changing the value in the Memory For This Virtual Machine text window.

4. VMware Player provides three default values: a minimum recommended memory value, a recommended memory value, and a maximum recommended memory value. The minimum and recommended values are based on the guest operating system, while the maximum amount is based on the amount of memory in the host server.
5. Select Cancel to close the Virtual Machine Settings window.

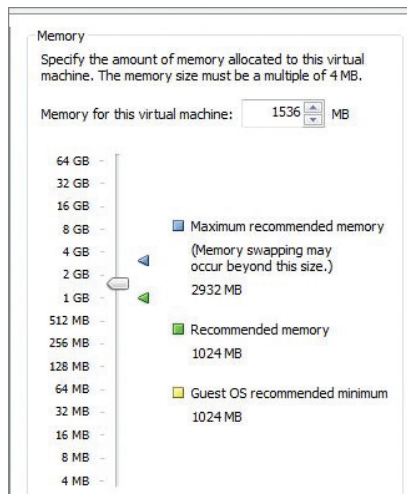


FIGURE 8.3 Memory management in a virtual machine

As you learned earlier, memory adjustments are dependent on the operating system installed in the virtual machine. Dynamic additions of memory without a reboot are possible in operating systems that support this capability. Windows Server 2003, 2008, and 2008 R2, plus newer distributions of Linux do support Hot-Add memory. Windows versions will recognize the additional memory without intervention. At this time, the Linux versions usually need to have a command executed to set the memory status to online before it will be available to the system, physical or virtual. Although you can also edit a virtual machine to remove memory, current operating system releases require a system reboot to make the adjustment.

Thousands of videos are available on YouTube that demonstrate many of the covered capabilities. One that shows how to add memory in a hot production environment is at <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NdpWjAljgoA>.

Tuning Practices for VM Memory

Context is important when you're working with memory in a virtual environment. So far we have looked at memory only from the standpoint of the virtual machine looking outward. The amount of memory that has been allocated to the virtual machine is what it can use. The physical host it resides on may have hundreds of gigabytes available but each individual virtual machine is unaware of the greater resources. Figure 8.4 shows a simple illustration of this model. The two virtual machines have been allocated 4 GB and 2 GB of memory, respectively, and that is all the memory that the guest operating systems in those virtual machines are aware of. The physical host actually has 16 GB of physical memory. With 6 GB of memory already spoken for by the two virtual machines, there are still 10 GB of memory available on the host for use—but that isn't entirely accurate.

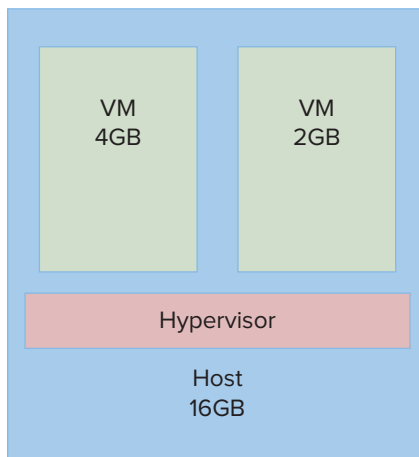


FIGURE 8.4 Memory in virtual machines and their host

Calculating Memory Overhead

The hypervisor itself needs to reserve some portion of the memory for its own processes much as an operating system reserves memory. In the past, this would be a significant portion of physical memory, upwards of 20 percent in

some cases, but newer hypervisor technology has drastically reduced that number. For each virtual machine running on the host, a small portion of memory is also reserved, in addition to the memory allocated for the use of the virtual machine. This additional memory is used for operational functions such as memory mapping tables—connecting the virtual machine memory addresses to the physical memory addresses. The actual overhead numbers vary by hypervisor implementation and the memory configurations of the individual virtual machines. For this discussion, we can use the round number of 1 GB of memory to cover both the hypervisor overhead as well as the virtual machine overhead and be comfortable that we've allocated enough memory whatever parameters we change. That would reduce the available memory to 9 GB.

Now let's add a few more virtual machines. Two additional 4 GB virtual machines and one 1 GB virtual machine will consume the remainder of the available physical memory. In practice, most systems are never fully utilized in this way for a number of reasons, the primary one being that administrators always keep resources in reserve for a rainy day. As virtual machines grow, or unanticipated performance demands appear, having a reserve pool of memory, or any resource, to supplement from makes good business sense. This model now has five guests that are utilizing 15 GB of physical memory, but that is not very efficient. From a strict virtualization standpoint, we haven't improved the utilization of the shared resource, memory, since we aren't sharing it. Each virtual machine is, from a memory standpoint, still behaving like a physical server with a defined amount of dedicated memory. If you compare CPU virtualization and memory virtualization, they are very similar. Both resources depend on the hypervisor to manage the allocation of the larger physical device, while providing the appearance of servicing the virtual device.

The hypervisor determines which pages are written into physical memory, and it keeps track of how each virtual machine's allocated memory is mapped to the physical server's memory through the previously mentioned tables. This holistic view of memory in both the physical and virtual environments puts the hypervisor in a unique position to provide some interesting capabilities. Instead of having a fixed amount of memory, what if you could vary memory up and down depending on the workload? As part of that process, there would be need for a way to reclaim memory pages that were no longer needed. Storage technologies

today routinely use deduplication and compression technologies for improved performance and cost savings. Could you do this with memory as well? The answer to both of those questions is yes.

Memory Optimizations

The five virtual machines are allocated 15 GB of memory among them, but in reality they are probably using much less. Application owners routinely ask for more memory than normally required to handle growth and performance spikes. Physical servers, because of the static nature of their configuration, are sized with additional memory for future capacity and potential need. These ingrained practices often find their way into the virtual world as well. The result is that virtual machines often are unnecessarily allocated more memory as well. The hypervisor has the ability to circumvent that issue. Because the hypervisor controls all of the physical memory operations and the virtual machine's view of those operations, it is simple to tell the virtual machine that it has a certain amount of memory, but then work behind the scenes to make that amount flexible.

Even though a virtual machine is allocated an amount of memory, say 2 GB, the memory is not hard reserved for the VM. The hypervisor can use any of that memory for other virtual machines. The memory allocation is like a high-water mark, and the hypervisor raises and lowers the actual memory amount that is being used. From the guest operating system standpoint, the virtual machine has 2 GB and behaves accordingly. One technique that is used to reclaim memory from the virtual machine is called *ballooning*. A simple illustration of ballooning memory is shown in Figure 8.5. In order to take the physical memory back from a virtual machine, the pages that are in memory need to be flushed back to a different storage device, in this case the paging area of the disk. The balloon driver is activated and (virtually) inflates, forcing the operating system to flush pages from memory. The operating system chooses the pages to flush because it knows which pages are the least recently used and are stale, making them good candidates to remove. Once the pages are flushed, the balloon driver deflates, and the hypervisor reclaims the physical memory for use. Usually, this process only happens when there is contention for memory.

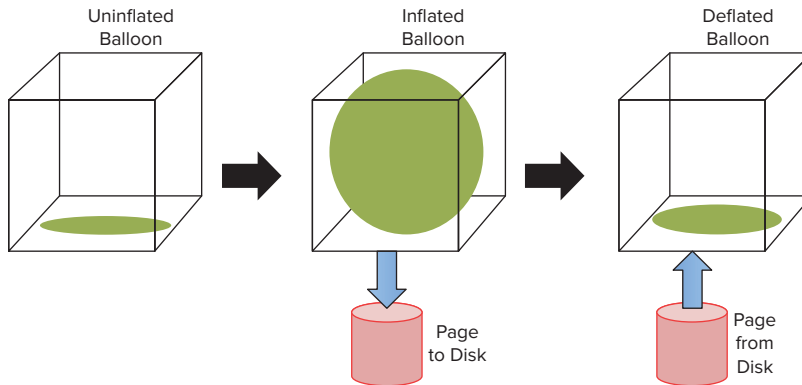


FIGURE 8.5 Ballooning memory

One by-product of this memory agility is that much less physical memory is used than the amount allocated to the virtual machines. If the five virtual machines used half their memory as an average, you would actually have 7.5 GB of additional memory to use. You wouldn't want to allocate 100 percent of the memory—that would leave no headroom for performance spikes. If you conservatively reserve 10 percent of the physical RAM for a buffer, that would still leave about 6 GB of additional memory. Because each virtual machine uses half its allocated amount, you can actually put more virtual machines with an aggregate 12 GB of memory on the host. In the model, we might add another 4 GB VM and four more 2 GB VMs, doubling the five existing VMs to ten. This ability to allocate more virtual memory on a host than physically exists is called *memory overcommitment*. A simpler example is shown in Figure 8.6. Each of the thin blocks represents memory blocks specific to a particular VM. Here, the host has 16 GB of memory, but the three virtual machines have an allocated total of 24 GB.

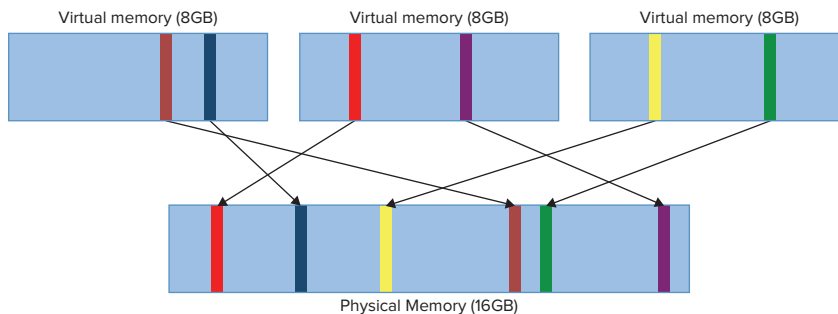


FIGURE 8.6 Memory overcommitment

Memory overcommitment is a powerful virtualization technique, but it is important to understand the memory usage characteristics of your virtual machines in order for it to be effective. Idle virtual machines, or VMs with more memory allocated than they use, allow the hypervisor to manage the memory resource across more virtual machines for a better consolidation ratio, as you saw in the example. The example with the virtual machines using half of their memory is considered to be a 2-to-1 overcommitment ratio. Many mature virtual environments use memory overcommitment, and those that do run somewhere between a 1.5:1 and that 2-to-1 ratio. Application environments that are well understood can run at significantly higher ratios, 10- or even 20-to-1, although these are definitely the far edge exceptions to the rule.

In addition to overcommitment, there are other methods to help increase effective memory utilization in a virtual environment. One of these is page sharing. *Page sharing* is analogous to data deduplication, which is a technique that storage vendors use to reduce data blocks and save disk space by storing only one copy of a duplicated data block. With ten virtual machines, it would not be unusual for many of them to be running the same version of their guest operating system, or even the same applications. Large Internet providers often run dozens if not hundreds or thousands of application web servers, each of which is identically configured from the hardware, to the operating system, and to the application programs. When the virtual machine loads operating system pages or application program pages into memory, many of these pages are identical from one virtual machine to another. Because the hypervisor manages all of the page transfers between virtual machines and the physical memory, it can determine which pages are already in physical memory and use that page instead of writing yet another copy to physical memory. Figure 8.7 illustrates this sharing process. If a virtual machine needs to write to a memory page that is shared, the hypervisor will create a new copy of that page for that virtual machine's exclusive use. This process is called *Copy-on-Write*.

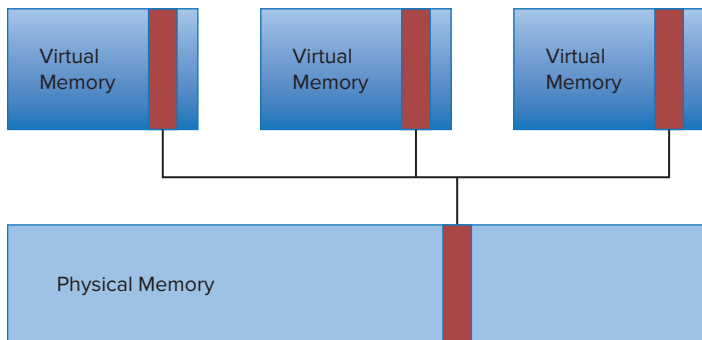


FIGURE 8.7 Page sharing

Not only does page sharing work between different virtual machines, but within the same virtual machine as well. Without having to duplicate these shared pages, even more memory is reclaimed by the hypervisor for use by the virtual machines. In practice, page sharing can save an additional 10 to more than 40 percent of the available physical memory. Virtualization not only allowed the Internet providers mentioned earlier to consolidate those hundreds of application web servers into a much smaller and less costly physical environment, but through the use of overcommitment and page sharing, a much more efficient one. Another utilization that benefits from page sharing is VDI, or Virtual Desktop Infrastructures. VDI is the virtualization of a company's desktop computers, as opposed to the server virtualization on which we've focused. VDI creates virtual machines that are composed of a Windows operating system and an approved set of Windows applications. Creating all of the virtual desktop machines to be essentially identical makes VDI an excellent use case for page sharing.

When a virtual machine is initially booted, the hypervisor reserves an amount of disk storage called a swap space. The *swap space* is for storing memory pages in the event that paging is required. If the hypervisor needs to reclaim memory, it will use the balloon driver to free up memory pages. If activation of the balloon driver hasn't provided enough free memory, the hypervisor can swap all of the virtual machine's memory pages out of physical memory and write them to physical disk. As you might imagine, since disk reads and writes take much longer than memory I/O, the virtual machine's performance during a swapping event is not good. Swapping is the last resort action in a system with memory contention. This is why proper memory configuration and ongoing monitoring is vitally important for good performance in a virtual environment.

One newer available memory technique is memory compression. The goal of *compression* is to defer swapping pages out to disk since that is a more expensive time- and resource-consuming operation. The hypervisor reserves a portion of memory to use as a compression cache. When it determines that paging needs to occur, it examines the pages with algorithms to see the viability of compression. If the pages can be compressed, they are and then moved to the cache, instead being paged out to disk. Restoring them reverses the process. Compression and decompression is a much faster activity than page swapping would be.

Through the use of all of these memory management techniques, virtualization provides a much more efficient use of memory than physical servers. Without these mechanisms, server configurations would need to have more memory configured in order to handle the memory allocated to the virtual

machines. The example server had about 12 GB of memory to work with after we put aside a portion for performance spikes and the hypervisor overhead. With page sharing and ballooning, we were able to effectively double utilization of that memory. If we needed to buy that additional memory, it would cost a few thousand dollars, even for the lightly configured host. Enterprise class systems routinely are outfitted with 128 GB, 256 GB, and even larger amounts of memory. Not having these memory optimization capabilities for servers of this size would require not just additional memory, but purchasing additional servers that would add tens of thousands of dollars to the budget for each server. In a large environment, the cost savings these capabilities provide are considerable.

VENDOR MEMORY OPTIMIZATION TECHNIQUES

In describing the various memory optimization techniques that virtualization can provide, we did not cover which particular hypervisor offers what techniques. One reason is that with each new release, vendors add capabilities that they did not have in the previous release. Vendors also provide similar capabilities, but implemented in different ways. Three popular solutions shown in Table 8.1 have some memory overcommit capability, but they are all architected differently. Even though every capability is not available in every vendor’s offerings today, they might be added in the future. Likewise, new techniques will continue to be added as vendors continue to innovate.

TABLE 8.1 Memory Optimization Techniques

	VMware vSphere (vSphere 5.0)	Microsoft Hyper-V (Server 2008 R2)	Xen variants (Xenserver 6.0)
Overcommit	Yes	Yes	Yes
Ballooning	Yes	Yes	Yes
Page sharing	Yes	No	No
Compression	Yes	No	No

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Memory is one of the key resources in virtualization. Not enough memory or poor configurations can create and magnify performance issues in a virtual environment. In the last few years, the effect of Moore's Law has provided virtual environments with larger amounts of memory, allowing companies to get more virtual machines on each physical host, and to virtualize much larger servers that were not candidates for virtualization just a few years back. In addition to basic memory virtualization capabilities, vendors have developed a number of memory optimizations to further increase memory usage for better performance and higher consolidation ratios.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

You have a 32 GB server to use as a virtualization host. You have thirty-two application servers that you plan to P2V to this host. Each application server is currently on a physical server that has 4 GB of memory. The application servers all run Windows Server 2008.

- ▶ Without taking advantage of any memory optimization techniques, what is the maximum number of virtual machines you can host on your server?
- ▶ With page sharing and ballooning you can take advantage of memory overcommit. If you overcommit memory at a 1.25:1 ratio, how many virtual machines can you now host?
- ▶ While gathering baseline performance metrics for the move to the virtual environment, you find that on average, each system is actually using only 1 GB of memory. Keeping the same overcommit ratio, how many virtual machines can be hosted?
- ▶ You decide to leave some additional memory available for growth or emergency. At a 90 percent utilization limit, how many virtual machines can you have?

Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine

Data storage is everywhere in today's world. Whether the more obvious places like our computers and smart phones, or the less obvious like our DVRs and GPSs, having somewhere to store the information we need to access is part of many routine tasks we perform. In virtualization, abstracting the storage resources requires good planning; but with many choices and strategies, storage virtualization is often an area where many deployments come up short. The good news is that most of the current storage technologies and practices translate well to a virtualization environment so there are many technologies to leverage as you architect your model.

- ▶ **Understanding storage virtualization**
- ▶ **Configuring VM storage options**
- ▶ **Tuning practices for VM storage**

Understanding Storage Virtualization

Data storage is an ever-expanding resource. You only need to examine your personal environment over the past five to ten years to understand how necessary and pervasive data storage has become. Everything from refrigerators to automobiles now contains some amount of data storage. New appliances like GPSs (Geographic Positioning Systems) or DVRs (Digital Video Recorders) have become part of our daily routines, adding to the amount of data storage we consume. Computing devices like PCs, smart phones, music players, and tablets, have experienced storage growth as each new generation of the devices appear. The same holds true in the traditional corporate data center where the amount of data being handled and stored today is far greater than a just a few years back. One reason for this growth is that the type of data is vastly different than in the past. Originally, only text information, words and numbers, were stored and processed. Today, visit any website and you'll find a vast array of visual information: movie clips and motion

pictures; aural information, music and speech; as well a whole host of graphics, animated and static; in addition to the textual information that is presented in all of the many fonts, colors, and sizes available to today's web page designer. All of these elements take up much more space than mere text information. Social media like Facebook and Twitter continue the trend. Wikipedia, eBay, Amazon, Google, and Apple's iCloud are all examples of the current data explosion.

HOW MUCH DIGITAL INFORMATION IS THERE?

A University of California at Berkeley study in 2008 determined the amount of digital information generated for that year to be about 8 exabytes (8 quintillion bytes), or 57,000 times the size of the Library of Congress. In addition, they concluded that the amount would double roughly every six months. The rate of increase has accelerated and as of 2010 that amount had passed 1 zettabyte (1 sextillion bytes), or roughly a thousand times greater in that short span. The IDC Digital Universe Report stated that in 2011, the amount of digital data generated was close to 2 zettabytes (2 sextillion bytes).

From a computer standpoint, whatever the computing device, the process to obtain stored information to work on is very similar. The operating system, as you have seen previously, controls the access to the various I/O devices. An application program is loaded into the memory and, based on the functions it must perform, makes a request to the operating system for information to process. The operating system then passes that request on to the storage subsystem, usually a storage device (or group of devices) with a microprocessor at the front end of the system to help optimize the requests. The subsystem locates the information and then passes it back to the operating system in the form of like-sized data blocks. The operating system transfers those data blocks to the program. The program does its work, and as it needs more information, the process is repeated. If it changes the information in the data blocks, the blocks can then be shipped back through the operating system to the storage subsystem where the altered information will be rewritten to the physical storage device, until it is requested again. This path is similar whether you are doing email on a PC or watching a movie that was recorded on the DVR.

How does this work in a virtual environment? Let's take the example of acquiring information from a disk drive. Figure 9.1 illustrates the path that a request for data makes from the application program to the storage controller. The request goes to the operating system, which determines the I/O device to

which the request needs to go. Direct attached storage (DAS), disk storage internal to the host system, is managed by a storage *controller*, a physical processor card that is part of a computer's hardware. A SAN (Storage Area Network) or NAS (Network Attached Storage) is a disk storage device that is connected to a computer through a dedicated storage network or through the NIC (Network Interface Controller), a physical card that connects the computer to the network. A SAN usually connects via a specialized controller, sometimes called a Fibre-Channel Controller (FCC), or a Host-Bus Adapter (HBA). Each of these physical I/O cards, the storage controller and the network controllers, utilize device drivers that the operating system uses to communicate with them. In the case of a request for information that resides on a local disk, or internal to the computer, that request goes to the SCSI driver. The SCSI driver request, which in a physical server goes to the physical storage controller, is taken by the hypervisor in the virtualized environment. The virtual machine sees a SCSI controller presented by the hardware, but in actuality it is merely an abstraction that the hypervisor uses to send and receive storage I/O requests. The SCSI emulator catalogs the request and places it in a queue with storage I/O from all of the virtual machines on the host. The requests are then passed to the hypervisor's storage device driver, which is connected to the physical host's storage controller. The storage controller executes the request and receives the data blocks that satisfy the virtual machine application's request. The data blocks then follow the reverse path, sent to the correct requesting VM by the hypervisor. The virtual machine's operating system receives the information from the virtual storage controller, and passes it to the application, fulfilling the request.

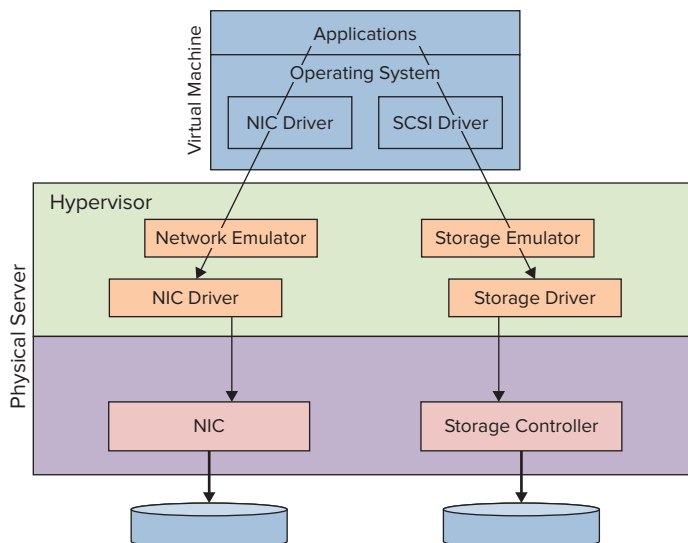


FIGURE 9.1 Virtual storage pathway

The previously described model is the one used by the VMware hypervisor; but as alluded to in Chapter 2, “Understanding Hypervisors,” one major difference between VMware and other hypervisor technologies is how I/O throughput is architected. Shown in Figure 9.2 is the data path for a request in the Xen model, but the basic blueprint is the same for the other Xen variants or Microsoft Hyper-V. Here, the request is generated by the application in the virtual machine, designated a user domain. The request is passed through the guest operating system to a front-end device driver. As with the storage and network drivers in the last example, this model has both a network and a block front-end driver. These front-end drivers connect to complementary back-end drivers that reside in the Dom0 guest, the unique guest with management privileges that has direct access to the hardware. The back-end device driver receives the request from all of the user guests (user domains) and passes it to the Dom0 device driver. The device driver connects directly to the appropriate hardware device that then makes the data request to the storage devices. In this model, the hypervisor is bypassed because Dom0 is the entity that is connected to the storage devices. As with the previous example, the return trip of the data blocks back to the requesting guest application is a reversal of the request’s path.

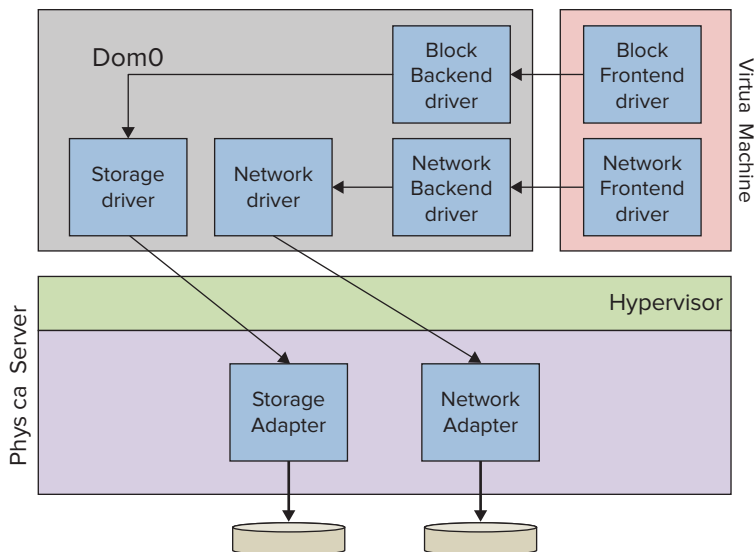


FIGURE 9.2 Virtual storage pathway

Similar to the processor and memory virtualization you saw earlier, storage virtualization is an abstraction of the physical resources presented to the virtual machines as if they actually controlled the physical devices. When you configure virtual storage, you will see that the Windows D: drive with which the virtual

machine interacts is a logical representation of a physical Windows drive as it appears to the guest operating system. From a physical perspective, the data blocks on the physical storage device might be on any one of a number of storage options and connected to the hypervisor-controlled host through a variety of connection types. From the virtual perspective, from the viewpoint of the virtual machine's operating system and applications, it looks and acts like a Windows D: drive.

One key portion of virtualization storage architecture is the concept of clustering and shared storage. SAN or NAS solutions allow a server to access disk storage that is not part of its hardware configuration. They also allow multiple computers to access the same physical drives. Both physical and virtual infrastructures can simultaneously leverage a SAN or NAS device, often making the transition to a virtual environment smoother. For example, a physical server with its data located on internal storage can be P2Ved and spun up as a virtual machine. The data disks would also have to be migrated to the new environment, either as part of the virtual machine or moved to the shared storage. A physical server with data already on the SAN would also need to be P2Ved. Rather than have to copy all of the data disks, they merely need to be remounted by the virtual machine for access. For testing purposes, it gives administrators a simple way to try a virtual environment and fall back to the original server if there are issues. Companies sometimes do periodic P2Vs of physical hosts as a disaster recovery option in case of a hardware failure. We'll cover more about clustering in Chapter 13, "Understanding Availability."

FILE SYSTEM OPTIONS

Each hypervisor offers a file system for use by the virtual machines that abstracts the physical storage so it is simpler to manage than if each VM had direct access to the storage array. VMware uses VMFS (Virtual Machine File System), Hyper-V has CSV (Cluster Shared Volumes), Xen has XFS, and each is used to store their guests' virtual hard drives. There is a way to present storage directly to a virtual machine and bypass a hypervisor that uses a raw device mapping (RDM) or a pass-through disk. RDMs are usually the exception rather than the rule, being useful in certain situations such as the earlier-referenced example of moving storage between a physical and virtual machine via remounting. In earlier releases of these file systems, there was sometimes a bias for raw device mappings where storage I/O performance was a concern due to perceived virtualization overhead. Current releases now offer virtually identical performance for either choice.

In addition to the configurations we covered earlier, there are some newer solutions that can help in virtual environments that are cost constrained. Smaller businesses often cannot afford to purchase shared storage solutions and are limited to virtualizing inside individual hosts. While this may be cost effective, it does decrease overall availability by increasing the number of workloads that will be affected if a single host fails. This possibility sometimes becomes a barrier to entry, causing companies to delay their virtualization efforts until they can acquire traditional shared storage solutions. These new solutions allow a group of separate disks, like the internal server disk drives, to be pooled into a shared resource that can be seen and utilized by multiple systems. A simple illustration of this is shown in Figure 9.3. Two examples of these are HP's P4000 LeftHand SAN solutions and VMware's Virtual Storage Appliance. Both use existing storage to create a shared pool. The acquisition of a more costly storage array is no longer necessary.

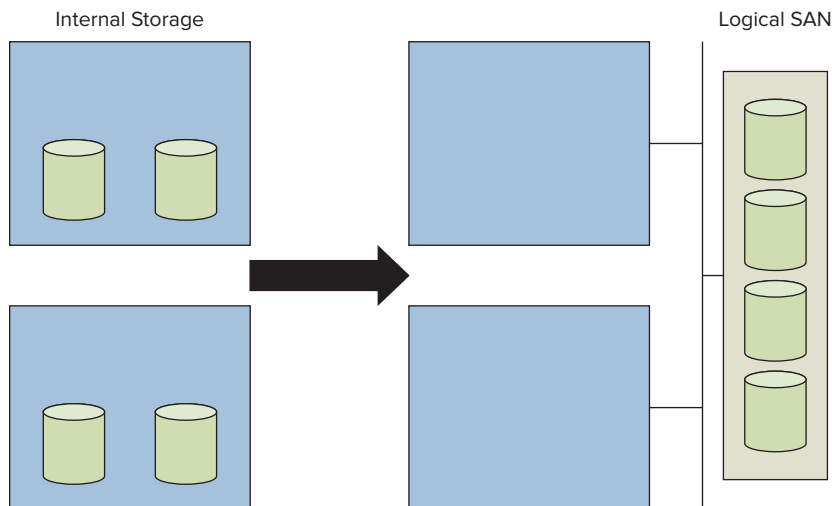


FIGURE 9.3 Pooled storage without a storage array

Configuring VM Storage Options

Like memory and CPU, there are limited options for changing the storage of virtual machine. That is, there are many, many ways to connect and configure storage to virtual machines, but these are all methods that are possible in a physical environment as well. We will cover a number of these in the next

section, but here we will focus on the changes you can make to the virtual storage from the management interface.

1. If your virtual machine is still running, shut it down. Once it is powered down, edit the virtual machine settings and highlight the Hard Disk option. As shown in Figure 9.4, you can see some basic information about the C: drive: some capacity information, the name of the file that comprises the hard disk in the physical system's file system, and a small selection of utilities. The utilities menu shows a number of tools.
2. Defragment is similar to the physical disk tool in that it will rearrange the data files in the virtual disk in a more compact configuration, but it will not reclaim that newly emptied space. Expand will allow you to add space to a virtual disk drive. Compact will reduce the size of a virtual disk by reclaiming empty space, but the virtual machine must be powered down to use this capability.

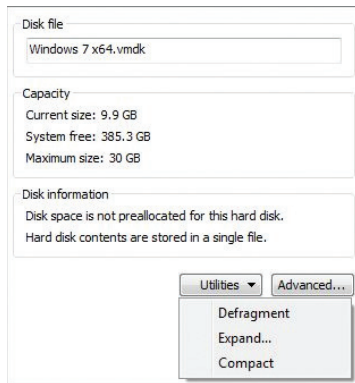


FIGURE 9.4 Virtual hard disk options

3. Let's add a second disk drive to the system. Below the Device Summary on the left side of the screen, select Add. If your host system requests permission for VMware Player to make changes on the computer because it will be creating a new disk file, allow it to do so by selecting Yes.
4. Figure 9.5 shows the initial screen of the Add Hardware Wizard. Hard Disk is already highlighted, so select Next to continue.

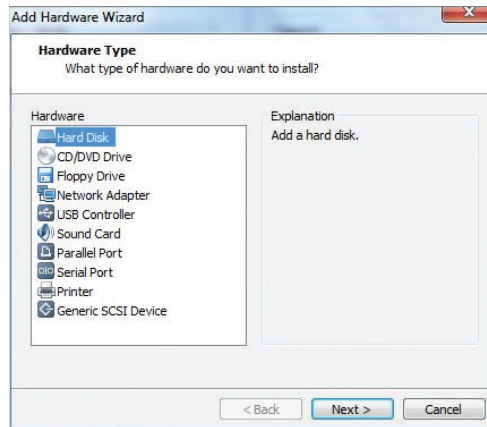


FIGURE 9.5 The Add Hardware Wizard

5. Figure 9.6 displays the Disk Selection screen. The first radio button is already selected to Create A New Virtual Disk by creating a file on the host operating system. Notice the other selections as well. Use An Existing Virtual Disk would allow you to connect or reuse a previously created disk. Use A Physical Disk would allow the virtual disk direct access to a physical device. Select Next to continue.

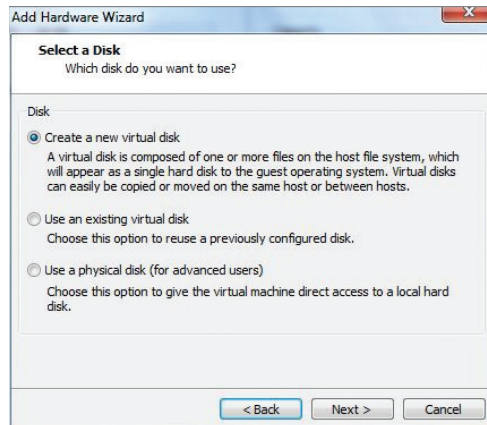


FIGURE 9.6 Select a disk.

6. The Select a Disk Type window appears, as shown in Figure 9.7. You can choose between bus types, but stay with the recommended SCSI. Select Next to continue.

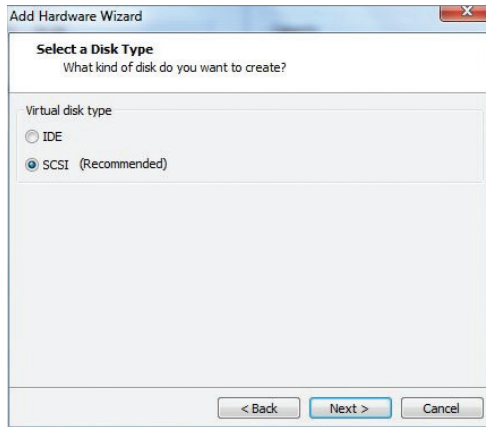


FIGURE 9.7 Select a disk type.

7. Next, you get to choose how much storage space you'd like to allocate to the new drive. You can see in Figure 9.8 that both maximum and recommended sizes are presented as guidelines. You have an option to allocate all of the space on the disk at once, or have it grow incrementally as it is required. As with the C: drive during the original virtual machine creation, you also have the option to keep the disk file as one single file or split it into multiple smaller ones. The pluses and minuses are stated in the description. For this exercise, enter 5 GB, and then choose to Store the virtual disk as a single file. Select Next to continue.



FIGURE 9.8 Specify the disk capacity.

8. The final screen of the Add Hardware Wizard, illustrated in Figure 9.9, allows you to select the name and placement of the virtual disk files. The wizard takes the existing virtual disk name and increments it by default. Also by default, the disk will be placed in the existing virtual machine folder. You can select Browse to examine the folder and existing files there already. When you are done, close the Browse window and then select Finish to complete the process.

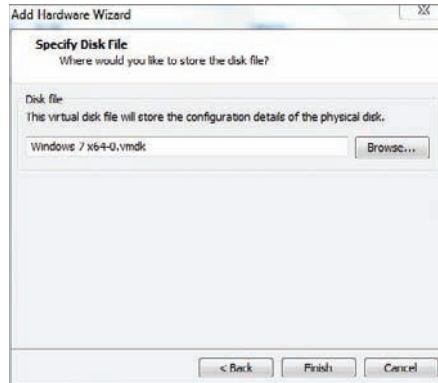


FIGURE 9.9 Specify the disk file.

9. Back on the Virtual Machine Settings window, you can see the new disk has appeared. As shown in Figure 9.10, examine the capacity of the new disk and note that the maximum size and the actual size are different because you didn't pre-allocate the space. If you highlight the Utilities, you can see that the only option available is to expand the disk size. One reason why is that the job of creating a new disk is not complete. The disk is now configured and connected to the virtual machine, but you haven't formatted and initialized it for Window's use.

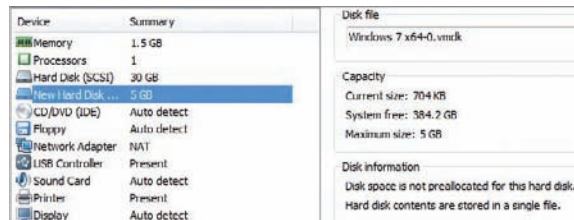


FIGURE 9.10 A new hard disk

10. Select OK to close the Virtual Machine Settings window and power on the virtual machine by selecting Play Virtual Machine. Note that

there are now two disk icons at the bottom of the VMware Player window. If you hover over them with your cursor, you will see both the original 30 GB C: drive and the new 5 GB drive.

11. Once the virtual machine is powered on, click the Start button and select Control Panel. Choose System And Security and then Administrative Tools. Double-click Computer Management. In the left-hand windowpane, expand the Storage item if it isn't already done and select Disk Management.
12. The utility recognizes that the new storage device, Disk 1, has not yet been initialized and, as shown in Figure 9.11, offers to do so. You can move the window to uncover the existing devices and verify that the disk to be initialized is the correct one. Select OK to proceed.

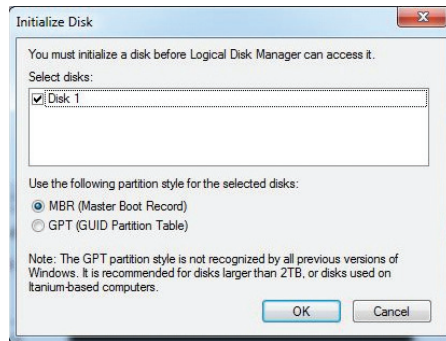


FIGURE 9.11 Initialize the new disk.

13. The new drive is now recognized by the system and is online, but it is still not usable by Windows. As illustrated in Figure 9.12, right-click in the Unallocated portion of the disk and a menu appears. Select New Simple Volume. The Volume Wizard appears. Select Next to Continue.

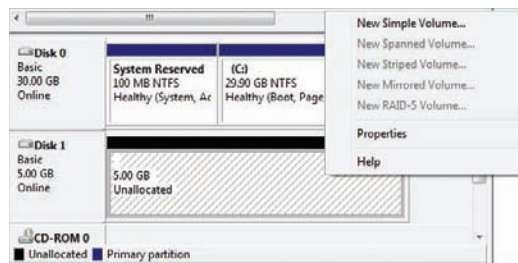


FIGURE 9.12 The New Simple Volume option

14. The maximum and minimum volume sizes are presented, and you can choose a value in MB between those limits. Leave the default, which is the maximum value, and then choose Next to continue.
15. The next screen allows you to assign a drive letter to the new disk. E: has already been selected, but you can change that if you like by choosing another letter from the remaining choices in the drop-down menu. Select Next to continue.
16. The next screen has formatting options. For our purposes, the defaults are fine, but change the Volume label to Second Drive. Select Next to continue.
17. The final screen of the wizard allows you to review the selections you have made. Check your work and then select Finish. After a few moments, as you can see in Figure 9.13, the new disk, Second Drive, has been formatted and mounted to the file system as Drive E:.

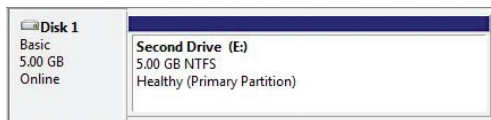


FIGURE 9.13 The new drive is ready.

18. When the drive was mounted, Windows 7 automatically recognized it and an AutoPlay window appeared when the Storage Management Utility was closed. You can also see the drive by clicking the Start button and choosing Computer, as shown in Figure 9.14. The drive is completely empty aside from the overhead Windows maintains for management structures.



FIGURE 9.14 Both hard drives

Tuning Practices for VM Storage

As mentioned earlier, storage is one area where performance issues often arise. The reasons are manifold but usually due to a misunderstanding of how virtualization will affect the overall storage throughput of the environment. These

issues are not isolated to any particular storage choice or connection protocol. The main reason performance issues occur in a virtual environment is consolidation. The same benefit that allows data centers to remove hundreds of physical servers creates the problem that causes the most headaches. By moving multiple workloads in the form of virtual machines to a single physical host server, we've not only aggregated the memory and processing requirements for those workloads, but the storage I/O requirements as well. Virtualization beginners understand the need for host servers with many processors and cores, and much larger amounts of memory, but often neglect the storage and, as we'll discuss in the next chapter, the network throughput needs of a consolidated environment.

Imagine a fire truck answering an alarm. The pumper truck squeals to a halt at the curb; firemen clad in protective gear clamber out and begin to deploy their equipment. Two men attach the hose to the nearby hydrant and station themselves to attack the blaze. But when the water flow is opened, you see that the hose they have chosen is a common garden hose, and the amount of water arriving is not nearly enough to quench the fire. This is very much like a virtualization server without enough storage throughput capacity to handle the requests of many virtual machines it hosts. Consolidation reduces the number of physical servers, but does not reduce the amount of I/O. Often it is across fewer channels, making the problem more acute. To compound things even more, virtualization typically increases the amount of I/O needed because the creation of virtual machines is usually so quick and easy that there are more virtual machines in the virtual environment than were in the original physical environment.

Fortunately, providing enough *pipe* (capacity for throughput) is a fairly well-understood and well-documented process whatever storage choices are in place. Good practices in the physical environment translate directly to good practices in the virtual environment. There are some basic maxims that apply today that have been around for a long time. The first of these is that more spindles are usually better. When faced with a choice between many smaller disks and fewer larger disks, even if those larger disks have better performance characteristics, the choice of the many is usually the best one. The reason is that storage arrays have many strategies to quickly and efficiently read and write data blocks to their disks, and they can do this in parallel, meaning that more disks can allow more simultaneous work to be done.

Other storage techniques and capabilities that are used to good effect in a physical environment also can be utilized for virtual infrastructures. Storage vendors have developed availability techniques to prevent data loss in case of a disk failure. Our investigation here is merely an exposure to the many types of

storage optimizations and not an in-depth discovery that would be necessary to understand all the details of dealing with data storage. One such optimization is disk mirroring. *Disk mirroring* is the use of a second disk to perfectly mirror the data blocks of a disk. In the event the disk fails, the mirror-copy contains all of the information. Mirrored drives also provide the benefit of having two copies to read from, halving the contention a single disk copy might have. *Disk striping* is another common technique. Here a single file system is striped in pieces across multiple disks, and when data is written or read back, the multiple drives can work in tandem significantly decreasing the throughput time. Marrying the two can both increase the availability of the data and increase the performance, though at a cost of doubling the disk drives.

RAID BASICS FOR AVAILABILITY AND PERFORMANCE

Many of the storage technologies that address increasing availability and throughput fall under the broad title of RAID. RAID originally stood for a Redundant Array of Inexpensive Disks, and it deals with how data is spread over multiple disks. Different RAID levels were defined and evolved over time. Each level describes a different architecture of data distribution, the degree of protection, and the performance it afforded. For example, the striping you saw earlier is considered RAID level 0. Likewise, the mirroring is defined as RAID level 1. Sometimes the combination is referred to as RAID 1+0 or RAID 10. There are other, more sophisticated RAID techniques involving writing individual parts (bits, bytes, or blocks) on separate disks and providing data integrity through a separate disk that contains information to re-create the lost data if any single disk fails.

Another strategy used for efficient storage usage is data deduplication. *Deduplication* is similar to the memory page sharing that you saw in the last chapter. Imagine the email server in a corporation. The vice president of human resources sends a 12-page document outlining changes in corporate policies to the five thousand employees. All five thousand employees, knowing that it is an important document, save the 2 MB document. The document is now occupying 10 GB of corporate disk space. Ten gigabytes may not seem like that much, but multiply that one example by the thousands of documents that are sent and stored everyday over years of time and you can see how fast it adds up. Deduplication technology locates identical chunks of data in the storage system, flags the original, and replaces the duplicates with pointers back to the original document. Chunks of data can be small byte-sized data strings, larger blocks

of data, or even full files. In each case, only one copy of the actual data is now stored. Instead of 10 GB, the storage space has been compressed to 2 MB plus the five thousand pointers, which is fairly negligible. Figure 9.15 displays a simple before and after deduplication scenario. In practice, data deduplication has been shown to reclaim between 30 and 90 percent of used disk space, depending on the composition and redundancy of the data.

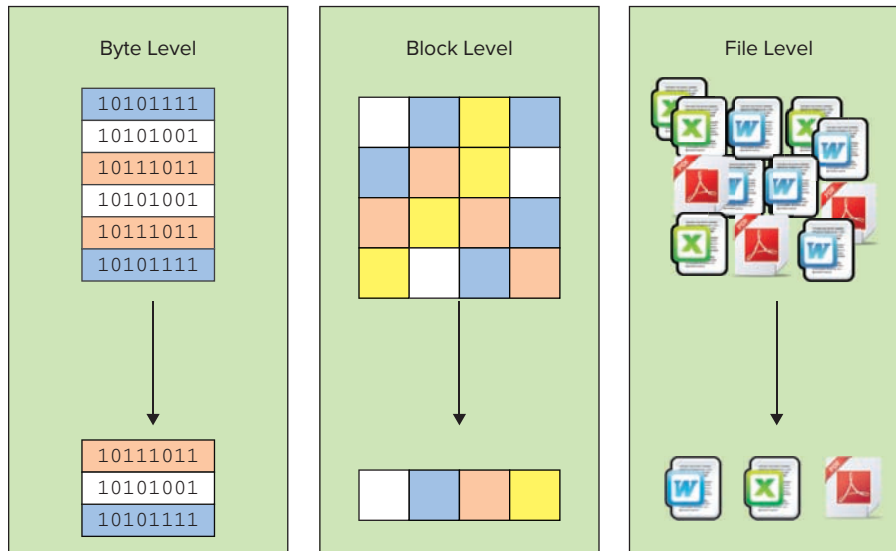


FIGURE 9.15 Deduplication

When file systems are initially configured, the administrator has to choose how much storage to allocate for that space, just as we did earlier when we added the second disk drive. Once that space has been allocated, it is removed from the usable storage pool. As an example, if you have 300 GB of storage and you create three 100 GB file systems, you have consumed all of the disk storage. This is called *thick provisioning*. The downside of thick provisioning is that each file system is pre-allocated the entire amount of disk space upon creation and it is dedicated to that file system. If you eventually use only half of each file system, 150 GB or half the space has been wasted.

Figure 9.16 shows one possible solution to this issue: thin-provisioned disks. If you *thin provision* the same three at 100 GB and they each use the same 50 GB apiece, only 150 GB of the disk has been allocated. Much like the memory-overcommit technology we discussed earlier, thin provisioning actually allows you to over-provision the storage space you physically possess. With the same ratio as the previous file systems, you could provision two additional 100 GB file

systems and still not use all of our physical storage. Thin provisioning usually has minimal impact on performance, but the downside of thin provisioning is much more acute than that of thick provisioning. Each file system believes that it has more space available than it actually does. If they consume all of the allocated space, problems will occur. Obviously, you need to have a thorough understanding of your storage usage before implementing thin provisioning; but done wisely, it can be a powerful tool to prevent wasted space.

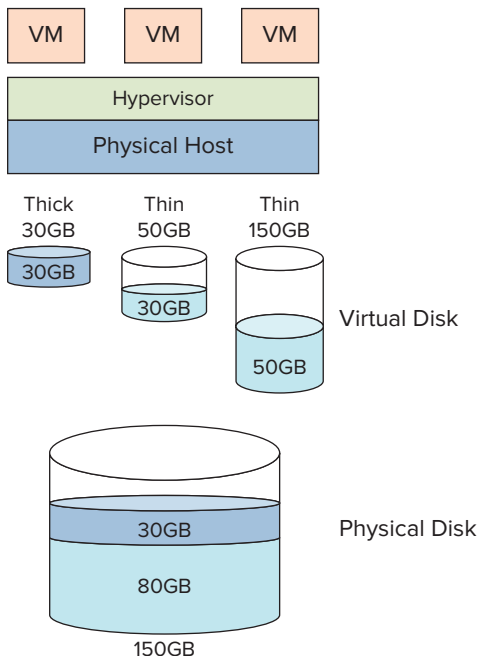


FIGURE 9.16 Thin provisioning

An additional challenge related to piling many workloads into fewer servers is that these workloads now share the access paths to the storage resources. The requests and data blocks flow through the same pipes with little control over priority. Figure 9.17 shows a simple illustration of this problem. If you have an application that is requesting most of the storage bandwidth, it could negatively impact other applications that are actually more important to the business. There are solutions to this problem. Depending on the storage solution, either the storage vendors or network vendors can sometime overlay some QoS (quality of service) policies that can give certain traffic types greater bandwidth when contention is detected. From a hypervisor standpoint, VMware's hypervisor has the ability to assign storage I/O priority on a VM-by-VM basis, guaranteeing appropriate

resources for applications that have been designated more important in resource-constrained situations. At the moment, it is the only solution with this capability.

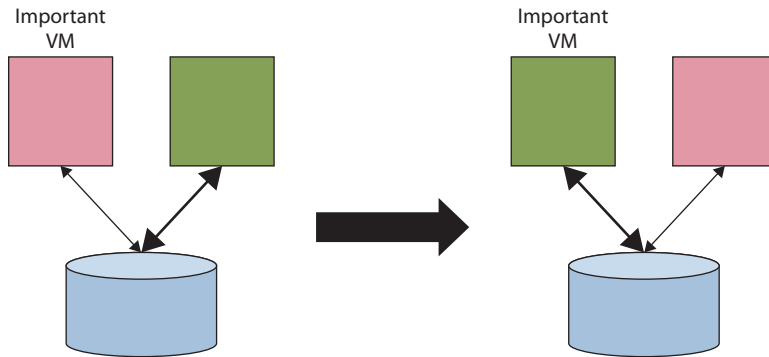


FIGURE 9.17 Storage I/O control

New hardware storage devices are appearing, and virtualization can take advantage of those as well. Solid-state disk drives (SSDs) are storage devices that contain solid-state memory instead of spinning disk platters to store information. In a way, these are products of Moore's Law; as memory technology has driven costs down and provided us with denser, larger memory chips, it is now cost effective to store data in memory. SSDs, though not yet offering as much storage space as traditional disk storage technologies, can offer data access that is much faster. Today's hard disk can read information from a device in about 5 ms. An SSD can read that same information in .1 ms, about fifty times faster than its predecessor. As virtual environments are designed, architects are using SSDs in tactical positions to offer greater speeds to certain functions. Virtual desktop implementations often use a small number of operating system images that are stamped out as needed, over and over again—a fresh template for each user that only needs a small amount of customization before deployment. Staging the desktop template on a SSD can significantly decrease the deployment time of a new desktop. Hypervisors themselves can also be stored on SSDs, so that when a host is booted, or if necessary rebooted, the instantiation time is also much faster than if it were booted from disk.

Finally, storage vendors have developed the concept of *tiered storage*, using different types of storage with varying performance and availability properties, to service an application's requirements. An application that requires top-notch performance and availability would be deployed on faster storage, with some type of RAID capability. An application with less stringent demands might be placed on a slower set of disks, with little or no availability options. Often all of these storage types are contained within the same data storage array. The data that comprises

particular applications can be migrated from one tier of storage to another, as the application requirements change. Depending on the vendor solution, this can be done dynamically if circumstances require better response time, or low utilization over a period of time merits a demotion of service. Virtual machines can take advantage of this quality of service flexibility on the physical layer itself. Newer hypervisor releases communicate with the storage array and pass requests, not just for data blocks to be read and written, but for data copies, file system initializations, locking operations, and other functions that were once performed by the hypervisor. By allowing the storage array to execute functions it was designed for, work is removed from the hypervisor and many of the functions are executed more rapidly than when the hypervisor performed them.

While none of the technologies described previously are specific to virtualization, they are all important in architecting and maintaining a highly available, resource efficient, and well-performing environment. The basic principles that apply to good storage practice in a physical environment are just as important in the virtual environment. The virtual infrastructure adds the complexities of compacting workloads on fewer hosts, so it is vital to ensure that the infrastructure has enough I/O bandwidth to handle the throughput requirements—just as you would for a physical infrastructure.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

The growth of data since the beginning of the information age has been exponential and continues to accelerate. Data storage has grown in parallel, moving from kilobytes and megabytes to terabytes and petabytes. In virtualization, ensuring that there is not only enough storage but also enough bandwidth to access the storage is vital to success. Fortunately, many of the best practices for storage deployment and maintenance that were developed in the physical environment translate well to managing a virtual infrastructure. Advanced features, such as thin provisioning and data deduplication, make more efficient use of storage, while bandwidth policies allow an administrator to prioritize traffic type or individual virtual machines to guarantee quality of service levels. As with the other main resources, a poorly designed or implemented storage architecture can severely impact the overall performance of a virtual environment.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- As an administrator, you are given a single host server configured with four six-core processors, 256 GB of memory, and 1 TB of storage to deploy a number of virtual web servers. You have been told that each virtual machine will require 8 GB of memory,

one processor, and 100 GB of disk storage. How many virtual machines will you be able to deploy? What is the limiting factor?

- After deploying the 10 web servers as virtual machines, you request more storage explaining that you could potentially double the amount of web servers. Your request is denied due to budget constraints. After a few weeks of observation, information gathering, and a conversation with the application team, you discover that the web servers actually use only 25 GB of storage. The 100 GB request is a comfort number based on the vendor's generic recommendation. In the physical environment, they actually had 50 GB but never even approached 30 GB of disk space. With a little more investigation, you discover that converting thick-provisioned disks to thin-provisioned disks is not too difficult a process. If you decide to reconfigure the existing disks to a thin-provisioned model, and use 30 GB as your amount of used storage plus some emergency space, how many more virtual machines could you add to the host? What is the limiting factor? Are there other ways to increase the amount of virtual machines you could add? Would you want to?

Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine

Networking, like the circulatory system in your body, is the transport mechanism for moving vital supplies. While blood carries nutrients to the organs, computer networks traffic in information, which is just as crucial to the health and well-being of the applications in a datacenter. In a virtual environment, networking is a critical component of the architecture, ensuring that data arrives in a timely fashion to all of the virtual machines on a host. Much like storage I/O, network I/O is subject to the same bandwidth issues and constraints that can occur in a physical network environment. Because networks also carry storage traffic, they need to be sized, implemented, and managed properly in order to provide adequate performance to the disk storage systems as well.

- ▶ **Understanding network virtualization**
- ▶ **Configuring VM network options**
- ▶ **Tuning practices for virtual networking**

Understanding Network Virtualization

Even more so than data storage, networking is everywhere in our daily lives. We update our Facebook pages, send email, send text messages, and Tweet with smart phones that must be connected through a network to the servers that provide these functions. Telecommunications providers charge money for data plans—and as you use more, you pay more, as you would for any utility like water or electricity. In our cars, the GPS talks to satellites across networks that give us real-time traffic information. At home our computers can be connected to a cable modem, DSL, or even dial-up connection to access the Internet. Newer televisions and multimedia devices allow us to stream movies, on-demand content, music, and even YouTube videos from a growing list of satellite providers, cable providers, Blockbuster, Netflix,

Hulu.com., and Amazon.com. More and more connectivity provides access to data, and bandwidth controls the speed at which it arrives.

IT departments and datacenters have been dealing with these technologies and issues for decades, and networking, though at times a complicated topic, has very well-defined models and practices to follow for good performance. Like the storage practices you learned about in the last chapter, network practices also translate very well to the virtual environment. This explanation of networking is a very basic one, good enough for this discussion of how network traffic flows through a virtual environment but is not by any means comprehensive. At the most fundamental level, networking allows applications on a virtual machine to connect to services outside of the host on which it resides. As with other resources, the hypervisor is the manager of network traffic in and out of each virtual machine and the host. The application sends a network request to the guest operating system, which passes the request through the virtual NIC driver. The hypervisor takes the request from the network emulator and sends it through a physical NIC card out into the network. When the response arrives, it follows the reverse path back to the application. Figure 10.1 shows a simplified view of this transaction.

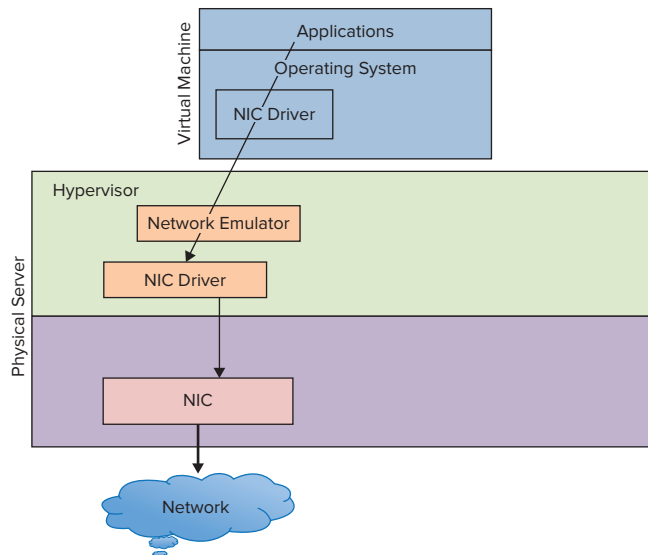


FIGURE 10.1 A simple virtual network path

Virtualization adds a number of wrinkles to the networking environment. One of these is that a virtual network needs to provide a manner to connect to other virtual machines on the same host. In order to make this connection, the hypervisor has to have the capability to create internal networks. Just as a physical network uses a hardware switch to create a network to isolate traffic

among a set of computers, a virtual switch can create a network inside a host for the virtual machines to use. The hypervisor manages the virtual switches along with managing and maintaining the virtual networks. Figure 10.2 shows a diagram of a simple virtual network inside of a VMware vSphere host. The hypervisor has two virtual switches, one connected to a physical NIC, which is connected to the outside physical network. The other virtual switch has no connections to a NIC or any physical communications port.

The virtual machine on the left has two virtual NICs, one connected to each virtual switch and by extension, each of the virtual networks. Requests through the virtual NIC connected to the external virtual switch will be passed through the physical host's physical NIC out to the physical network and the outside world. Responses to that request follow the route in reverse, through the physical NIC, through the external virtual switch, and back to the VM's virtual NIC. Requests through the internal virtual switch have no path to the outside world and can only go to other virtual machines attached to the internal virtual switch. The right-hand virtual machine can only make requests through the internal virtual switch and, in this simple diagram, can only communicate with the other virtual machine. This is a common strategy in a virtual environment to secure applications and servers from unwanted attacks. Without a connection to a physical NIC, the right-side virtual machine cannot be seen, much less compromised, from an external source. The left-side virtual machine acts as a firewall, and with reasonable security practices, protects the data contained in the other VM.

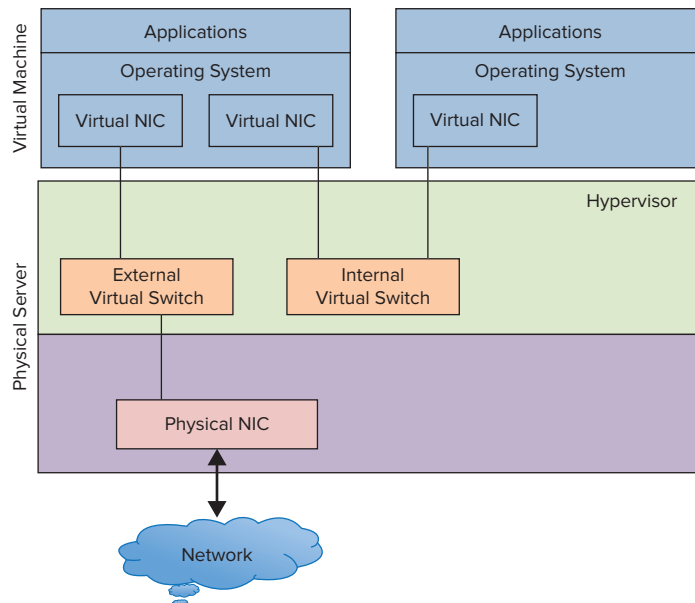


FIGURE 10.2 Networking in a VMware host

An advantage of this virtual machine to virtual machine communication utilizing an internal switch is that the traffic never leaves the physical host and takes place entirely in memory. That makes it very fast, much faster than if the data left the host and traveled the physical network, even if it were to a host that was physically adjacent to it in the datacenter. Very often when applications on separate virtual machines require a great deal of back-and-forth conversation, they are deployed on the same host in a virtual environment to effect the shortest network latency. Another byproduct of this internal-switch-only traffic is that standard network tools cannot see it. In a physical environment, when there are application performance issues, network tools can monitor the type and flow of data to help determine where the issue might be. In this case, the traffic never leaves the host, and standard network monitoring tools are useless because the data never hits the physical network. There are other tools specific to virtual environments to solve these problems, and we will examine them in more detail in Chapter 14, “Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine,” in the context of performance monitoring.

In physical networks, switches are used not only to create networks but also to isolate network segments from each other. Often different functional parts of an organization require separate network spaces in which to work. Production is separate from test and development. Payroll applications are set apart from customer services. This architecture helps with performance by reducing traffic on each segment and improves security by restricting access to each area. The technique translates very nicely to virtual networking. In Figure 10.3, a second physical NIC has been added to the host. A second external virtual switch is created that is directly tied to the second NIC. A third virtual machine is added to the host, and it can communicate only to the new external virtual switch. Even though it resides on the same physical host as the other virtual machines, there is no way for it to communicate with them through an internal connection. Unless there is some possible path routed through the physical network, it cannot communicate with them externally either.

As you also saw in the previous chapter, this model is slightly different in the Xen or Microsoft Hyper-V network models. Figure 10.4 highlights the fact that all of the network traffic goes from the user (DomU) or child partitions, through Dom0 or the parent partition. In this model, the virtual switch is in the parent partition. A network request from an application in a child partition is passed through the virtual adapter to the virtual switch in the parent partition. The virtual switch connects to the physical NIC, and the request is passed to the physical network. The second switch shown has no connection to a physical NIC and supports an internal-only network. Virtual machines that connect only to this virtual switch have no way to directly access the external network. Conversely, this virtual machine can be accessed only from another

virtual machine that is connected to this virtual switch, and not from an external source. Because in this model the parent partition does directly control the physical NIC, the hypervisor does not manage the network I/O.

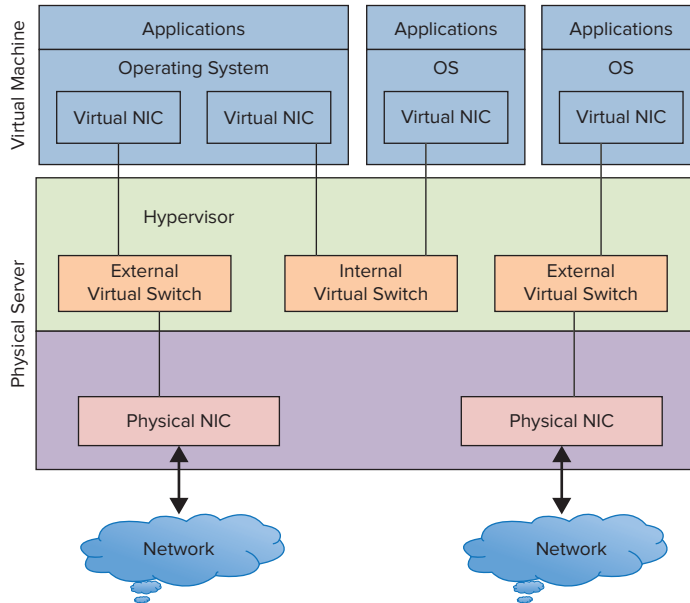


FIGURE 10.3 Multiple external switches

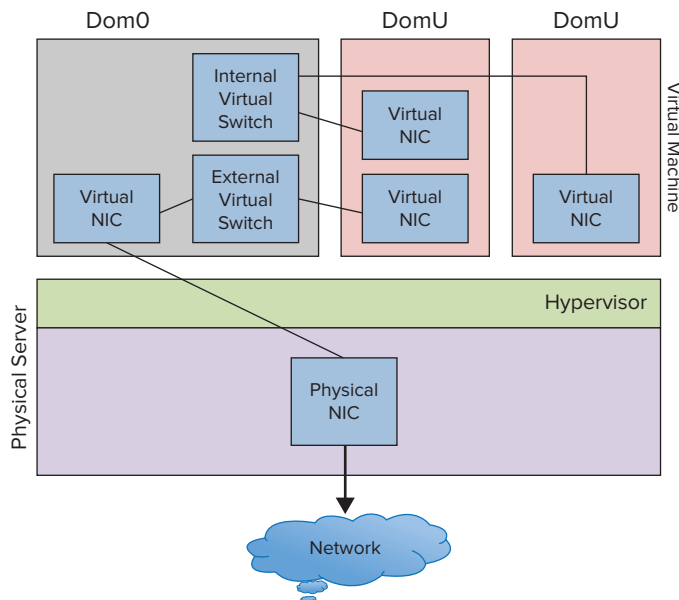


FIGURE 10.4 Networking in a Xen or Hyper-V host

Consider that aside from application data transport, the network may need to handle storage data. In Chapter 9, “Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine,” you saw that storage can be connected through TCP/IP-based protocols such as NFS or iSCSI. These traverse the same pathways, physical and virtual, that network traffic uses. As you architect your virtual connectivity, if you utilize these protocols to access storage, you will need to plan for the appropriate amount of bandwidth and maybe even create dedicated network pathways to those devices. Figure 10.5 shows a virtual switch that is dedicated to storage I/O. Each of the virtual machines has a virtual NIC that is dedicated to storage traffic. The virtual NICs connect to the storage virtual switch. The three switch types, internal, external, and storage are identical in their construction and operation and have only been given different names here for the sake of differentiating their functions. From the storage switch, you connect to the physical NIC and then out to the network storage device. In this simple model, there is one storage switch connecting to a single storage resource; but as with the network isolation you saw earlier, there can be multiple virtual switches dedicated to storage, each connected to a different physical NIC that are each then connected to different storage resources. In this way, you can separate the storage resources from the virtual machines as well as the network access. Whether the virtual NICs are handling user data for the network or data from the storage devices, from inside the virtual machine, everything still looks as it would from inside a physical machine.

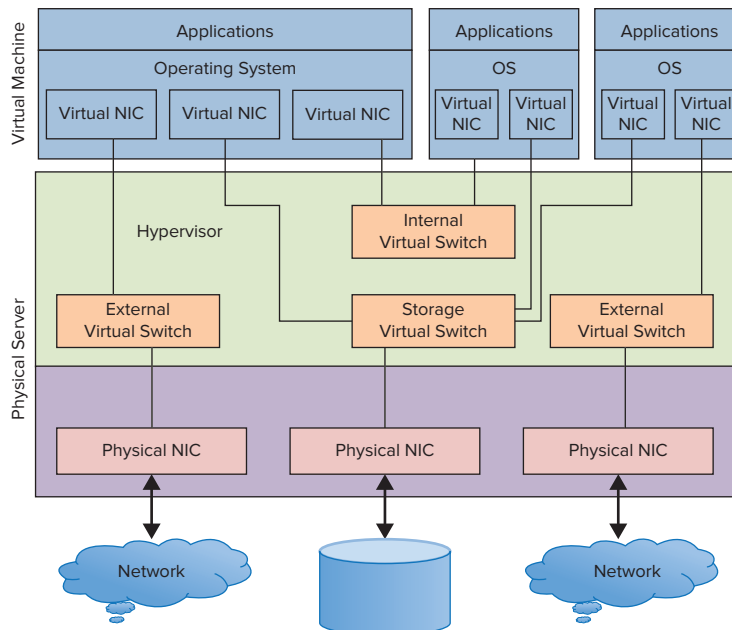


FIGURE 10.5 A storage virtual switch

Another facet of networking in a virtual environment to be aware of is the concept of VMotion. *VMotion* is VMware's term for the ability to migrate a virtual machine from one physical host to another while it is still running and without interrupting the user applications that it is servicing. The technology that allows this is essentially a rapid copy of the memory instantiation of the virtual machine to the secondary host fast enough to switch the network connections to the new virtual machine without comprising the virtual machine's data integrity or the user experience. As you might imagine, this operation is bandwidth intensive and requires a dedicated path to guarantee success. This is also a function that is handled by the hypervisor, transparent to the virtual machines. Other vendors have similar live migration capabilities, and we will cover more about them in Chapter 13, "Understanding Availability." This is not a capability we can demonstrate using VMware Player.

Virtual switches, like their physical counterparts, can be configured to perform in selected manners. One difference is that you can adjust the number of ports on a virtual switch, without needing to replace it as you would a physical switch. Other properties that can be adjusted fall under the broad category of policies. Policies cover how the switch is to work under certain circumstances, usually dealing with security, availability, or performance related issues. Since VMware Player does not afford us the ability to actually create and manipulate virtual switches, we will follow this thread no further.

Another networking area to briefly investigate is system addresses. Every device connected to a network has a unique address that allows the requests it makes of network resources to be returned to the correct place. Virtual machines need addresses just like any other device, and if there are multiple NICs in the configuration, the virtual machine will need an address for each one. A system address can be acquired in numerous ways. A network administrator can assign an address to a physical or virtual server, and it will be assigned for its lifetime. There are also devices that will assign an address to a device for some period of use. DHCP is a process that allows a server to assign an IP address to a computer or other device that requests one. If you have spent any time at all setting up, or even utilizing, a WIFI network, your devices are probably getting their network addresses via DHCP. The bottom line is that virtual machines need addresses. Using your Windows 7 virtual machine, you can see what address the virtual machine has been assigned.

1. In the virtual machine, select the Start button. Enter `cmd` into the Search Programs And Files text box. Select the `cmd` icon. When the command-line window opens, enter the command `ipconfig` and press Enter.

As shown in Figure 10.6, you can see your system IP address in the traditional dot and decimal format, the four octets next to the IPv4 Address label. If there were multiple NICs in this virtual machine, there would be additional entries with additional IP addresses.

2. Close the Command window.

```

C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : localdomain
    Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::28e2:4fa8:4d78:462e%11
    IPv4 Address. . . . . : 192.168.60.128
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 192.168.60.2

Tunnel adapter isatap.localdomain:

    Media State . . . . . : Media disconnected
    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : localdomain

Tunnel adapter Local Area Connection* 9:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : 
    IPv6 Address. . . . . : 2001:0:4137:9e76:2460:2b4f:3f57:c37f
    Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::2460:2b4f:3f57:c37f%13
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 

C:\Users\Essentials>

```

FIGURE 10.6 Determining an IP address

Now let's examine the virtual NIC from a number of perspectives.

1. Again, in the virtual machine, click the Start button. Enter `device` into the Search Programs And Files text box. Select the Device Manager icon. When the Device Manager utility opens, select the triangle to the left of the Network Adapters icon to display the adapters.
2. Right-click on the revealed network adapter and choose Properties. Select the Driver tab, as shown in Figure 10.7.
You can see a standard Intel network adapter with a standard Microsoft driver. From the virtual machine's point of view, the virtual network adapter is identical to a physical network adapter.
3. Select Cancel to close the Properties window. Exit the Device Manager.

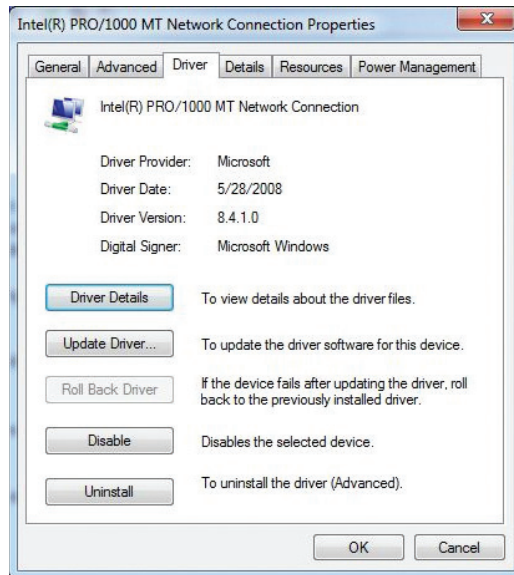


FIGURE 10.7 Network adapter properties in a VM

Let's examine the network adapters from the perspective of the host system.

1. Not in the virtual machine, but from the host Windows operating system, click the Start button. Enter device into the Search Programs And Files text box. Select the Device Manager icon. When the Device Manager utility opens, select the triangle to the left of the Network Adapters icon to display the adapters. In addition to the two physical network adapters for wired and wireless connections, two others are labeled VMware Virtual Adapters.
2. Right-click on either of the VMware adapters and choose Properties. Select the Driver tab, as shown in Figure 10.8.

You can see that this adapter is a VMware virtual adapter; in other words, it is a software construct that represents an adapter with which the virtual machines can connect. In the case of VMware Player, this virtual adapter is analogous to the virtual switches that the Type-1 hypervisors utilize. There are two different adapters here, and each has a different function, along with a third that you will see shortly.
3. Select Cancel to close the Properties window. Exit the Device Manager.

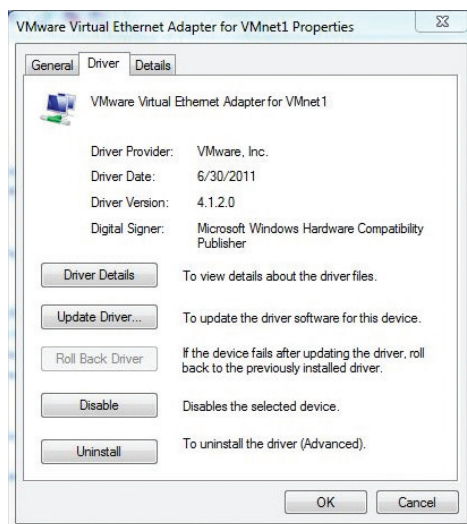


FIGURE 10.8 Virtual network adapter properties

Now we will examine the various connection types you can select when creating a network connection.

1. Back in VMware Player, under the Virtual Machine menu, select Virtual Machine Settings. Highlight the network adapter. Figure 10.9 shows the network connection choices.

We will focus on three connection types in the next section. They are bridged, NAT, and host-only.

We are going to skip LAN Segments and the Advanced features as outside of the scope of this text. LAN Segments gives you the ability to create a private network to share between virtual machines, and you can learn more by checking the user documentation.

2. Select OK to close the Virtual Machine Settings

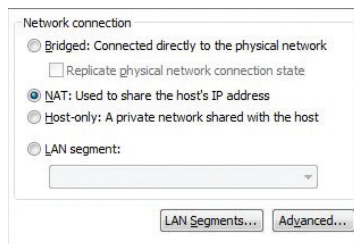
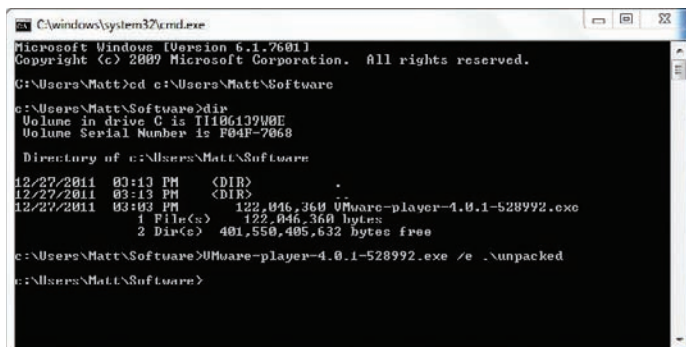


FIGURE 10.9 Virtual machine network-adapter connection types

Configuring VM Network Options

Each of the three connection types is associated with one of the default virtual adapters on the host system. Virtual machines that are configured with a host-only network connection are tied to the VMnet1 virtual adapter. Virtual machines that are configured with a NAT connection are tied to the VMnet8 virtual adapter. Virtual machines with bridged connections are tied to the VMnet0 virtual adapter. You've seen both the VMnet1 and VMnet8 adapters, but not the VMnet0 adapter. The reason is that VMware Player only exposes a subset of its abilities through the application interface, and not all of the capabilities are accessible by default. In order to investigate virtual networking more closely, you will need to use another utility that is packaged as part of VMware Player but, unfortunately, not installed as part of the installation.

1. From the host Windows operating system, click the Start button. Enter `cmd` into the Search Programs And Files text box. Select the `cmd` icon. When the command-line window opens, navigate to the directory that contains the VMware Player installation package that you downloaded and installed in Chapter 4, "Creating a Virtual Machine."
2. As shown in Figure 10.10, run the installer again with the `/e` option, which will extract the archived files from the installer package to the directory of your choice. The example shows extracting to a directory labeled `unpacked` that is in the same directory as the installation file. The very helpful Windows 7 operating system first asks permission to execute the command. Allow it to do so. When the extraction is complete, Windows then asks if you would like to reinstall using the default settings. Select `Cancel` to remove the window.
3. Close the command-line window.



```

C:\windows\system32\cmd.exe
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.1.7601]
Copyright (c) 2009 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Users\Matt>cd c:\Users\Matt\Software

c:\Users\Matt\Software>dir
Volume in drive C is T1106137M0E
Volume Serial Number is F04F-7068

Directory of c:\Users\Matt\Software

12/27/2011  03:13 PM    <DIR>          .
12/27/2011  03:13 PM    <DIR>          ..
12/27/2011  03:09 PM             122,846,368 VMware-player-4.0.1-528992.exe
                1 File(s)           122,846,368 bytes
                2 Dir(s)      401,550,405,632 bytes free

c:\Users\Matt\Software>VMware-player-4.0.1-528992.exe /e .\unpacked
c:\Users\Matt\Software>
  
```

FIGURE 10.10 Extracting archive files

Now that the archives have been written to the file system, you need to locate and extract the utility.

1. Using Windows Explorer, navigate to the unpacked directory. Locate the archive file titled `network`, as illustrated in Figure 10.11.

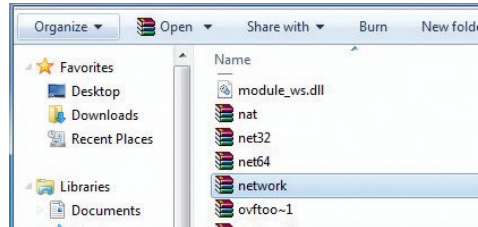


FIGURE 10.11 Network archive

2. Highlight the `network.cab` archive, and open it with Windows Explorer, as shown in Figure 10.12. You can do this by either right-clicking on the file and selecting the Open With Menu To Choose Windows Explorer, or use the Open menu item at the top of the Explorer window.

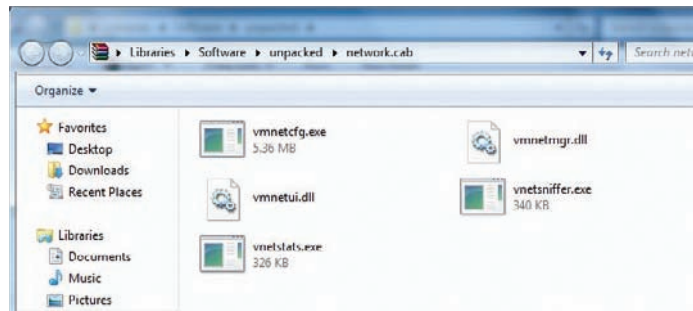


FIGURE 10.12 Opening the archive

3. Right-click the `vmnetcfg.exe` file and choose Extract to the specified folder from the menu. In the Extraction Path Selection window, navigate to the desktop, as illustrated in Figure 10.13.
4. Select OK to extract to utility to the desktop.
5. Close the `network.cab` window.
6. Using the Windows Explorer window, navigate to the default VMware Player installation directory. On a 64-bit system, this directory will be

C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VMware Player\. On a 32-bit system, the default directory will be C:\Program Files\VMware\VMware Player\. Drag the `vmnetcfg.exe` file to the directory. Windows will ask for administrator permission to continue. Grant the permission.

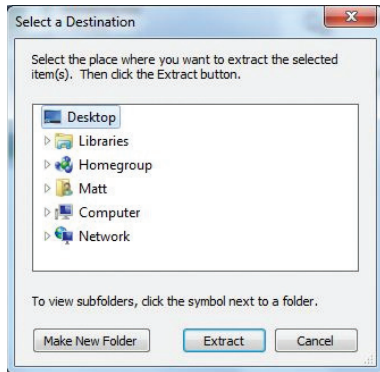


FIGURE 10.13 Extracting `vmnetcfg.exe` from `network.cab`

7. Double-click on the extracted `vmnetcfg.exe` file to open the Virtual Network Editor. Windows will ask for permission to allow the program to execute. Choose Yes to continue.

The Virtual Network Editor opens as shown in Figure 10.14, and you can see all three of the virtual adapters, including VMnet0 that was not visible through the other tools. (Why not? Because it was not attached to a NIC.)

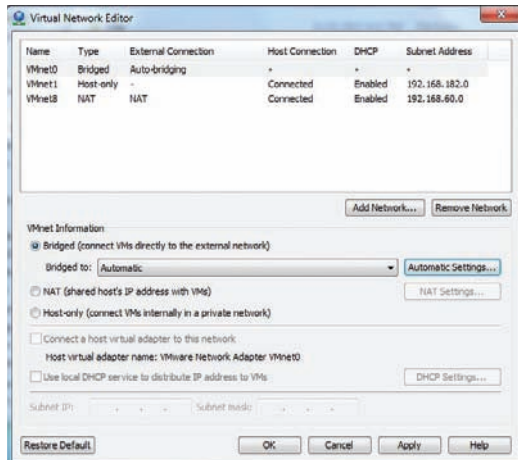


FIGURE 10.14 The Virtual Network Editor

In a bridged network configuration, a VMnet0 adapter is not created like the VMnet1 or VMnet8 adapters. It is a protocol stack that is bound to the physical adapter.

A bridged network allows each virtual machine to have an IP address that is recognized and reachable from outside the host. The virtual adapter, in this case VMnet0, behaves as a virtual switch and merely routes the outbound traffic to its associated physical NIC and out to the physical network. When inbound traffic appears through the NIC, VMnet0 again acts as a switch and directs the traffic to the correct virtual machine. Figure 10.15 shows a simple illustration of two virtual machines connected to a bridged network configuration. Their IP addresses allow them to be seen by other systems on the local network. Again, because VMware Player is a Type-2 hypervisor, the virtual adapter construct acts as the virtual switch the Type-1 hypervisors utilize.

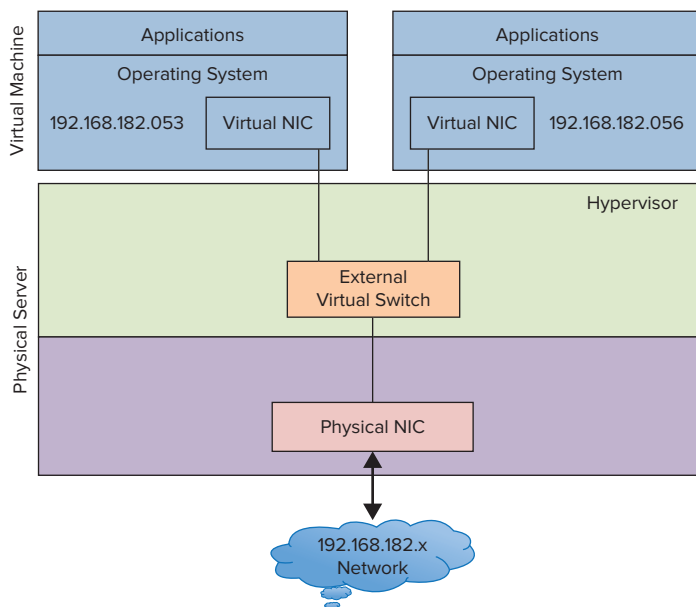


FIGURE 10.15 A simple bridged network

In the Virtual Network Editor, by highlighting VMnet0, you can see the bridged configuration. By default, the external connection is set to Auto-bridging, meaning it will bind to an adapter that has a physical network connection. If you want to select the physical network connections used for the bridged connection, you can select the pull-down menu next to bridged to label and change the current Automatic setting to a specific network adapter. You can also modify the Auto-Bridging list, choosing Automatic Settings and, as shown in Figure 10.16, selecting or deselecting the appropriate adapters.



FIGURE 10.16 Automatic bridging settings

A host-only network will create the equivalent of an internal-only network, allowing virtual machines to communicate with other virtual machines on that network, but without an external connection to the physical network. Systems on the physical network would have no awareness of these virtual machines, nor any way to communicate with them. In your installation of VMware Player, a virtual machine connected to a host-only network would have access to services on the local machine and the local machine could access the services on the virtual machine. By highlighting VMnet1 in the Virtual Network Editor, you can see the configuration settings for the host-only network. As shown in Figure 10.17, there are a number of configuration settings you can adjust. The Subnet IP field allows you to determine the address you will assign to the isolated host-only network. By selecting the Use Local DHCP checkbox, you have the ability to have the local host automatically allocate and assign addresses to the virtual machines connected to this network. If you want to examine or adjust the default DHCP settings, click the DHCP Settings button, and the current parameters for address and lease times will be displayed and available to alter.

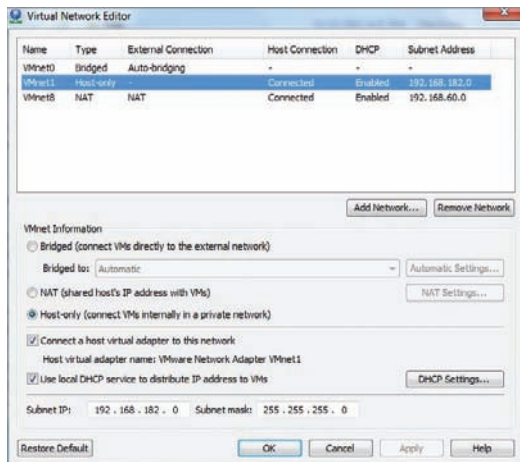


FIGURE 10.17 Host-only network settings

NAT stands for Network Address Translation. A NAT network is, in a way, a blending between the host-only and the bridged networks. Virtual machines connected to the NAT network have IP addresses that are isolated from the physical network, but they have access to the network outside of their host. Figure 10.18 shows a simple example of a virtual machine with a NAT connection. Each virtual machine has an IP address that is recognized by other virtual machines on the internal network, but that address is not visible from outside of the host. Each virtual machine, also shares the physical host's IP address for the external network. When the virtual machine sends a network request outside of the host, the hypervisor maintains a table of address translations from the internal to the external networks. When network data arrives, the physical NIC passes it to the hypervisor to retranslate the address and route the information to the correct virtual machine.

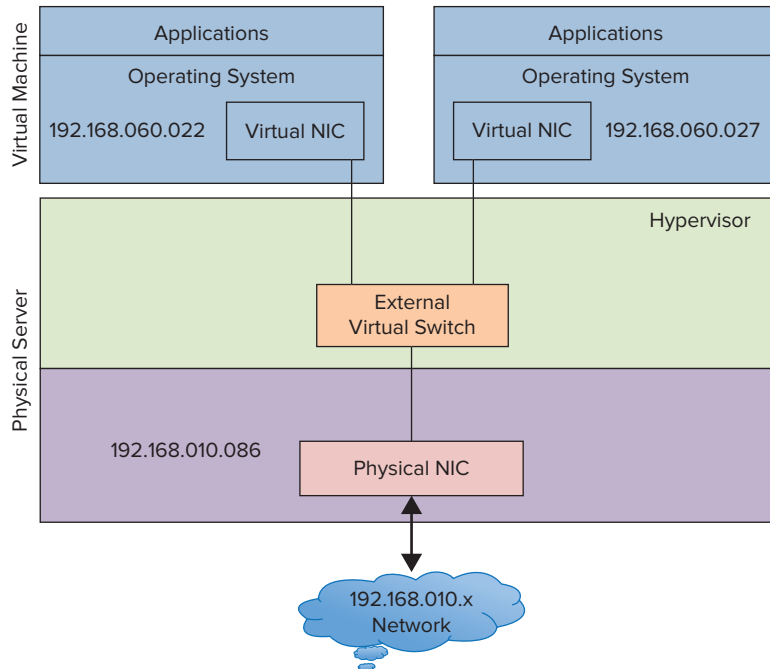


FIGURE 10.18 A simple NAT configuration

In the Virtual Network Editor, by highlighting VMnet8, you can see the NAT configuration as illustrated in Figure 10.19. Like the host-only network, you can create the private subnet. Also like the host-only network, you can have the DHCP service automatically provide IP addresses for the virtual machines

connected to the NAT network. In VMware Player, NAT is the default setting when you create a virtual machine. For one thing, it will protect the newly created operating system from the outside world until you have time to install and configure security and antivirus software. NAT networks can also protect your network topology. With one IP address presented to the external network, the number and function of any virtual machines are hidden from unwanted investigation.

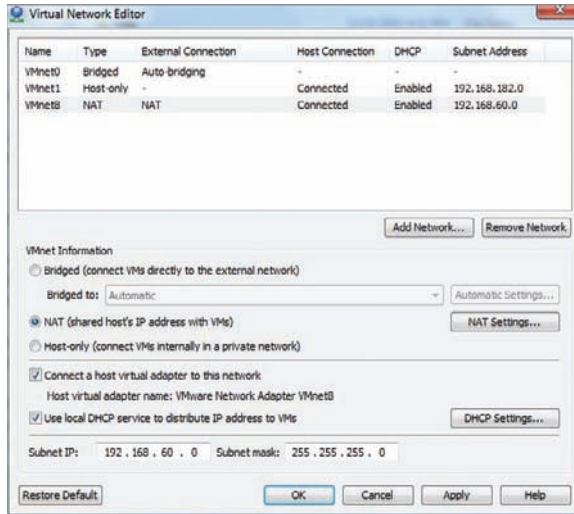


FIGURE 10.19 NAT network configuration settings

Tuning Practices for Virtual Networks

As you saw with storage virtualization, good practices in a physical network architecture work just as well in a virtual network environment. Physical networks use switches to isolate traffic for performance and security considerations. Those same practices carry through into virtual networks. Virtual switches tied to physical NICs can continue the physical segmentation into the virtual networking. A virtual network can be made just as complex and sophisticated as a physical network. One advantage that virtual networking maintains from a cost and maintenance standpoint is the lack of cabling, or at least a tremendous reduction.

As you saw with memory and CPU virtualization, network virtualization is very sensitive to performance impacts due to throughput pressure. As you

consolidate ten individual servers onto a single virtualization host, you must plan for that host to carry the aggregated throughput. In the early days of virtualization, hosts might have eight, or ten, or more NICs in order to support the necessary bandwidth to provide adequate throughput and performance. This would provide additional network processing capability by adding more processors with each NIC, and provide physically separate pathways for the data to travel through, rather than rely on software to keep the data flow separate. Experience also recommended not mixing certain traffic types together at the expense of performance. Today, though, we are in a transitional period in which more data is traveling through fewer devices.

In the first *Ghostbusters* movie, Harold Ramis's character, Egon Spengler, tells his fellows, "Don't cross the streams," when he is prepping them on using their proton packs. When asked why, he responds, "It would be bad." This is how mixing traffic types on a single NIC was treated until recently. There are new NICs, converged network adapters, or CNAs, which handle greater bandwidth and sometimes multiple protocols. This helps reduce the number of network cards in the servers, but the issue of bandwidth contention still remains. As you saw in managing storage I/O, there are software features in the hypervisor to do the same in network I/O control. VMware's hypervisor has the ability to flag various network traffic types—data, storage, etc.—and assign priorities to each type when network contentions occurs. It can be as granular as an individual virtual machine, a group of virtual machines that comprise an important application, or traffic from a particular set of addresses. At the moment, it is the only hypervisor with this solution. Similar capabilities exist in some form in certain vendors' CNAs. With these technologies, you can have multiple network traffic types share the same bandwidth. Of course, at the end of *Ghostbusters* they do mix the streams and everything works out just fine. It does here as well.

Finally, one of the downsides of consolidation is that multiple virtual machines are on a single host. They communicate across a virtual network in that host through virtual switches that are also inside the host. When a virtual machine sends information to another virtual machine on the same host, the external network never sees the transaction. Good for performance, bad for overall network management and debugging. If an application user complains of poor performance, the traditional network tools cannot see inside of the host. Often networking teams surrendered the network configuration and management of the virtual network to the virtualization teams. The network teams had no experience or knowledge of the virtual environment's management tools, while the virtualization team was leery of having the network team inside of the virtualization host. As solutions have evolved, there are now tools that allow a network team to see inside of a host and monitor the virtual network. Cisco has

developed virtual switches that plug into a hypervisor and replace the vendor's virtual switch. The Cisco virtual switch is built on a Cisco switch operating system and uses all of the interfaces and tools of the physical Cisco switches. This means the network team does not need to learn new technology, and the virtualization team can return the network responsibilities without concern.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Networks are the plumbing in the virtual infrastructure providing applications with data. Many of the traditional network best practices are applicable in a virtual environment. Consolidation packs many virtual machines on a single host, so bandwidth constraints must be strongly considered when you're designing network architecture in a virtual environment. Because much of the storage traffic travels across a shared or dedicated network, ample bandwidth must be allocated for that as well, or performance issues will occur. Virtual switches provide segmentation and isolation for network traffic inside of host servers, ensuring security and data integrity. Hypervisors also have varying capabilities to control network traffic to facilitate performance or to enhance security.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- Add a second network adapter with a bridged connection type. After you reboot your virtual machine, make sure the second virtual adapter is available and has an IP address. What is the result when you Ping them both from the host?

Copying a Virtual Machine

Virtual machines are composed of disk files that make certain maintenance operations more timely and less cumbersome than working with their physical counterparts. Creating a new virtual machine is often no more complicated than making a file copy and some configuration changes. Deploying a new virtual machine may take a matter of minutes instead of the days or weeks it takes for physical servers to be ordered, staged, provisioned, and deployed. Templates allow system administrators to create standard images of virtual machines that can be stamped out at will. Even the system administrator's long-time bane, backup and recovery, can be simpler in the virtual environment. Aside from the same back-up solutions and strategies employed with physical servers, you can back up an entire server configuration and data with a data copy. In the event of a problem, you can restore the virtual machine the same way. Snapshots allow a developer to test software or operating system updates against an existing environment, and then instantly roll back to a specific point in time, instead of needing to rebuild the server to retest.

- ▶ **Cloning a virtual machine**
- ▶ **Working with templates**
- ▶ **Saving a virtual machine state**

Cloning a Virtual Machine

Backing up information was a necessary process even before the advent of computers. As you have seen, the amount of data that systems handle today is immense and continues to grow. Protecting that information is a function that needs to be simple, efficient, and reliable. There have been many solutions to back up the data on a system, from the earliest days when computer disks were written out to magnetic tape. If you periodically back up your personal computer, you might use a similar method; a simple utility or the

most basic file copy to move data files to other media, like CDs, DVDs, or USB disk drives. Newer solutions, such as Mozy, Dropbox, and Carbonite, track and copy file changes from the local system to an off-site repository via the Internet. Smart phones, tablets, and other devices also are now either synced with a trusted computer or with a cloud repository, all to prevent data loss in case of a system failure.

Because a virtual machine's actual physical format is a set of data files, it is easy for us to back up that virtual machine simply by periodically copying those files to another place. Because those files contain the application programs, user data, operating system, and the configuration of the virtual machine itself, a backup is created and a fully functional virtual machine that can be instantiated on a hypervisor is created too. The process to copy a virtual machine is so simple that administrators sometimes use this technique to quickly create a new virtual machine. They merely create a set of file copies with a few configuration adjustments to ensure that there is a unique system name and network address—and it's done! It is faster than the process you went through to create the virtual machine, and much faster than the path of obtaining, provisioning, and deploying a physical server. One other advantage that helps accelerate virtual provisioning is that the virtual hardware presented is consistent from VM to VM and from host to host, removing many possible areas where physical discrepancies, such as firmware incompatibilities, might arise. To see how simple and quick creating a new virtual machine from an existing copy is, let's build one.

THIS IS NOT THE RECOMMENDED PRACTICE FOR CREATING A NEW VIRTUAL MACHINE

In Chapter 4, "Creating a Virtual Machine," you learned that virtual hardware adjustments are not usually made by editing the configuration file. For this example, we will do so for a number of reasons. First, because this is not a production virtual machine and if anything terrible happens, you can merely delete the files and start anew. Second, you might find yourself in a position where this type of work might be necessary and you will have already had experience working with the configuration file. Third, VMware Player does not have the ability to clone a virtual machine, so though the functionality is limited, that shouldn't obstruct your efforts.

1. To begin, open Windows Explorer and locate the directory where the existing virtual machines reside. If you are not sure where it is, you

can start VMware Player, pick any virtual machine, edit the hardware settings, and select the Options tab. The Working directory is displayed in the right panel. The default is C:\Users\\Documents\Virtual Machines. Once there, you should see folders for each of the virtual machines that are already created. As shown in Figure 11.1, create a new directory called VM copy.

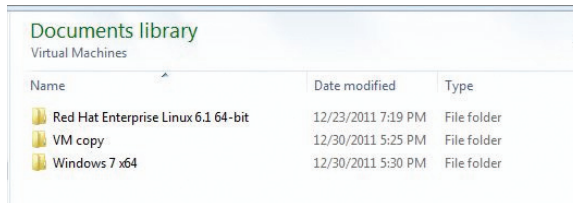


FIGURE 11.1 The VM copy directory

- Go to the directory where the Windows virtual machine resides, as shown in Figure 11.2. There are a number of files and a cache directory that represent the virtual machine. To copy a virtual machine, you need only a few of these. The others will be created anew the first time you power on the virtual machine. The critical files for this task are the configuration file (.vmx) and the virtual disk files (.vmdk).

If your file extensions are not visible, you will need to enable them. In Windows 7, you can do this by choosing Organize on the Windows Explorer menu and selecting Folder And Search Options. When the Folder Options window appears, select the View tab. Uncheck the box for Hide Extensions For Known File Types. Click OK. The extensions will now be visible. Copy these three files into the VM copy directory. The copy should take about five minutes, depending on your hardware.

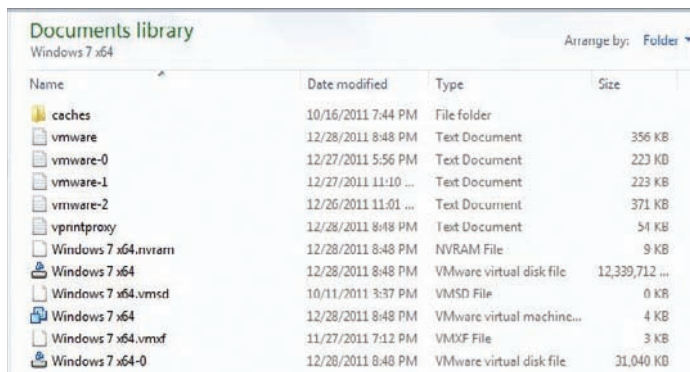


FIGURE 11.2 A virtual machine's files

3. In the VM copy directory, highlight the configuration file and open it with the Windows Notepad utility. Windows Explorer has Notepad as an option in the Open With VMware Player pull-down menu above the file window. If Notepad is not an option in the list, right-click on the .vmx file and select Open With > Choose Default Program. Browse to C:\Windows\System32 and choose notepad.exe. Figure 11.3 shows a portion of the configuration file.
4. You want to change the name of the virtual machine, so each iteration of the current name needs to be altered. In the example shown, the entry for Windows 7 x64 will be changed to VM copy. You can make these changes by hand, or use the Notepad Replace feature under the Edit menu. If you do this by hand, do not change the guestOS entry.
5. Save the configuration file and then close it.

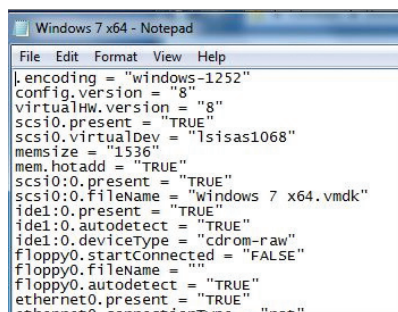


FIGURE 11.3 Editing the configuration file

6. Back in the VM copy directory, rename the three files from their existing name to **VM copy** as well. Make sure the second disk drive is correctly named VM copy-0, as shown in Figure 11.4.

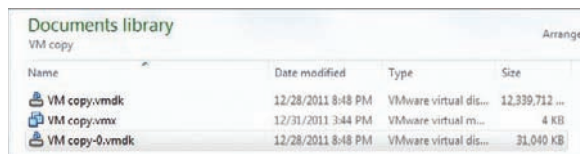


FIGURE 11.4 Renamed virtual machine files

7. Start the virtual machine by double-clicking the configuration file. VMware Player will start up and boot the virtual machine. It will notice that something is different and, as shown in Figure 11.5, will ask if you moved or copied the virtual machine. To continue, select I Copied It.

If your virtual machine does not boot up successfully, it means that your changes to the configuration file were incorrect, or they did not match the files names of the virtual disks `.vmdk` files. Double-check your changes, or recopy the original configuration file and try again. One possible error could be that you missed a critical step in Chapter 4, “Creating a Virtual Machine,” when specifying the Disk Capacity. If you did not choose to store your virtual disk as a single file, you now have more than two `.vmdk` files that need to be copied. In addition to copying the files, there is another configuration step. One of the `.vmdk` files is much smaller than the others and contains pointers to the multiple parts of the virtual disk. You will need to open it with Notepad and rename the pointers from the original name to VM copy and save your work for the virtual machine to power on successfully.

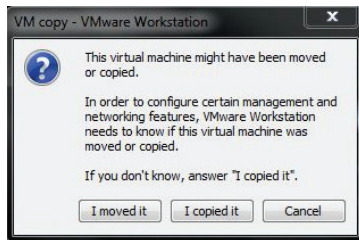


FIGURE 11.5 Moved or copied notice

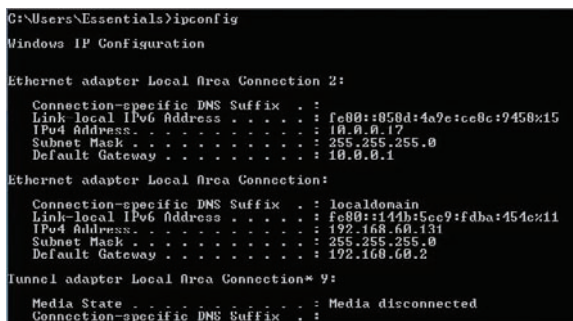
Let's examine our cloned virtual machine and see if it is identical to the original.

1. Windows boots and prompts for the same username and password as on the original virtual machine. Enter the password to log in.
2. Congratulations! You have copied a virtual machine. Open a command-line window by clicking the Start button and entering `cmd` into the Search Programs And Files text box. Select the `cmd` icon to open the command-line utility.

3. As shown in Figure 11.6, enter **ipconfig** to examine the network setting of the virtual machine. It should look similar, if not identical, to the original virtual machine. There should be the same number and type of adapters and connections. There were two Ethernet adapters previously.

What might not be the same are the IP addresses. You learned in Chapter 10, “Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine,” that systems can automatically get their IP addresses from a DHCP server. When you responded to VMware Player that you copied the virtual machine, it created a new unique machine ID for the virtual machine. If you had answered I Moved It, the unique identifier would not have been changed. If the IP address was hard-coded into the virtual machine, you would need to change it to a new address by hand or risk network problems with two identically referenced systems.

4. Close the command-line window.



```
C:\Users\Essentials>ipconfig

Windows IP Configuration

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection 2:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : 
    Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::850d:4a9e:ce8c:9458%15
    IPv4 Address. . . . . : 10.0.0.17
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 10.0.0.1

Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:

    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . : localdomain
    Link-local IPv6 Address . . . . . : fe80::144b:5ec9:fd8a:454c%11
    IPv4 Address. . . . . : 192.168.60.131
    Subnet Mask . . . . . : 255.255.255.0
    Default Gateway . . . . . : 192.168.60.2

Tunnel adapter Local Area Connection*:

    Media State . . . . . : Media disconnected
    Connection-specific DNS Suffix  . :
```

FIGURE 11.6 Examining the network configuration

5. Click the Start button and open the Control Panel. Select System and Security > System. Everything that you can see about this copied virtual machine is identical to the original. Even the computer name is the same, which in any real environment would be a problem. You could alter the system name here, but doing so is not necessary to complete the exercise.
6. You can explore the copied virtual machine further. When you are done, power off the virtual machine using the Power Off option under the Virtual Machine > Power menu at the top of VMware Player. Notice that the VM copy has been entered into the top of virtual machine library.

7. You are done with this virtual machine. You can delete it by right-clicking on the virtual machine and choosing Delete VM From Disk. A warning box will appear. Select Yes, and the all files will be removed. The parent directory needs to be deleted separately.

The simple copy scenario works here because it is dealing with a single virtual machine. Even if you were to create a dozen virtual machines over the course of a year, the process would not be a hardship because the effort would still be minimal. But what would happen if you needed to deploy a hundred virtual machines? Or five hundred? That would be a considerably larger effort from a manual-labor perspective and with more opportunities for errors to occur. Fortunately, there are many ways to automate this process. One method is scripting. System administrators build scripts that duplicate the steps you just executed and even more, making sure that the cloned virtual machine has unique system information and network addresses inside the guest operating system and out. Another method is through the use of automation tools that provide a standard repeatable process but are all front-ended with a user-friendly interface. These tools are either part of the vendor hypervisor management set or available from third-party providers.

WHAT IS SYSPREP?

As you clone Windows virtual machines, one thing to keep in mind is to be sure that each new cloned virtual machine is unique. Microsoft provides a tool, Sysprep, that is usually part of this process. Sysprep is a Windows-specific utility that allows administrators to customize each installation of Windows from a standard image into a unique copy of the operating system. In addition to injecting unique identification information, Sysprep can also add new device drivers and applications to a new image. Each version of Windows, NT, XP, Vista, etc., has its own version of Sysprep that needs to be used. Large deployments are outside the scope of these examples, so working with Sysprep will not be included.

Working with Templates

Creating new virtual machines from an existing virtual machine saves a great deal of time and effort in a virtual environment and is one of the largest reasons that system administrators enjoy the change from a physical environment.

Cloning requires that you have something to clone from, a standard image that serves as a mold from which to create the new virtual machines. To do that, they employ an idea called templates, which developed from the provisioning physical servers. A *template* is a golden image—a prebuilt, tested image that contains approved, corporate standard software. Administrators build an operating system deployment with some set of applications and tools. Once the most current patches are applied, the image is written to some media, such as a DVD. When new servers arrive, the image can be rapidly applied without needing to redo all of the various installations that helped define the image. Having the image in a read-only format also prevents unintended changes. Virtual environments also use this technique to great advantage.

The image from which you create new virtual machines contains not just a large bundle of software including an operating system, but the hardware configuration as well. There is also a slight difference between cloning a virtual machine and creating one from a template. In cloning, a virtual machine rather than a template is the source, although that is not necessarily a hard and fast rule. A template is usually a virtual machine image that cannot be powered on—in other words, it is nothing more than a mold for other virtual machines. Templates are created by building a clean, pristine virtual machine deployment, and then having a hypervisor management feature, or other tool, do the conversion. For example, Figure 11.7 shows the menu when you highlight and select a virtual machine using VMware vCenter, the interface for managing a VMware ESX infrastructure. Here you see two options, the first being to clone the selected virtual machine and convert the new clone into a template, the second to convert the selected virtual machine into the template.

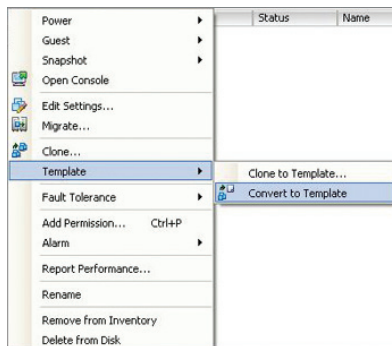


FIGURE 11.7 Template creation choices

The following example will show a new virtual machine cloned from a template. Since VMware Player does not allow this functionality, VMware

Workstation will be used instead. Two steps were made to the Windows virtual machine to create the template. The first was to check the Enable Template mode checkbox in the Advanced Options of the Virtual Machine Settings. The second was to create a snapshot of the virtual machine to be used as the template. We will cover snapshots later in this chapter. Figure 11.8 shows the menu used to clone the virtual machine.

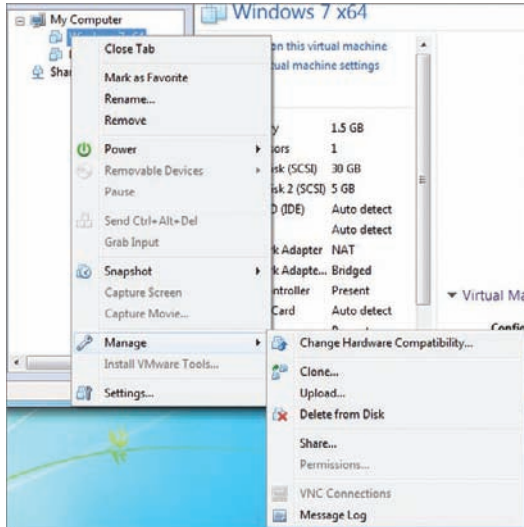


FIGURE 11.8 Manage a virtual machine.

The Clone Virtual Machine Wizard is shown in Figure 11.9. When the initial screen appears, it displays a reminder to enable the template mode in the Virtual Machine Settings.



FIGURE 11.9 The Clone Virtual Machine Wizard

Because the virtual machine is in template mode, you need to select a snapshot to use as the clone. In this example, there is only the single snapshot as shown in Figure 11.10.

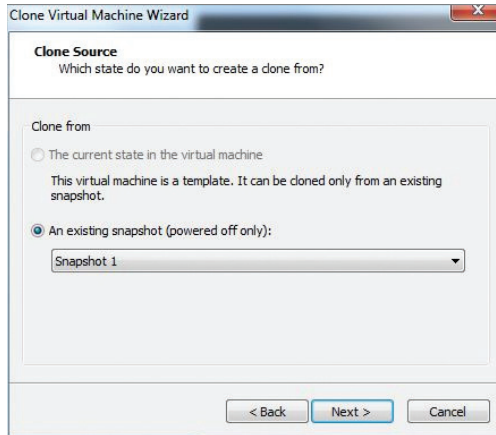


FIGURE 11.10 Clone source

Figure 11.11 shows that two different types of clones can be created. A *full* clone is a complete copy and requires the same amount of disk storage as the original to deploy successfully. A *linked* clone uses the original as a reference and stores any changes in a much smaller amount of disk storage. Because it is not a full copy, the linked clone needs to have the original virtual machine available. For this example, a full clone will be created.

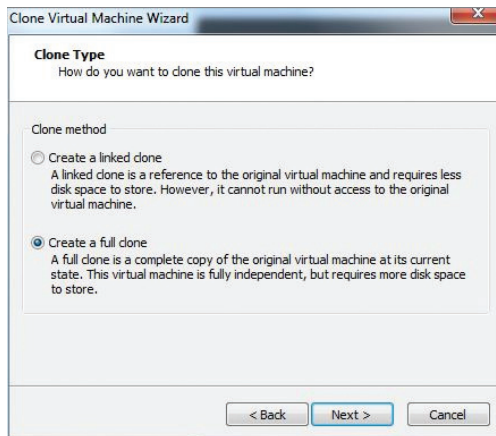


FIGURE 11.11 Clone type

The final step is to name the new virtual machine, as shown in Figure 11.12. The wizard provides a short list of steps and a progress bar as it performs the cloning process. When it is completed, the new virtual machine appears in the virtual machine list and can be started up. A brief examination shows that it is identical in configuration to the template from which it came. By using the available tools, you can see that the process is much quicker and much less error prone than the earlier manual procedure. It is also possible to simultaneously clone a number of virtual machines, though that operation would be heavily dependent on the storage I/O bandwidth because the major portion of a cloning process involves copying data.

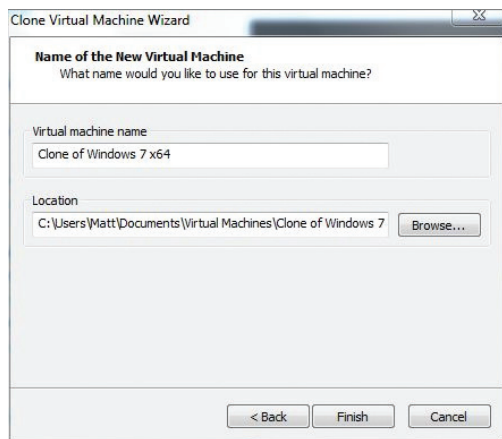


FIGURE 11.12 Naming the clone

Saving a Virtual Machine State

Virtual machines are backed up for many reasons; the first and foremost reason is disaster preparedness. Whether it is an actual disaster such as an unexpected violent act of nature or a man-made mistake, having accurate and validated application data retrievable has been a long-term practice and it is crucial for business continuance. Virtual machines, by the nature of their composition, data files, often allow simpler methods of backup than their physical counterparts. We'll cover more about this topic in Chapter 13, "Understanding Availability," but there is one use case to look at in the context of copying virtual machines.

Many companies dedicate portions of their IT departments and application groups to the various types of application maintenance. Maintenance could entail anything from actual development and creation of new application models, to testing existing application modules as upgrades are provided by the application's vendor, to routine testing of an application in the face of new operating system patches, or even major operating system upgrades. Prior to virtualization, IT departments would need to provision a physical server with the exact operating system, patch, and application suite that was running in the production environment, so they could then apply the new changes, whether that was an application or operating system update, and then do the testing necessary to satisfy an acceptance or denial to deploy the changes into the production environment. The hardware used for the test could then be reprovisioned for the next set of tests. It was not unusual for this process to be a bottleneck in a company's ability to deploy new application modules or stay up-to-date with operating system improvements. In larger companies with hundreds of applications, the size of the test environment is often three to five times larger than the production environments, consuming valuable budget dollars as well as datacenter space and resources.

Virtual machines bring immediate relief to this scenario. By maintaining a template of an application's server configuration, it is a matter of minutes to create a duplicate of the image deployed in production. New patches can be applied and evaluated. At the end of a test, if the results are positive, that updated virtual machine can be converted into the new template that can also be used to update the production system. If no template exists, you can clone the production virtual machine, again guaranteeing that the testing is performed on a duplicate of the production configuration from the application, to the operating system, to the (virtual) hardware configuration. Hypervisor management tools make it simple to create templates, clone virtual machines, and deploy them to a virtual environment for these types of tests. They also add another capability to an administrator's arsenal in the form of snapshots.

Just from its name, *snapshot* tells you most of what you need to know about this capability. It is a method to capture a virtual machine's hardware and software configuration like the copy mechanisms cloning and templating, but it also preserves the virtual machine's processing state. Snapshots allow you preserve a virtual machine at a particular point in time that you can return to again, and again, and again, if need be, making it particularly useful in test and development environments. In a sense, snapshots provide an Undo button for the virtual server. Snapshots are not designed to be a backup solution

for virtual machines. In fact, by using them that way, the virtual machine can be subject to poor performance and the entire virtual environment may suffer from a storage performance and usage standpoint. All of the major hypervisors support snapshotting technology. The following description of how snapshots are deployed and managed is specific to VMware, but the overview is similar in other solutions.

When you take a snapshot of a virtual machine, a few new files are created. There is a file that contains all the relevant information about the snapshot. In VMware that file has a `.vmsd` file extension. One file contains the memory state of the virtual machine, and it has a `.vmem` file extension. The virtual machine snapshot file (`.vmsn`) stores the state of the virtual machine at the time of the snapshot. Also created are a number of child disks with the familiar `.vmdk` extension. The created child disk is what is termed a *sparse disk*, a storage optimization method to prevent the need for an entire clone for a snapshot. Sparse disks use a copy-on-write strategy where the only data written to it are datablocks that have changed from the original disk. The active virtual machine snapshot reads from the child disk and the original parent disk for current data, but will only write to the child disk. Figure 11.13 shows a simple example of a snapshot. The parent disk at the bottom is locked to writing, and any datablock changes are written to the sparse child disk.

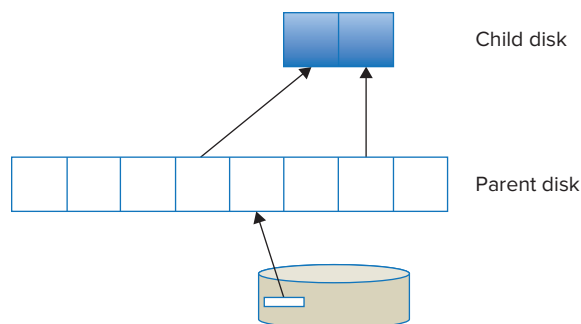


FIGURE 11.13 A first snapshot

Figure 11.14 illustrates what occurs when a second snapshot is taken. A second child disk is created also in the sparse format. As datablock changes are again made, whether in the original disk or the first child disk, those datablocks are written to the second child disk. The first child disk, as the original disk, is locked to writing and used only as a read-only reference for the current

information. You can quickly see that using too many snapshots, or with a large amount of data change, significant disk storage quantities can be easily consumed. In addition, with many snapshots, the paths to find the most current datablocks can become cumbersome and impact the performance of the virtual machine.

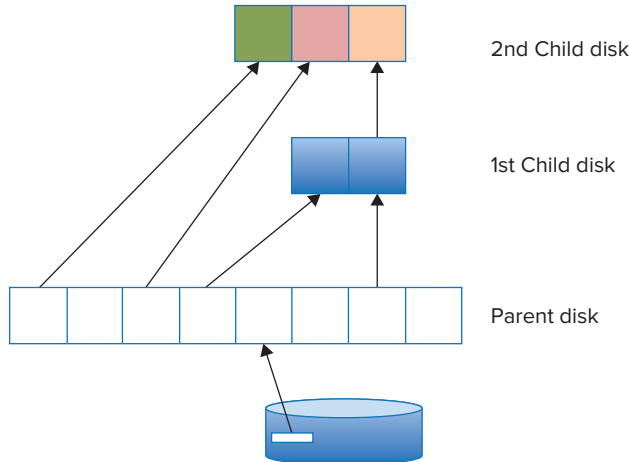


FIGURE 11.14 A second snapshot

Creating a Snapshot

The snapshot examples will show a snapshot being created and then rolling back to the original. Since VMware Player does not allow this functionality, VMware Workstation will be used instead. Using the clone of the Windows virtual machine, it is powered on and logged into. A snapshot is taken to acquire a base state. The snapshot is taken by clicking a Workstation icon or selecting a menu item. The Snapshot Wizard asks for a name to call the snapshot. In the example, the name is Snapshot v1. A brief progress bar appears while the snapshot is taken and the appropriate files are created. Figure 11.15 shows the data files that now comprise the virtual machine with the snapshot. Note the memory state file (.vmem), the snapshot configuration file (.vmsd), the virtual machine state (.vmsn), and the child disks. Notice that since our original virtual machine had two disks, a child disk has been created for each. Each child disk is designated with a snapshot iteration number, in this case 000001.

Name	Date modified	Type
Clone of Windows 7 x64.vmx.lck	1/1/2012 1:38 PM	File folder
564d9d2d-04a1-51a3-9886-14f70ce1880f...	1/1/2012 6:07 PM	File folder
caches	1/1/2012 6:09 PM	File folder
Windows 7 x64-0-cl1.vmdk.lck	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	File folder
Windows 7 x64-0-cl1-000001.vmdk.lck	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	File folder
Windows 7 x64-cl1.vmdk.lck	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	File folder
Windows 7 x64-cl1-000001.vmdk.lck	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	File folder
Clone of Windows 7 x64.vmx	12/31/2011 4:26 PM	VMware team member
vmware.log	1/1/2012 6:07 PM	Text Document
564d9d2d-04a1-51a3-9886-14f70ce1880f...	1/1/2012 6:07 PM	VMEM File
vprintproxy.log	1/1/2012 6:08 PM	Text Document
Clone of Windows 7 x64.nvram	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	VMware virtual machine BIOS
Windows 7 x64-0-cl1.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Windows 7 x64-cl1.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Clone of Windows 7 x64.vmx	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	VMware virtual machine configuration
Windows 7 x64-cl1-000001.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Clone of Windows 7 x64.vmsd	1/1/2012 6:14 PM	VMware snapshot metadata
Clone of Windows 7 x64-Snapshot1.vmem	1/1/2012 6:15 PM	VMEM File
Clone of Windows 7 x64-Snapshot1.vmsn	1/1/2012 6:15 PM	VMware virtual machine snapshot
Windows 7 x64-0-cl1-000001.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:17 PM	VMware virtual disk file

FIGURE 11.15 Physical files of a snapshot

In addition to the new files in the host file system, Workstation has a map to use in the Snapshot manager. Figure 11.16 shows the simple map created so far. The snapshot is merely an initial stake in the sand as you make some changes to the virtual machine.

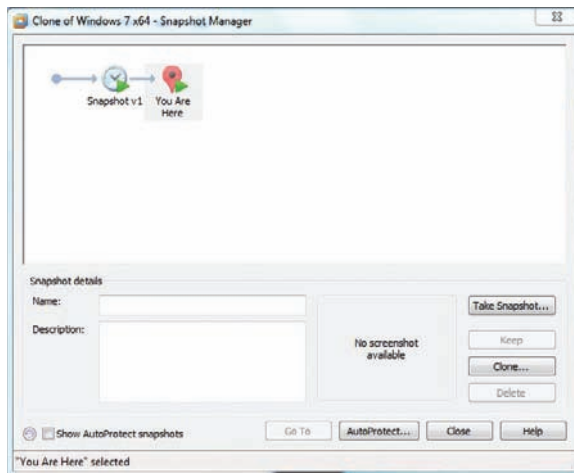


FIGURE 11.16 The Workstation Snapshot Manager

Even if no alterations are made to the virtual machine, changes still occur. As time passes, operating system logs and monitoring tool logs are filled with time-stamped entries. These changes add datablocks to the child disks. As illustrated in Figure 11.17, creating a Notepad document and saving it to the desktop adds changes.

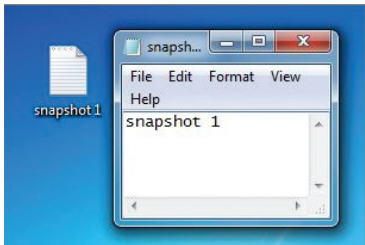


FIGURE 11.17 Changing the virtual machine

A second snapshot is taken at this point. As with the first, it is named in this iteration, Snapshot v2. The contents of the Notepad document are also changed and saved to the disk. The virtual machine’s physical files are shown again in Figure 11.18. There is now a second set of child disks along with a second memory state and system state file.

Windows 7 x64-0-cll.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Windows 7 x64-cll.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:13 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Clone of Windows 7 x64-Snapshot1.vmem	1/1/2012 6:15 PM	VMEM File
Clone of Windows 7 x64-Snapshot1.vmsn	1/1/2012 6:15 PM	VMware virtual machine snapshot
Clone of Windows 7 x64-nvram	1/1/2012 6:48 PM	VMware virtual machine BIOS
Windows 7 x64-0-cll-000001.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:48 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Windows 7 x64-0-cll-000002.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:48 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Windows 7 x64-cll-000001.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:48 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Windows 7 x64-cll-000002.vmdk	1/1/2012 6:48 PM	VMware virtual disk file
Clone of Windows 7 x64.vmx	1/1/2012 6:48 PM	VMware virtual machine configuration
Clone of Windows 7 x64.vmsd	1/1/2012 6:48 PM	VMware snapshot metadata
Clone of Windows 7 x64-Snapshot2.vmem	1/1/2012 6:50 PM	VMEM File
Clone of Windows 7 x64-Snapshot2.vmsn	1/1/2012 6:50 PM	VMware virtual machine snapshot

FIGURE 11.18 Physical files of a second snapshot

The Workstation Snapshot Manager, shown in Figure 11.19, now has a second point in time in the snapshot chain to which the virtual machine can be restored. From here there are a number of choices. Adding more snapshots will create additional snapshot files and provide more places to roll back to, but eventually at the expense of performance and data storage. Not only can snapshots be added sequentially in the line that has been shown, but you can also use snapshots to construct very large branched maps to handle sophisticated testing

models. By reverting back to the first snapshot, making changes, and creating a third snapshot, there would be two branches from the first snapshot. If the tests that were performed on the snapshotted virtual machine proved valuable, you could merge the snapshots into the original virtual machine, in effect, updating that original virtual machine. You will walk through that example in a moment. Finally, and probably most frequently, you will want to revert to a previous snapshot.



FIGURE 11.19 A second snapshot

As with creating a snapshot, you can revert to a previous snapshot from a Workstation icon, a menu selection, or from the Workstation Snapshot Manager. Reverting to Snapshot v2 is quick, as shown in Figure 11.20. You right-click on the snapshot you want to revert to and select **Go to Snapshot** from the menu. Workstation provides a helpful message that all work done in the virtual machine since the snapshot was taken will be lost. A progress bar is shown during the rollback. Once the rollback is complete, the Notepad file with the original data is restored to the desktop.

If you reverted to the first snapshot, the same process would occur, but you would be presented with the virtual machine at the time of that snapshot. There would be no Notepad document at all. You could continue various tests and revert back to this virtual machine's point-in-time state as often as needed.

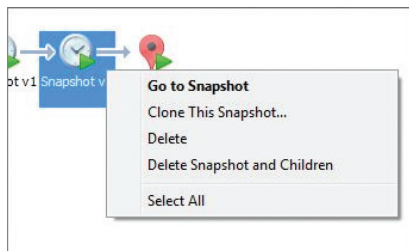


FIGURE 11.20 Reverting to a previous snapshot

Merging Snapshots

Suppose your tests necessitate an update to your original virtual machine. You discover that the operating system patches were not detrimental to the application environment and want to include them as part of the system. The process to do that involves collapsing the snapshots back into the original virtual machine. In Workstation, by deleting the snapshots in the chain, you can apply the snapshot changes to the original virtual machine. The first step, as shown in Figure 11.21, shows that the data in the second child disk was merged with the data in the first disk. The first child disk is now unlocked for writes so that it can be updated. Datablocks unique to the second child disk are added to the first child disk. Datablocks in the first child disk that were altered and also in the second child disk can be updated with those changes in the first child disk.

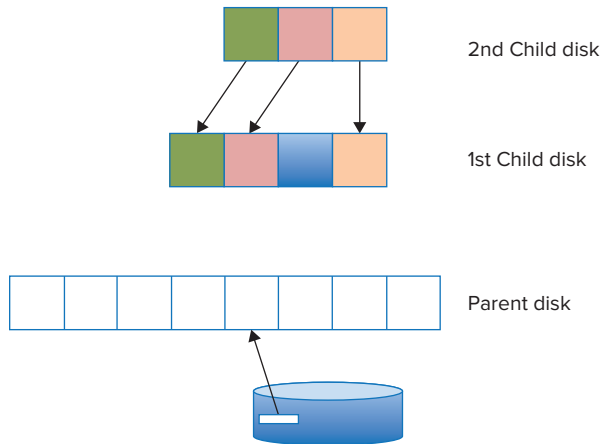


FIGURE 11.21 Deleting the second snapshot

The next step is to collapse the first snapshot's child disk, now including the second child disk's additions, into the unlocked parent disk. This is illustrated in Figure 11.22. Note that this process doesn't increase the size of the original disk at all. As a last step, all of the associated snapshot files are physically deleted from the disk. All of the changes have been merged into the original virtual machine. Because each child disk can potentially grow to the size of the parent disk, without periodically collapsing or deleting snapshots, large swaths of disk storage can be consumed and performance on the virtual machine can degrade. Again, snapshots are for testing, not for backup.

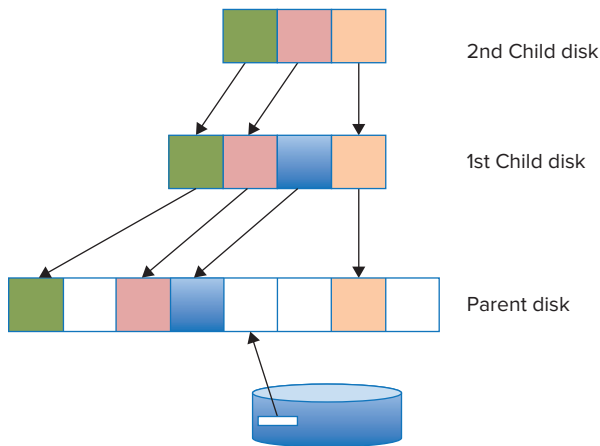


FIGURE 11.22 Deleting the first snapshot

Although the VMware terminology is a bit confusing regarding deleting snapshots, you can actually remove snapshots that you no longer need and don't want to merge into the original machine. When you do, the snapshot files are removed from the physical disk and the snapshot entries are cleared from the Snapshot Manager.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Virtual machines, because they are data files that contain the entire hardware and software configuration of a server, lend themselves to simpler methods of backup and recovery than their physical counterparts. Cloning a server becomes not much more than making a file copy with some identity configuration, which means the deployment of new servers is a faster and more reliable process than creating new instances for each server. Templates allow the creation of standard images, providing a clean model as a baseline for all of a company's new servers. Both of these capabilities, have made virtual server provisioning and deployment so fast and simple that there is now a condition known as *virtual sprawl*, in which too many virtual servers have been deployed, without the accompanying life-cycle management procedures that would limit this undisciplined, resource-consuming growth. Snapshots allow the creation of a point-in-time virtual machine that can be rolled forward or back to a specified state. These snapshots can be used to great effect for testing potential changes to an application environment, such as adding new operating system patches or new application code. All of these capabilities—cloning, templating,

(Continues)

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND *(Continued)*

and snapshots—allow the rapid creation, deployment, and reuse of accurate test environments with a minimum of effort and far fewer resources than are required in a similar physical configuration.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Copy the Linux VM using the manual process described in the chapter. When you edit the `.vmx` file, compare it to the `.vmx` file of the Windows virtual machine. Are the entries significantly different? Does your Linux virtual machine clone correctly?
- ▶ Open the `.vmx` file of the original virtual machine side by side with the cloned virtual machine. Look for the `uuid.location` entries. Are they the same? If not, why not?
- ▶ What other identifiers would you need to alter in a cloned virtual machine to be sure it was unique? What might happen if these changes are not done?

Managing Additional Devices in Virtual Machines

Server virtualization focuses most of the attention on the CPU, memory, disk storage, and networking—the four main resources responsible for providing a superior user experience in a virtual environment. This makes perfect sense, but these four are not the only devices that users and applications need to work with in a virtual machine. Hypervisors support a wide selection of device types and connections to allow everything from serial and parallel device connection, up to the latest USB devices and advanced graphical displays. Vendors handle optimization of devices in many ways, usually with an installation of a software suite that can provide a number of enhancements to the guest.

- ▶ **Using virtual machine tools**
- ▶ **Understanding virtual devices**
- ▶ **Configuring a CD/DVD drive**
- ▶ **Configuring a floppy drive**
- ▶ **Configuring a sound card**
- ▶ **Configuring USB devices**
- ▶ **Configuring graphic displays**
- ▶ **Configuring other devices**

Using Virtual Machine Tools

As part of preparing a virtual machine for use, you installed the VMware Tools. VMware Tools is a suite of utilities that not only improves the performance of a virtual machine, but also improves the user experience by providing capabilities that are not available without them. Without these tools installed, the guest operating system works, just not as smoothly as it does with the tools. VMware Tools is actually deployed as three separate parts: an operating system service, a set of enhanced device drivers, and a user process for better user experience. In a Windows operating system, VMware Tools Service is deployed as the Windows service `vmtoolsd.exe`. On Linux systems, it is the daemon `vmtoolsd`. Both start when the virtual machine is powered on. They provide a range of services including:

- ▶ Cursor handling (Windows)
- ▶ Time synchronization between the guest and the host
- ▶ Heartbeat for availability
- ▶ Enhanced Hypervisor to Virtual Machine communications
- ▶ Display synchronization (Windows)
- ▶ Executing commands (Windows) or scripts (Linux) to help cleanly shut down or start a virtual machine OS

VMware Tools also provides a suite of enhanced device drivers for:

- ▶ Mice
- ▶ SCSI devices (BusLogic)
- ▶ SVGA graphical display for improved performance and higher resolutions
- ▶ Networking (vmxnet and vmxnet3)
- ▶ Audio
- ▶ Shared folders
- ▶ Virtual printing (Windows)
- ▶ Automatic backups
- ▶ Memory control

The VMware Tools user process is deployed as part of the `vmtoolsd.exe` service on Windows. On Linux systems, it is the program `vmware-user` and is started when you begin an X11 session. The user process provides:

- ▶ Display synchronization (Linux)
- ▶ Cursor handling (Linux)
- ▶ Text copying and pasting between a virtual machine and various other places
- ▶ Other product-specific user enhancements

VMware is not the only solution to use this methodology to help improve virtual machine performance. A similar suite is used for Citrix XenServer implementations. Citrix Tools for Virtual Machines is also installed in the operating system and replaces the native network and SCSI device drivers with an optimized version that provides enhanced throughput between the virtual machine and the hypervisor. Without these drivers, performance will be degraded and some capabilities, such as live migration, will not work. These tools also give the XenCenter management suite visibility of the performance metrics in a Windows virtual machine.

Microsoft Hyper-V also employs the addition of a package called Integration Services. The installation modifies the operating system kernel and adds new virtual device drivers to optimize the virtual machine to hardware communications. In addition to the device drivers, enhancements are made to improve:

- ▶ Time synchronization
- ▶ Virtual machine heartbeat
- ▶ Operating system shutdown
- ▶ Data exchange

All of these solutions help provide an optimized virtual machine, an improved user experience, and most importantly for this context, enhanced device drivers for the best device performance.

Understanding Virtual Devices

When you created a virtual machine, it was already preconfigured with a base set of virtual devices without additional customization. Once created, the devices could be configured further to provide more flexibility. Past these four main areas, additional devices are available. If you consider a personal computer,

there are USB devices like keyboards or mice. Printers are connected in a variety of ways. Other sensory interfaces, such as graphical displays and sound cards, are used as well. All of these are available.

1. To examine the various virtual hardware devices, open the Virtual Machine Settings on the Windows virtual machine. The hardware tab should be selected by default displaying the devices in the virtual machine. In these examples the virtual machine is powered on.
2. As a quick review, the amount of virtual memory can be adjusted either up or down. The number of virtual processors can also be added to or subtracted from. Network adapters can be added and configured for various uses and network connection types. Additional hard disks of varying sizes and properties can be added and configured as well.

Configuring a CD/DVD Drive

The CD/DVD drive is one of the standard devices initially configured for a virtual machine and the reason is obvious. To load many software applications and operating systems, CDs and DVDs are still the preferred transfer media. Today, if you accept electronic delivery of software, it will often be downloaded in the ISO format, which is a standard format for a CD or DVD. As you saw when you loaded both the Windows and Linux operating systems, you can boot a system from an ISO image.

Highlight the CD/DVD drive. As shown in Figure 12.1, the physical CD/DVD device is the specified connection, rather than the ISO image file that you used earlier. Under the Device Status, note that it shows the device is connected and that it will automatically connect at power on. While this is fine for the simple configuration we are using here, in a normal environment with many virtual machines on a single host, this choice would be troublesome. If each virtual machine on the system tried to connect to the device, only the first one booted would be successful and it would retain control of the device until it was either shut down or an administrator disconnected it through the settings panel. For that reason, this device would not normally be set to Connect At Power On.

The drop-down menu in the Connection box will display all of the CD/DVD devices available on the physical server. If there is more than one, you could select a preferred device. The Advanced button allows you to select a specific address for the device, but this needs to be done with the virtual machine in a powered off state.

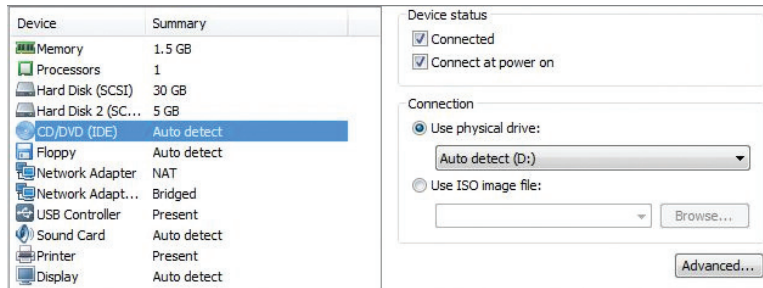


FIGURE 12.1 The CD/DVD device configuration

Configuring a Floppy Disk Drive

While CDs and DVDs are still being used for both commercial and consumer purposes, floppy disks are barely around. The original floppy disks were made of a round piece of magnetic media sealed in a thin, square, usually black plastic envelope. Both the disk and the envelope were fairly flexible and well, floppy, hence the name. They were one of the first methods of portable storage for moving data files from one system to another. With the spread of personal computers, they were the transportable media of choice. The first floppies, developed during the 1970s, were 8-inches square and could hold 1.2 MB of data. As technology improved, they shrank to 5¼ inches square with roughly the same capacity. By the end of the 1980s, they had shrunk again to 3½ inches, could hold 1.44 MB of data, but had a harder plastic case and could no longer flop. Today, they have been replaced by smaller, denser, and faster storage devices such as USB flash drives, SD memory cards, and removable hard drives.

So why still support an almost extinct mode of storage? There are a number of good reasons. One reason that consolidation and virtual environments are attractive to companies is because of the continued support of older operating systems and the hardware devices on which they rely. A Windows NT server that uses a floppy disk image to receive information can still do so in a virtual environment. A virtual floppy disk image can still be used to transfer data from one system to another, though these days it would probably either be sent by a network or hand-carried on one of the newer devices mentioned earlier. Not necessarily a realistic solution, but still possible.

Highlight the Floppy drive. Figure 12.2 shows the configuration options for the virtual floppy disk drive. The Device Status and the Connection options are the same as the CD/DVD device with a few exceptions. The first is the

Read-Only checkbox. Physical floppy disks had a write-protect tab that could be flipped to prevent additional changes to the data on the disk. This option serves the same function and will prevent accidental erasure or rewriting of the disk. The second option is the Create button. You can create a virtual floppy disk and copy files to it as you would a physical floppy disk. In the case of VMware Player, the floppy disk is actually a file in the host file system.

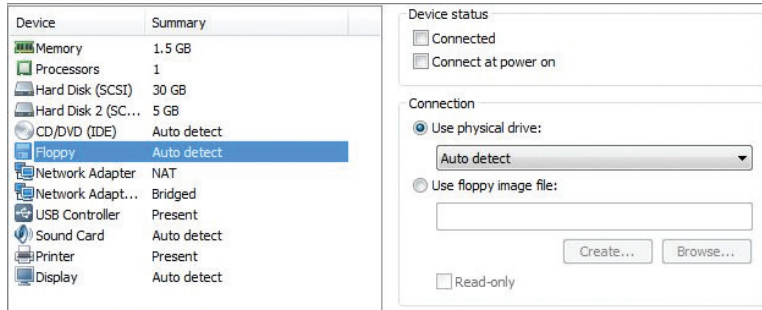




FIGURE 12.2 Floppy disk configuration

1. At the bottom of the VMware Player window is a device panel that displays the virtual devices available to the virtual machine. The Floppy icon () is there but grayed out. To connect the floppy drive, select the Connected and Connect At Power On checkboxes in the Device Status box. Select the Use Floppy Image File radio button in the Connection box.
2. Select Create and the Create a Floppy Image window appears. Note the default location is the folder where the virtual machine resides. Enter **Essentials** as the file name and select Save.
3. Select OK to save the changes and continue. Note the Floppy Drive icon () is now active and, like the other available and mounted devices, has a virtual green LED to display I/O activity.
4. In the virtual machine, click the Windows Start button and select Computer. The floppy disk drive is now available and mounted, but not quite usable. Right-click on the Floppy Disk Drive, as shown in Figure 12.3. Choose Format from the menu. When the Disk Format

menu appears, accept the default selections and click Start to begin the initialization of the virtual floppy disk.

5. A warning appears that you will be erasing the new floppy disk. Click OK to continue. A moment later, the Format Complete message appears. Click OK to dismiss the message. Choose Close to exit the Format screen.

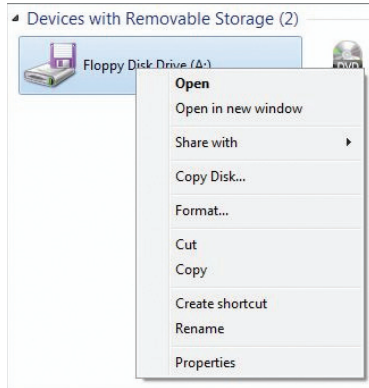


FIGURE 12.3 Floppy disk management options

6. Double-click on the Floppy Disk Drive and it opens into a Windows directory. You can now copy a file there as you would to any other disk. When you are done, close the Computer window.
7. In your host, open Windows Explorer and navigate to the directory where the virtual machine files reside. As shown in Figure 12.4, you can see that the floppy disk image you created, `Essentials.flp`, is there and it is the 1.44 MB size that a physical floppy disk would be. You could open this file on another virtual machine by attaching to it in the Virtual Machine Settings and using the Use Floppy Image File option.
8. Close Windows Explorer and reopen the Virtual Machine Settings.



FIGURE 12.4 The floppy disk image file

Configuring a Sound Card

Sound is not usually considered mandatory for virtual machines, since most business applications don't rely on audio to provide data to their users. That is rapidly changing. From the spread of virtual desktops, to newer social media applications, to educational and informational audio and video clips, sound is becoming an integral part of how computer services are being delivered. This change is accelerating as the line between consumer services and corporate services continues to blur, forcing each side to adopt characteristics and expectations of the other. Fortunately, hypervisors already have the ability to deliver a virtualized sound card. The virtual sound card actually passes control back to the local sound card that the virtual machine's guest operating system can then utilize. A desktop virtual machine that is running Windows 7 on a host server in the data center uses the physical sound card of the client device the user accesses the virtual machine from. Most hypervisors have this ability and are architected similarly.

Like the floppy drive, at the bottom of the VMware Player window is an icon (🔊) that shows whether sound is available and active. Since the sound card is one of the default devices added when the virtual machine was created, the icon is not grayed out. Highlighting the Sound Card will show the device options, as illustrated in Figure 12.5. Like the floppy and CD/DVD drives shown earlier, the Device Status settings will automatically connect the device to the virtual machine when it is powered on. The virtual sound card can be configured after the virtual machine is created. The Connection area offers two options. The first is to Use Default Host Sound Card. If you select Specify Host Sound Card, you can examine the pull-down menu that would allow you to change the default, but only if your system has more than one sound option.

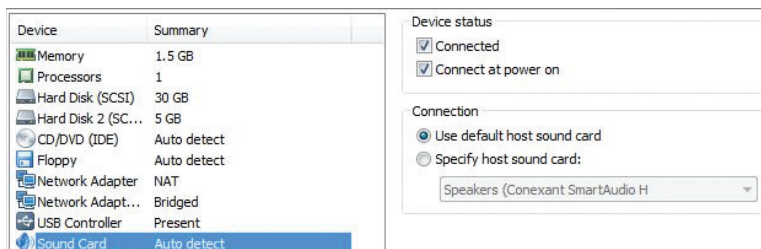


FIGURE 12.5 Sound card options

Configuring USB Devices

PCs and other computers in the 1980s had many ways to connect storage and interface devices. Printers were initially connected through parallel ports. Serial ports connected modems for communications. Other connectors were available for keyboards and mice. There was even a special port for a joystick to play games. None of them were compatible with each other in form or often function. In 1994, a number of PC-related companies including IBM, Microsoft, and Intel began to work on a unified way to connect these external devices. Two years later the result was the *Universal Serial Bus (USB)* standard. USB created one connection, enabled greater throughput speeds and provided a way to supply power for the devices. Taking the place of many of the first-generation connections for computer peripherals, USB is now the de facto standard for device connection.

Floppy disks soon gave way to thumb drives for easy, portable storage. You probably have personal experience with USB devices and their plug-and-play ease of use. Today we connect digital cameras, MP3 players, and even speakers, in addition to mice, keyboards, and printers via the USB port. Since the standard's first release, there have been two major updates. USB 2.0 was released in 2000, with the largest change being a quadrupling of the speed to 60 MB per second. Interim enhancements have provided portable-electronics consumers two of the most common capabilities they use: synchronizing and recharging mobile devices by connecting them to a computer through the USB port. Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are creeping into the synchronization space, but until broadcast power is available, recharging will still depend on the wired connection. USB 3.0, released at the end of 2008, is still relatively new. It provides a large improvement in throughput speed, capable of delivering 625 MB per second, ten times greater than USB 2.0. With additional improvements and enhancements on the roadmap, it appears that the USB standard will be around for quite a while.

1. Figure 12.6 illustrates the few options that are available with regard to managing the USB connection for a virtual machine. The Connections box has four checkbox items. The Enable High-Speed Support For USB 2.0 Devices option is for use with more sophisticated devices with higher demand, such as web cams, microphones, and speakers.
2. The Automatically Connect New USB Devices option will allow the virtual machine to access newly connected devices.

There are more companies involved with the USB standard today than the original seven. Find out more about what is coming, including Wireless USB at <http://www.usb.org>.

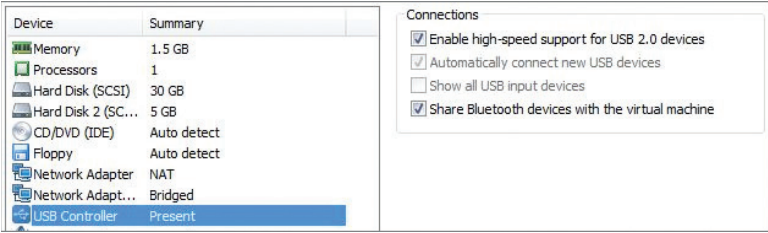


FIGURE 12.6 USB management options

- 3. The Show All USB Input Devices option will display the connected USB devices in the bottom of the VMware Player window. If the device is already connected to the host, it will appear but be grayed out. You can right-click on the icon, as shown in Figure 12.7, and connect the device to the virtual machine. Since a USB device can only be connected to one computer at a time, it will be disconnected from the host system before being connected to the guest.
- 4. The Share Bluetooth Devices With The Virtual Machine option does as its name suggests, allowing devices connected by Bluetooth to the host to be connected to the guest.

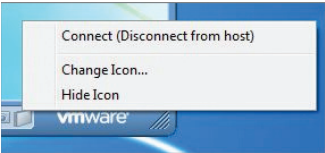


FIGURE 12.7 Connecting a USB device from a host

Type 2 hypervisors initially had superior support for USB devices because they could leverage the host operating system underneath the hypervisor. In this way, solutions like VMware player offer certain capabilities that are not available in Type 1 hypervisors, like the Bluetooth connectivity. This is not usually an issue with enterprise environments. Initial Type 1 hypervisor releases did not have USB support at all, one reason being the live-motion capabilities. You will learn more in Chapter 13, “Understanding Availability,” about moving a running virtual machine from one physical host to another. If a USB device were connected to the first physical server, when the virtual machine was relocated,

it would no longer be available on the second physical host. Newer releases, however, do support some level of this functionality.

Configuring Graphic Displays

Like a physical machine, a virtual machine supports a graphical display or monitor. In practice, much like a mouse, a keyboard, or other human interface devices (HIDs), each virtual machine does not have its own dedicated monitor. Instead, the user connects to the virtual machine with a common set of basic peripherals for the duration of a session. Even though this is the norm, many applications and situations now require a wider set of more specialized configurations. Software developers typically use multiple screens for additional desktop space. Newer operating systems have higher visual performance requirements than the classic 640×480 screen resolution. The blending of higher quality video into many application experiences also necessitates support of this kind. Again, hypervisors handle these devices by leveraging the hardware of the display itself.

By highlighting the Display device, as shown in Figure 12.8, you can see the checkbox option for accelerated 3D graphics, specifically for Windows DirectX support. In the Monitors area, the Use Host Setting For Monitors option uses the settings of the host machine. This is for VMware Player, where there is a host operating system underneath to access.

The Specify Monitor Settings option can be used to set the number of monitors the virtual machine can access, as well as the configuration for those monitors. In this way, a virtual machine can have multiple, high-performance graphical displays.

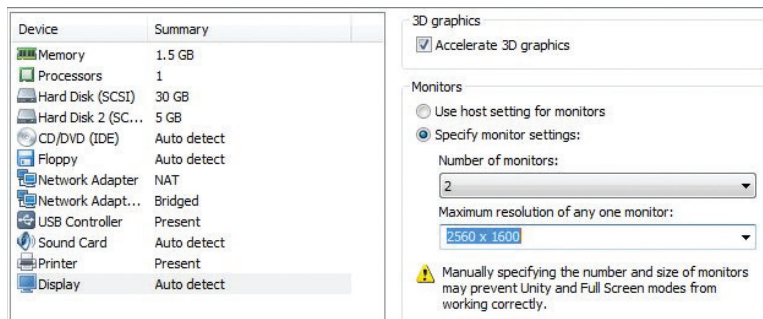


FIGURE 12.8 Display device options

Configuring Other Devices

There are other device connection types that can be configured for a virtual machine that are not part of the initial default virtual machine creation. Often they are not included because the devices, which once were connected by these legacy methods, are now connected by other means such as USB. Serial and parallel port devices are two of these.

Serial ports pass information through them serially, or one bit at a time; and in early computers, serial ports were frequently reserved for pre-Internet communications via an external modem. Today, PC modems are typically part of a PC's motherboard connected to the external world by an RJ11 phone jack, if they are there at all.

Parallel ports can pass many bits of data simultaneously, depending on the actual cable configuration. Originally designed as a high-bandwidth connection for printers, parallel connections soon found their way onto other external peripherals such as tape drives and disk drives. Today, they have been superseded by USB devices and are barely included on most computer hardware. In both cases, parallel and serial ports, there are times when the virtual machine may need to use or emulate them.

▶
64-bit Microsoft Windows operating systems no longer provide native legacy parallel port support.

1. Normally, the virtual machine would need to be powered off for this process, but because you are not actually adding a serial port it will not be necessary. Click the Add button at the bottom of the Virtual Machine Setting window to add a hardware device. Select the Serial Port option and click Next to continue. As shown in Figure 12.9, there are three serial port types from which to choose.
2. The Use Physical Serial Port On Host option is similar to the other devices discussed earlier. Click Next to continue. The default setting is to auto-detect, but if you have a serial port on your system you could examine the pull-down menu to select it. There is also the familiar checkbox to automatically connect the port to the virtual machine when it is powered on. Click Back to return to serial port types.
3. Select the Output To File option and then click Next. On this screen, you can browse for an existing file to connect to as a port, or to create one to which to stream information. This capability can be used for simulations. Click Back to return to serial port types.

4. Select the Output To Named Pipe option and then click Next. Named pipes are used for inter-process communications in a single system, or they can be used to pass data from virtual machine to virtual machine.
5. Click Cancel to close the window.

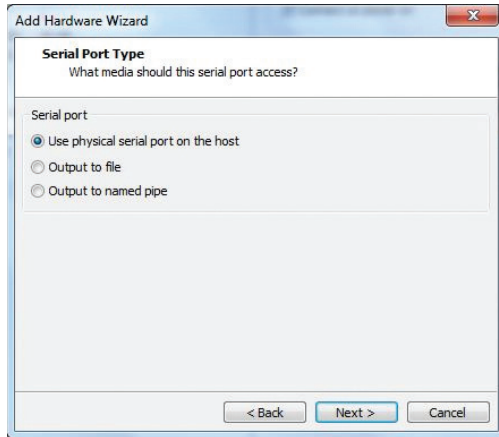


FIGURE 12.9 Serial port types

Now let's examine the parallel port. As before, the virtual machine would normally be powered off for this process, but because you are not actually adding a parallel port, it will not be necessary.

1. Click the Add button at the bottom of the Virtual Machine Setting window to add a hardware device. Select the Parallel Port option and click Next to continue. As shown in Figure 12.10, there are two parallel port types from which to choose.
2. The Use Physical Parallel Port On Host option is also similar to the other devices discussed earlier. Click Next to continue. The default setting is to auto-detect, but if you have a parallel port on your system you could examine the pull-down menu to select it. Beneath the Device Status heading is the checkbox to automatically connect the port to the virtual machine when it is powered on. Click Back to return to serial port types.
3. Select the Output To File option and then click Next. On this screen, you can browse for an existing file to connect to as a port,

or create one to stream information. This capability can be used for simulations.

4. Click Cancel to close the window.

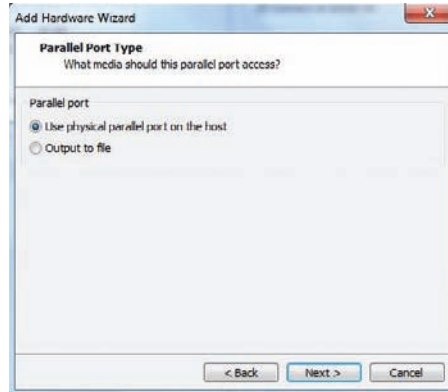


FIGURE 12.10 Parallel port types

Finally, let's examine a generic SCSI device.

1. Click the Add button at the bottom of the Virtual Machine Setting window to add a hardware device. Select the Generic SCSI device and click Next to continue. Figure 12.11 illustrates the SCSI device options. The Connection pull-down menu allows you to choose a CD drive or a hard disk. As with the other devices, the Connect At Power On checkbox will connect the device when the virtual machine is powered on.
2. Click Cancel to close the window.

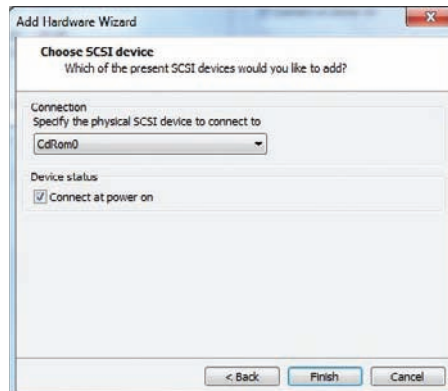


FIGURE 12.11 Generic SCSI device options

Not all devices can be used in a virtual environment. Certain specialized PC boards like fax modems have no virtual analogies. Industry-specific hardware (telephony systems, for example) cannot be virtualized. Aside from a few scattered examples, the bulk of peripherals in use today can be connected and optimized for use with a virtual machine. As technology and hypervisors continue to mature and evolve, the number of devices that cannot be virtualized should diminish to virtually zero.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Beyond the CPU, memory, disks, and networking, virtual machines use other peripheral devices for their operation. Everything from a mouse and keyboard, to a CD/DVD drive and the sound card for stereo speakers also need to be efficiently virtualized for applications to run correctly and provide a good user experience. To optimize these additional devices, a combination of optimized device drivers and additional guest operating-system processes are added to the virtual machine as a software installation. One of the strengths of virtualization is support for older device technologies to extend the life of an application after the original hardware has become obsolete. As peripherals have evolved over time, hypervisors have also matured and are now capable of handling the outdated, current, and emerging devices and their connection methods.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Add another USB hardware device in the Virtual Machine Settings. What happens? Add a second sound card. Add another printer. Why did they react the same way as the USB hardware device?
- ▶ Connect a USB device to your virtual machine. Use a thumb drive or a similar storage device. How difficult is the process? Can you easily transfer information between the host operating system and the guest operating system?

Understanding Availability

The information age has altered our expectations around services. The Internet provides round-the-clock service and gives us access to everything from the latest news to our latest bank statements. The servers and datacenters that deliver information need to be available as close to 100 percent of the time as possible. This requirement also holds true in a virtual environment. By using traditional availability solutions, a single virtual machine can be as reliable as a physical one. With capabilities physical servers cannot easily replicate, virtual machines can be more available than physical servers. By stacking multiple virtual machines on a single host, new techniques are available to ensure that a host failure does not severely impact the group. Finally, virtualization allows less expensive and more flexible options to protect an entire datacenter from an interruption due to a large scale disaster.

- ▶ **Increasing availability**
- ▶ **Protecting a virtual machine**
- ▶ **Protecting multiple virtual machines**
- ▶ **Protecting datacenters**

Increasing Availability

Recent history has numerous examples of new technologies becoming vital resources in our everyday existence. Thomas Edison built the first power plant in 1882, but it took almost another 70 years to provide electricity to just about everyone in the United States. Refrigeration, appliances, heat, and light all fail when the power is off. Energy companies have employed sophisticated power grids to prevent such occurrences, but they still inconvenience us with regularity. Telephone service followed a similar path. Invented in the mid-1850s and brought to market twenty years later, there were almost

6 million telephones by 1910 in AT&T's system. Fifty years later the number jumped to 80 million phones, and when the first cellular phones appeared in the early 1990s, over 200 million telephones were in use. As the communication service provided by the telephone became indispensable, keeping the service available was vital. Because of the relative simplicity of the system, telephony engineers were able to achieve upwards of 99.999 percent availability, or having less than six minutes of downtime per year. This level of service is what many companies strive for, so it is often referred to dial-tone availability. How many times in your life have you picked up a (noncellular) telephone and not heard a dial tone?

We now rely on these basic services as crucial necessities and can't imagine living without even for a few hours. While instant communications and electricity do perform potentially life-sustaining functions, there are services we use that are not so critical. The first U.S. ATM was introduced in 1969, and today there are over 400,000 across the country. Until then, you needed to visit a branch during banking hours and interact with a human bank teller. When was the last time you saw a bank teller? Today the expectation is that we can perform transactions at any time. Checking account balances, money transfers, and even paying monthly bills can be done from a home computer. Mobile devices add a whole new dimension to financial transactions with digital wallets, which are already widely used in Japan. But if the ATM is not available, how crucial is it? The truth is, an offline ATM or a bank website closed for service is inconvenient, but not as critical as a power outage. The expectation, though, has become the same.

This new demand is not limited to ATMs, but it touches just about everything fueling our information-driven age. Just as we are not content to manage financial transactions only during banking hours, we are increasingly insistent that all services, both corporate and commercial, are available on a 24-hours-a-day, 7-days-a-week, 365-days-a-year schedule. And companies are providing services on those terms. You can get music from Apple's iTunes store, Skype with a foreign friend, stream a movie from Amazon.com, buy insurance for your car, download a book to your Nook, Google anything, or attend an online college class any time of the day or night. These providers have huge datacenters to supply what is being demanded, and the goal is to deliver with dial-tone availability. Table 13.1 shows some different availability percentages to compare against that goal.

TABLE 13.1 Availability Percentages

Availability (%)	Downtime per Year
99	3.65 days
99.9	8.8 hours
99.99	53 minutes
99.999 (“five nines”)	5.3 minutes

Like an ATM outage, a service outage from one of the prior examples is inconvenient but not a disaster. Or is it? If a company’s datacenter suffers a catastrophic failure due to a natural disaster, it might be the end of the company. You’ll learn more about this possibility at the end of the chapter. But what about a shorter term failure? As another real-world example, consider email and the Blackberry. In every year from 2007 through 2011, users of Research In Motion’s Blackberry Internet-based email services suffered through major outages that in some cases spanned a number of days. Each time the event was either national or international news. No email is inconvenient, especially if you are a business, but the larger impact here is that RIM began to lose customers based on the outages. Loss of service equates to lost income, and studies have shown that an average business can lose \$100,000 per hour as a result of downtime. Long outages for larger companies can put a lot at risk. Internally, system downtime equates to lost productivity, adding to the losses. When companies who support these services evaluate virtualization benefits, increased availability is near the top of the list. And as virtualized datacenters transform into the engines that will drive cloud computing, availability becomes even more important.

Here are two additional thoughts about downtime. The first is that there are two types of downtime: planned and unplanned. Planned downtime is scheduled time to bring systems offline for maintenance. It could be for software updates or hardware upgrades, but whatever the reason, the system is unavailable and not servicing the users. Unplanned downtime is when disaster strikes. Application miscues, hardware failures, wrong buttons pressed, or power cords tripped over—these are sudden and costly events that might take hours or longer to resolve. The second thought is that you don’t get to choose when unplanned outages occur. Even 99.9 percent uptime means there will still be almost nine hours of downtime in an average year. If you are a retailer and

◀ CIO surveys concerning the business drivers of moving to a virtual environment have consistently shown increased availability, along with consolidation and business agility, to be among the top three reasons to move.

◀ A study commissioned in the mid-1990s by Stratus Computer, a manufacturer of fault-tolerant hardware, revealed that the number one reason for system outages was human error.

Murphy's Law dictates the outage occurs the Friday after the Thanksgiving holiday, it could cost millions of dollars in lost revenue.

Protecting a Virtual Machine

Let's examine availability in a virtual environment. There are three layers to consider: a single virtual machine, a host or groups of hosts, and the entire datacenter. In addition to the virtual machines, and their hosts, there is also the additional infrastructure such as the network and storage systems, not to mention the environmental factors like electrical power and air conditioning. All of the aforementioned areas have their own methods to improve availability, and they will not be covered here except in a virtualization context. Beginning with the individual virtual machine, you will learn how, in many ways, workloads in a virtual environment are actually often more available than those on physical servers. At first, this may seem counter-intuitive. If a single physical server goes offline, for whatever reason, only a single workload is impacted, whereas when a virtual host fails, multiple virtual machines would be affected. Virtual infrastructures have capabilities that will automatically protect and recover all of the workloads with greater speed than most physical infrastructures.

As with other areas in virtualization, many availability strategies utilized with physical servers translate well to the virtual environment. There is still no replacement for good backup and recovery practices. Though not covered in detail here, application files can still be backed up and recovered using the same tools that are used on a physical server. This is not always the best choice in a virtual environment because it is a very resource-intensive operation and attempting to simultaneously back up multiple virtual machines can quickly choke a host's processing and network bandwidth. You learned earlier in Chapter 11, "Copying a Virtual Machine," that since a VM is actually a set of files, you could protect not just the applications files but also the entire server, including the operating system and the virtual hardware configuration by backing up those virtual machine files. Numerous applications are available from virtualization vendors, storage providers, and third parties that work by backing up on the storage level, which minimally impacts the virtual machines and the hypervisor.

The first line of defense is to protect the individual workload, and here the focus will be on managing or recovering from a failure. There are other aspects that can be considered as part of the larger discussion: antivirus and other security measures to prevent malicious intent, proper sizing, architecture, and capacity management to handle performance spikes and growth, and good life-cycle management practices to prevent virtual server sprawl, virtual zombie

servers, and wasted resources. These are important areas to consider, but more advanced than this discussion will cover. The following features and solutions are offered in VMware's hypervisor offering, but are not necessarily exclusive to VMware. Each release from VMware adds new features and functionality, while each release from Microsoft and Citrix does as well. Because VMware offers the greatest depth and breadth of features, and owns more than 80 percent of the market, it makes sense to focus there.

SOME ADVANCED TOPICS

The ease and speed of creating virtual machines provides huge benefits to IT departments, but as the Sorcerer's Apprentice discovered, ease and speed are not always the blessing you think they are. Without adding additional business processes along with the technology, companies found that they were soon drowning in virtual machines. A developer could request a test environment and an hour later it would be there. Next week, he could get another. Eventually, dozens of virtual machines were in the environment that had no associated decommission date and the resources for business critical workloads were being consumed far ahead of schedule. This is *server sprawl*. Many of these short-time-use but long-time-deployed virtual machines are not shut down. These server zombies run in the environment using minimal resources but actually perform no useful work, having been abandoned by their requesters—or saved “just in case.” A wealth of information is available concerning security in virtual environments, covering topics that overlap with physical environments—for example, PCI (credit card processing standards) and other types of compliance and environment hardening, securing systems against unwanted intrusions, and antivirus solutions. Each vendor has specific recommendations and best practices. You can see them at:

VMware

<http://www.vmware.com/technical-resources/security/index.html>

Microsoft

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd569113.aspx>

and Citrix

<http://support.citrix.com/article/CTX120716>.

(Continues)

SOME ADVANCED TOPICS *(Continued)*

As a result of these new virtual infrastructures, a number of new ways to attack these problems have been developed. In the antivirus space, for example, the traditional solution to load an antivirus engine on each guest doesn't scale. Imagine all of them downloading updates and then doing system scans at the same time. VMware has developed a virtual appliance that monitors an entire host and works with third parties to manage the virus definitions and guest scanning, which is much more efficient and scalable than the old method.

Virtual architectures use a number of strategies to help prevent hardware failures from bringing down a virtual machine. Many of these techniques were developed and deployed in physical environments. In Chapter 9, “Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine,” you learned about RAID technologies, in which greater availability is afforded to data stored on disks by combinations of disk mirroring, disk striping, and other techniques to prevent data loss in case of a disk drive failure. All of these standard practices are transparent to the operating systems that access the data on the protected disks. Because they are transparent, they work just as well in a virtual environment as they do in the physical world. Often, storage arrays that provide disk space to systems support both physical and virtual servers. In addition to higher availability in the disk storage, the path from the storage to the host system, and by extension the virtual machine, can also be protected against a failure. This *multipathing* is accomplished by having more than one path from the host to the storage array. The physical path is duplicated through the environment traversing two controllers in the storage array, separate network switches, and two physical NICs in the host server. If any of the components fail, a path still remains for the operating system on the virtual machine to use, and this capability is transparent to the operating system and any applications that depend on it. Multipathing provides additional performance benefits by load balancing the data across the two paths.

NIC *teaming*, shown in Figure 13.1, bundles together two or more physical network adapters into a group. This group can load balance traffic across all of the physical devices for higher throughput, but more importantly, can continue

to service the network if one of the adapters were to fail. All of the physical NICs need to be associated with the same virtual switch.

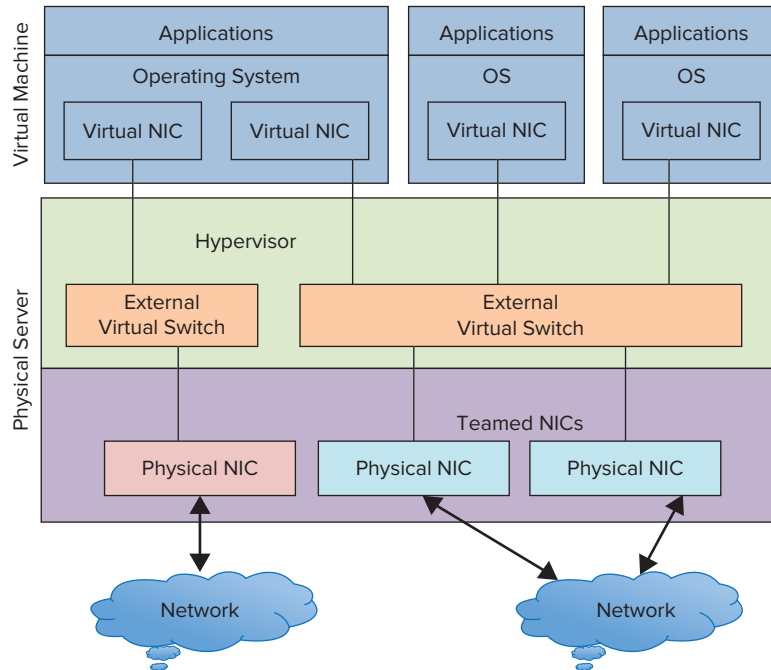


FIGURE 13.1 NIC teaming

Inside the virtual machine, VMware Tools provides a heartbeat between the guest operating system and the hypervisor. If the guest fails due to an operating system crash, or due to an application failure that causes an operating system crash, the hypervisor can then reboot that guest. User-configurable parameters determine how many times the attempt to restart a guest will be performed before discontinuing to prevent an endless loop of reboots. The event can be configured to trigger a notification process for an administrator to be alerted. There are also third-party tools that can monitor applications. If the application fails, but the operating system does not, the application can be automatically restarted without human intervention.

All of these techniques, features, and solutions can help increase the uptime of a virtual machine and the workload that it supports. But the virtual machine

and the hypervisor still rely on the server hardware beneath them. What happens when the virtualization host server fails?

Protecting Multiple Virtual Machines

There are solutions to minimize the chances of a server failure. Since the 1980s, there have been commercially available fault-tolerant solutions that relied on software and then hardware to prevent server outages. Fault-tolerant hardware uses redundant systems, down to the cooling fans and the power supplies, sometimes with the duplicate power cords plugged into separate electrical grids. With such designs, a single component failure won't bring down an application. These systems were originally aimed at organizations that needed extraordinary uptime such as emergency services or flight control systems. Soon businesses that had critical transactional windows began using them as well—financial service companies where downtime during the trading day might cost millions of dollars an hour, public transportation services where downtime resulted in rider delays, and even home shopping channels where an hour of missed orders translates into a sizable financial loss. These systems still exist, but have fallen out of favor as commercial servers have become more reliable, and other solutions have appeared.

One of these solutions is *clustering*. By linking together two or more servers with a physical network, shared storage resources, and clustering software, a simple cluster allows an application to quickly recover from a server outage. When the primary server fails, for whatever reason, the cluster software routes the application traffic to the secondary server and processing can continue. The cluster software makes the multiple servers appear to be a single resource, but it is often complex to manage, sometimes requiring application changes and specialized knowledge. Some examples of these are Microsoft Cluster Services, Symantec Cluster Server, and Oracle Real Applications Clusters. As with other solutions you've seen, these can also be used inside of the virtual environment, but again there are some new capabilities that virtualization offers. Not only can you cluster from one virtual machine to another, but you can cluster from a physical machine to a virtual machine as well. Some companies that are experienced with clustering, but not yet comfortable with virtualization, often deploy the latter configurations. But that is just one application in one server, physical or virtual. What happens in a virtualization host?

Virtualization solutions have some degree of high availability (HA) architected into them through clustering as well. A simple virtual cluster, shown in Figure 13.2, is composed of two or more physical servers, a shared storage resource, and

appropriate networking resources. Hypervisors are on each host, and virtual machines are staged on each hypervisor. When a virtualization host fails, all of the virtual machines dependent on it also fail. Because of the shared storage, HA has access to the virtual machine files and can restart all of the failed virtual machines on other hosts in the cluster, and a few minutes later they are all running again. Performance algorithms ensure that there is enough spare capacity on the hosts before adding these virtual machines. When you're planning for the configuration of a virtual environment, consider spare capacity for HA as one of the constraints. While this process is still a recovery, there is a great deal of benefit to this architecture. In a physical environment, this functionality requires specialized software and additional hardware, and typically protects a single application. In a virtual environment, this functionality is designed into the architecture, protects all of the virtual machines on the host, and is transparent to the guest operating systems and their applications. Application workloads that in the past could not be protected due to cost constraints, can now partake of increased availability just by virtue of being on the virtual infrastructure. Ultimately, though, a failed host server means crashed virtual machines, and there is only one exception to this.

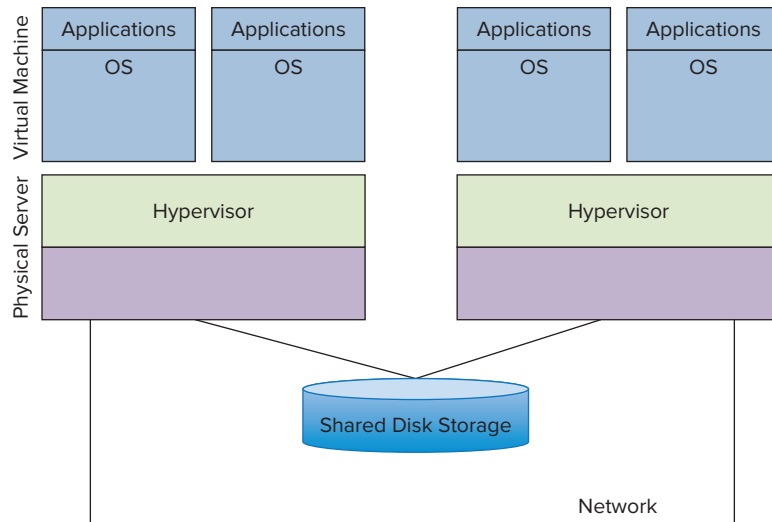


FIGURE 13.2 A virtual platform cluster

Similar to clustering software, but providing greater availability is *fault tolerance (FT)*. A fault-tolerant virtual machine is able to withstand the failure of

a virtualization host without incurring any downtime or impact on the user application. Figure 13.3 shows a simple illustration of a fault-tolerant virtual machine. When fault tolerance is enabled, a second virtual machine is instantiated on a different host than the primary. It rapidly duplicates the state of the primary; and as changes occur on the primary, they are duplicated in lockstep on the secondary. The two virtual machines monitor each other's heartbeat, and in the event of the primary host's failure, the secondary immediately takes over as the primary. A new secondary is created on a different host, and the virtual machine is protected again. No transactions are lost, and users are not impacted. When you're planning capacity resources, remember that a fault-tolerant virtual machine consumes double the resources because there are two copies executing in the infrastructure. Additional network resources are also required to convey the continuous virtual machine changes. As with HA, no specialized software is required; the capability is built into the hypervisor and is enabled with a checkbox selection. Because of the extra resource consumption, only mission-critical workloads are selected to be fault tolerant. As of this writing, only VMware provides this ability.

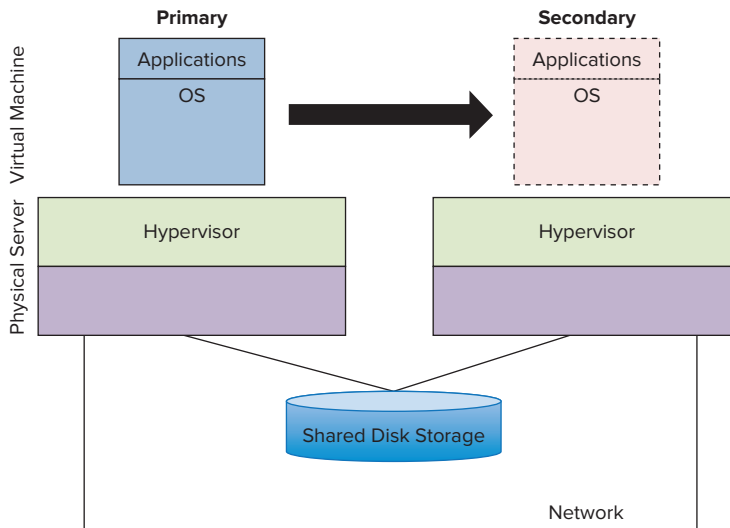


FIGURE 13.3 A fault-tolerant VM

You learned earlier about live migration capabilities, where a virtual machine can be moved from one virtualization host to another without downtime or impacting application performance. While this is an amazing feature, if a

physical server fails, it will be too late to move the virtual machines. Where this does impact availability is during planned downtime. In a physical environment when a server needs maintenance, or even replacement, the application needs to go offline until the maintenance or the upgrade is complete. The exception to this would be a system protected by a cluster solution where the application could be failed over to the secondary server for the duration of the maintenance. In a virtual environment, when the server needs to go offline, all of the virtual machines are migrated to other hosts in the cluster. Figure 13.4 illustrates this process. When the host maintenance is complete, the server is added to the cluster again and repopulated with virtual machines. No application downtime is needed and no users are impacted. Hosts can be transparently replaced in the cluster; and maintenance work, since it no longer impacts individual virtual machines, can be done at any time, instead of being scheduled for off hours. This is the type of flexibility that cloud computing services will need to provide to succeed.

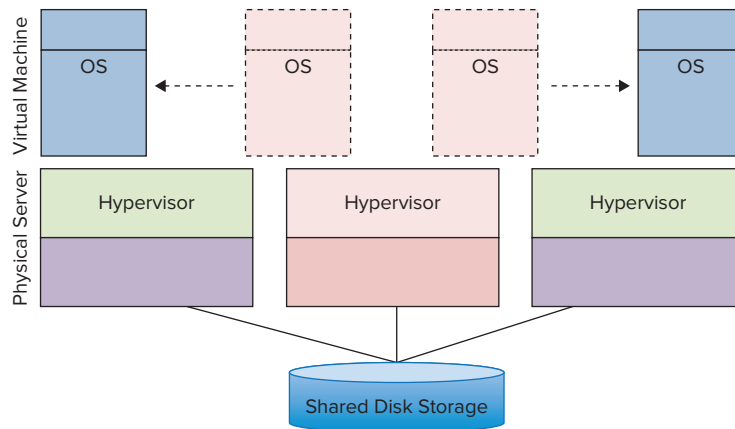


FIGURE 13.4 VM migration during maintenance

Live migration can provide availability to virtual machines during virtualization host maintenance, but that is only part of the infrastructure. There are times when storage arrays also need to be taken offline for maintenance or replacement. Fortunately, a similar technology exists for the storage element of a virtual machine. Figure 13.5 shows a simple illustration of storage migration. While live migration transfers the running virtual machine, in essence the memory structures, from one host to another, storage migration moves the physical files from one disk to another, again while the virtual machine is running, without downtime, and without impacting the application. This ability

can help during storage array replacements, moving the virtual machine files from the old array to the new array without downtime. This capacity can also help with performance issues. If a disk is suffering degraded performance due to an uneven distribution of data, storage migration can allow an administrator to rebalance the virtual machine files for a more even performance profile. The latest versions of storage migration can execute this operation in an automated manner, proactively resolving performance problems due to I/O contention.

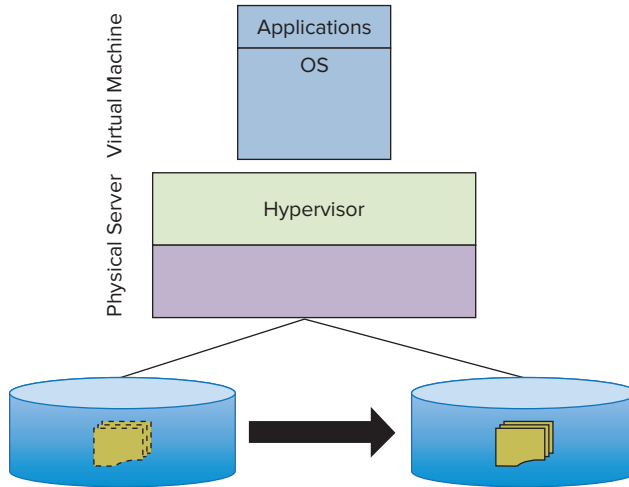


FIGURE 13.5 Storage migration

One last scenario involves a partial host failure. In the event that a network path or a storage path is lost from a particular host, the virtual machines would still be running but unable to access their data or communicate with the users. The virtualization host would also still be running. Newer versions of VMware ESX can determine if the path is still available from other hosts in the cluster. If it is, the HA functionality will fail over the affected virtual machines to the hosts that still have visibility of the network or the storage resource. If the path is not available, or there are not enough resources available to support the HA event, then nothing will happen.

Protecting Datacenters

Even by protecting the infrastructure, there are still events that cannot be controlled. Natural and man-made disasters strike without warning, and there is little that can be done for a datacenter affected by such an event. The results

of the event can be even more catastrophic for the company. Unlike the negative publicity short-term outages generate, the loss of a datacenter often costs the company its existence. According to the National Archives and Records Administration, 93 percent of companies that lost their datacenters for 10 days were bankrupt within the year. Even short lapses are devastating. Gartner reported that companies who lose access to their information for more than 24 hours due to a disaster have a 40 percent chance of failing. How do companies mitigate these terrible risks?

Many companies have disaster recovery (DR) plans already in place in case of these scenarios. They either have a secondary datacenter already in place or have contracted with a service provider who can provide them with an infrastructure to stage the minimum functions critical to the business until they can return to their own datacenter. This practice applies to both physical and virtual environments, though virtualization adds a few interesting twists. A common practice is to have a portion of the IT staff travel to the DR site with a set of system backups to annually test the plan. This test requires the staff to create a functional duplicate of the application; they will test and measure the effort involved to restore a working environment. Often duplicate hardware needs to be available with matching peripheral infrastructure down to the firmware patches on the NIC cards. Another downside is that this exercise frequently tests only a fragment of the infrastructure that would be required in the case of an actual emergency. Most successful DR tests restore less than 10 percent of the necessary infrastructure, take three to five business days to execute, and do very limited application testing. The monetary considerations are usually considerable when you factor the travel costs for the team and their time away from their regular job.

Virtualization, even if you change nothing else, allows a team to restore the infrastructure in a manner that is identical to the original. Because the hypervisor abstracts the physical hardware from the guests, you can restore onto any hardware server platform without worry. The setup is merely a hypervisor install, if the hosting provider doesn't already have a virtual environment in place, and then you copy the virtual machine files from the backup media to the disk storage. It isn't quite that simple, but it is close. Vendors have developed many solutions to protect datacenters, or at least the critical systems. Application solutions involve different degrees of data replication, near-time or real-time transfers of information to a second site. Storage vendors also leverage replication, shipping data block changes from the storage array in one site to the storage array in a DR site. These often have the advantage of being application agnostic and don't add processing to the CPU because it is all managed and

run through the storage array. Virtualization vendors leverage these existing channels to prevent data loss in the event of a disaster. Illustrated in Figure 13.6, VMware's Site Recovery Manager leverages either storage or processor replication to copy a virtual machine's files to the DR site and keep them up to date. In the event of a disaster, all of the virtual machines are already at the DR site, ready to be powered on. DR tests are then comprehensive, guaranteeing that all of the necessary virtual machines are available and their data is current. Another advantage of this solution is that a company's DR site can be a local or remote hosting provider with a virtual infrastructure. The company does not necessarily need to build and maintain a private DR site. There are other solutions that provide similar capabilities.

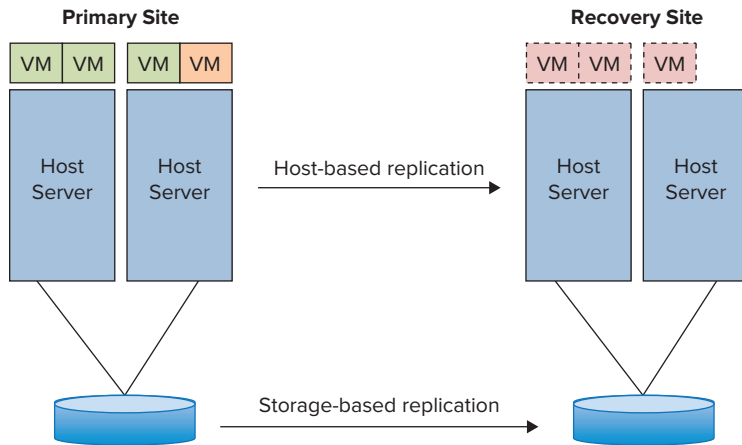


FIGURE 13.6 Site recovery manager

New solutions are on the horizon. Storage and networking vendors are already working on delivering what might be termed “long-distance VMotion,” the ability to move a virtual machine across a large geographic distance without disrupting the application. In this way, an entire datacenter could be moved without interruption, setting the stage for a time when workloads might travel the globe to the places where the users are, or to where the resources are, all transparent to their operation. In the context of disaster recovery, by moving the datacenter out of harm’s way before an event, assuming there is time, there might be no recovery needed. These capabilities have already been demonstrated; but for wider use, it presumes much greater network bandwidth being generally available than can be acquired at present.

This capability of dynamically shifting a workload without service interruption will be crucial to the deployment of cloud computing. While we are still in the first stages of providing services in this manner, we can already see the need and

the higher expectations of companies utilizing these architectures and services. In 2011, Amazon's EC2 (Elastic Compute Cloud) service suffered two sizable outages, and at least one was caused by natural events. Microsoft, who has been transitioning certain online services, such as Office365 and Hotmail, to their cloud services also had availability issues throughout the year due to the same natural events as well as some networking issues. A memory management issue prevented millions of Google Docs users from accessing their cloud-based documents. Clearly, the industry is still learning to handle cloud-scale architecture, but you can be sure that virtualization will be a large part of providing enterprise-level availability, flexibility, and agility to cloud service infrastructures.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Application availability is crucial to business operations and customer satisfaction. Because the information age we live in offers more services through technology channels, protecting the platforms that support those channels from outages is a top focus. Virtualization combines existing availability solutions that were developed and proven in the physical world with new capabilities possible only with virtual machines. From single virtual machines, to groups of virtual machines on a cluster of hosts, to entire datacenters, the virtual infrastructure offers multiple levels of availability. Many workloads, that as a physical server did not merit an HA solution, now can easily have that level of availability, increasing the overall datacenter measure. As more businesses embrace cloud computing to deliver services to their customers, and this convenience turns to necessity, the raised expectations to have those services always accessible will force businesses to employ many of these solutions.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Your company's datacenter has suffered a recent power outage and corporate applications were unavailable for two days. You have been asked to craft a strategy to quickly continue operations in the event of another outage. What type of availability (HA/DR/FT) would you recommend and why?
- ▶ You are asked to provide availability for an application that has been deemed to be critical to the daily operations. Any downtime will potentially cost the company hundreds of thousands of dollars per hour. What type of availability (HA/DR/FT) would you recommend and why?
- ▶ How would you convince an owner of a business-critical application to move to a virtual environment? Her major concern is sharing a server with other virtual machines that might impact availability.

Understanding Applications in a Virtual Machine

Virtualization and all of its accompanying benefits are changing the way infrastructures are designed and deployed, but the underlying reasons are all about the applications. Applications are the programs that run a company's business, provide them with a competitive advantage, and ultimately deliver the revenue that allows a company to survive and grow. With the corporate lifeblood at risk, application owners are reluctant to change from the existing models of how they have deployed applications to a virtual infrastructure. Once they understand how a virtual environment can help mitigate their risk in the areas of performance, security, and availability, they are usually willing to make the leap. Hypervisors leverage the physical infrastructure to ensure performance resources. Multiple virtual machines can be grouped together for faster and more reliable deployments. As both corporate and commercial services begin to shift to cloud computing models, ensuring that the applications supported on the virtual platforms are reliable, scalable, and secure is vital to a viable application environment.

- ▶ **Examining virtual infrastructure performance capabilities**
- ▶ **Deploying applications in a virtual environment**
- ▶ **Understanding virtual appliances and vApps**

Examining Virtual Infrastructure Performance Capabilities

Our efforts so far have focused on virtual machines and the virtual environment that supports them. While this is valuable, the result has to be that the applications deployed on physical servers can be migrated to these

virtual environments and benefit from properties you have already investigated. Applications are groups of programs that deliver services and information to their users. These services and information provide income for their companies. Fearful that the service will be compromised, the groups responsible for the applications (the application owners) are often reluctant to make changes to their environments. Application owners are unwilling to risk application changes that might impact the application's availability, scalability, and security. In Chapter 13, "Understanding Availability," you saw some of the ways a virtual environment can increase the uptime of an application. The ease of altering a virtual machine's configuration to add additional resources can make virtual machines more scalable than their physical counterparts. Other virtualization capabilities, such as live migration or storage migration, bring greater flexibility and agility to applications in a virtual environment. Another area where virtualization provides great benefits is the creation and manageability of the virtual machines through templates and clones, which can significantly reduce application deployment time and configuration errors, both areas that impact a company's bottom line. All of these are important, but probably most crucial is application performance.

Applications that perform poorly are usually short lived because they impact a business on many levels. Aside from the obvious factor that they extend the time it takes to accomplish a task and drive down efficiency, slow applications frustrate users, both internal and external to a company, and could potentially cost revenue. Again, it raises the topic of increased user expectations. Think about your own experiences with online services. Would you continue to purchase goods from a website where the checkout process took 20 minutes, or would you find another vendor where it would be less cumbersome? This is one reason why application owners are hesitant about virtualization—they are unsure about sharing resources in a virtualization host when their current application platform is dedicated entirely to their needs, even though it might be costly and inefficient.

Virtualization has a number of technologies that allow a business-critical application to get the resources it requires to operate quickly and efficiently, even at the expense of less critical virtual machines. As with the previous discussions, the model used here is from VMware's ESX solution. While these features are not in every vendor's virtualization solution, as products evolve, they will probably appear in some future release. The first of these is resource settings. Each virtual machine has three settings that can be adjusted to affect the amount of CPU and memory resources that it can receive. Figure 14.1 illustrates the options for these virtual machine settings (Shares, Reservations, and Limit).

The first setting is Shares, and it is used to measure against the *shares* that other virtual machines have been allocated to determine precedence. If a virtual machine has half the CPU shares of another virtual machine, it will be entitled to only half of the resources. In times of CPU contention, a virtual machine with more shares will be entitled to more scheduled CPU time. A *reservation* is the guaranteed minimum that a virtual machine will always have, even when resources are scarce. If there are not enough resources on a virtualization host to meet the reservation, the virtual machine cannot be powered on, and the virtual machine will be powered on in another host in the cluster. The *limit* is the greatest amount of resources that can be allocated to a virtual machine. This is normally not used since the resource configured for the virtual machine, the memory amount or number of processors, is the upper limit.

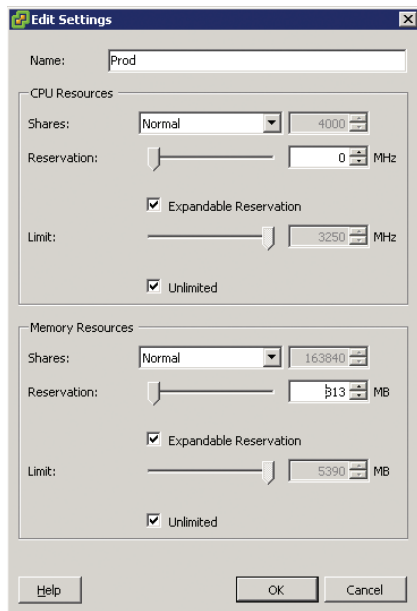


FIGURE 14.1 Virtual machine resource settings

On a single virtualization host, the hypervisor uses these settings to prioritize how memory and CPU resources should be rationed. If there is no resource contention, then all the virtual machines receive all of the resources they require, as they need them. This is the optimal scenario. In situations where virtual machines begin to request more resources than the physical host can provide, the hypervisor will allocate the resources using the resource settings as the governing rules. When these settings are configured correctly, virtual machines

that contain critical applications can be assured of receiving enough resources to maintain their performance. Less critical applications may suffer performance degradation, but that should not impact the business.

This model is simple enough for a single virtualization host, but what happens in the case of a virtualization cluster? Here *resource pools* are used. The name is an accurate description of its function: a pool of resources. Resource pools can be applied on a single virtualization host, or across multiple hosts in a cluster, and they aggregate the CPU cycles and memory to be shared out among the virtual machines, groups of virtual machines, or other entities such as departments. Resource pools can be further subdivided into smaller child resource pools, enabling an administrator more granular control of the resource allocation. The options for managing a resource pool are similar to the individual virtual machine settings and involve defining resource shares, reservations, and limits. The difference is that you then assign multiple virtual machines to each of these pools, and that resource pool can span one or more virtualization hosts. Again, a critical application composed of multiple virtual machines, spread across more than one virtualization host, can be assured that enough resources will always be available for its needs. Figure 14.2 shows a simple example of two resource pools on a cluster. Each is allocated a portion of the aggregate resources with some extra capacity put aside for growth and short-term performance spikes. Because changes can be done dynamically, there is no performance impact when resource pools need to be adjusted.

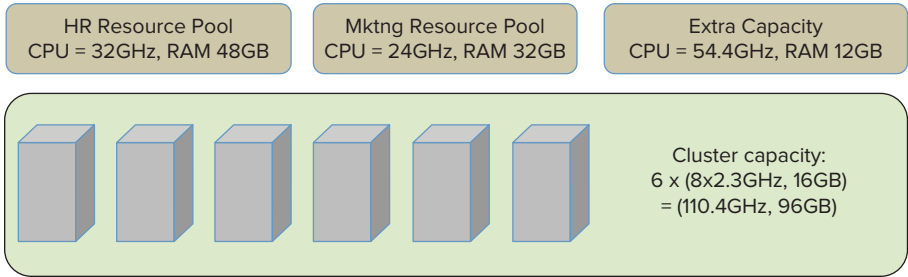


FIGURE 14.2 Resource pools

Another feature that aids good application performance in a virtual environment is live migration. If an application in a physical server runs out of resources, the application needs to be taken offline to add additional resources to the server, or to replace it entirely with a larger machine. You saw earlier that virtual machines are more nimble because in the same circumstance adding resources would require minimal downtime, if any, depending on the operating

system hot-add capability. But what happens in a virtualization server where most of the physical resources are already being consumed by the multiple virtual machines being hosted, and more resources are being demanded by a VM? In this case, one or more virtual machines can be live migrated to other virtualization hosts in the cluster, freeing up resources for the hungry virtual machine. When the resource demand has been satisfied, and the overall requirement on the virtualization host recedes to previous levels, virtual machines can be migrated back. Obviously, resources need to be available on the other hosts in order to migrate the guests there. If there are no more available resources in the cluster, it is time to add more hosts to the cluster. Does this mean a virtualization infrastructure administrator needs to constantly monitor the performance characteristics of the cluster in order to actively migrate virtual machines? Fortunately, that level of involvement is not necessarily required. Virtual infrastructure solutions have automated load-balancing capabilities as part of the architecture. When, from a resource-utilization standpoint, a cluster becomes unbalanced, virtual machines can automatically be migrated from one virtualization host to another, providing an optimal and even utilization of the available resources.

This is a simple description of a sophisticated performance load-balancing mechanism. There are levels of automation that can be configured allowing administrators to oversee the process or permitting a fully automated migration strategy. Complex application rules, such as *VM-affinity*, can be applied that guarantee certain virtual machines always run together on the same physical server, ensuring that if one virtual machine is migrated, the other goes with it. One reason for this might be the two virtual machines are constantly exchanging high amounts of data. On the same virtualization host, that traffic occurs at high speed on the virtual network, rather than having to traverse a slower physical wire between physical hosts. The converse, *anti-affinity*, can be configured as well, guaranteeing that if necessary, two selected virtual machines won't ever be permitted to be guests on the same virtualization host. This case might be used where a critical application service provided by redundant virtual machines would still be available in the event of a virtualization host failure. In Chapter 13, "Understanding Availability," you learned about storage migration. Like live migration, storage migration can also be automated, allowing virtual infrastructures to communicate with storage arrays to automatically resolve disk performance issues without needing a storage administrator to discover, diagnose, and resolve the issue.

Though you saw mention of them earlier, it is worth a brief second look at two other features. In Chapter 9, "Managing Storage for a Virtual Machine," one of

the tuning features discussed was Storage I/O Control, a quality of service capability that can moderate storage throughput on a per virtual machine basis. By assigning higher priorities to the virtual machines of a critical application, you can ensure that disk I/O contention will not be a bottleneck for that application. That is, of course, assuming that there are enough physical resources to accommodate the need. Priorities are administered with shares and limits as you saw with the resource pools. Similarly, in Chapter 10, “Managing Networking for a Virtual Machine,” you learned that there is a capability to prioritize network throughput as well. Also administered with shares and limits, Network I/O control can be applied to traffic types, groups of virtual machines, and individual virtual machines. Both of these technologies can ensure good performance for critical applications, even in situations that might otherwise be subject to resource pressure. As a secondary effect, they improve efficiency by reducing the time and effort an application administrator needs to monitor and manage these types of performance issues.

These are not all of the things that can be applied to ensure good performance for applications staged in virtual machines. You have seen before that good configuration and architecture practices in the various infrastructure areas—CPU, memory, network, and storage—all offer similar benefits when translated from physical to virtual systems. The same applies here as well. The use of more and faster disks will provide better response time from storage devices. More bandwidth accommodates less network contention. Virtualization features contribute to greater availability, flexibility, and better performance, but they are not the sole reasons.

Deploying Applications in a Virtual Environment

The best way to be sure that an application performs well is to understand the resource needs of the application, but more importantly, to measure that resource usage regularly. Once you understand the requirements, you can begin to plan for deploying an application in a virtual environment. There are some things that you can always count on. A poorly architected application in a physical environment is not necessarily going to improve when moved to a virtual environment. An application that is starved for resources will perform poorly as well. The best way to be sure an application will perform correctly is to allocate the virtual machine enough resources to prevent contention. Let’s look at a simple example.

Many applications are delivered in a three-tier architecture, as shown in Figure 14.3. The configuration parameters in the figure are merely sample

numbers. There is a database server where the information that drives the application is stored and managed. Usually, this will be Oracle, Microsoft SQL Server, or maybe the open-source solution MySQL. This server is typically the largest one of the three tiers with multiple processors and a large amount of memory for the database to cache information in for rapid response to queries. Database servers are resource hungry for memory, CPU, and especially storage I/O throughput. The next tier is the application server that runs the application code—the business processes that define the application. Often that is a Java-oriented solution, IBM Websphere, Oracle (BEA) WebLogic, or open-source Tomcat. In a Microsoft environment, this might be the .NET framework with C#, but there are many frameworks and many application languages from which to choose. Application servers usually need ample CPU resources, have little if any storage interaction, and have average memory resources. Finally, there is the webserver. Webservers are the interface between users and the application server, presenting the application's face to the world as HTML pages. Some examples of webservers are Microsoft IIS and the open-source Apache HTTP server. Webservers are usually memory dependent because they cache pages for faster response time. Swapping from disk adds latency to the response time and might induce users to reload the page.

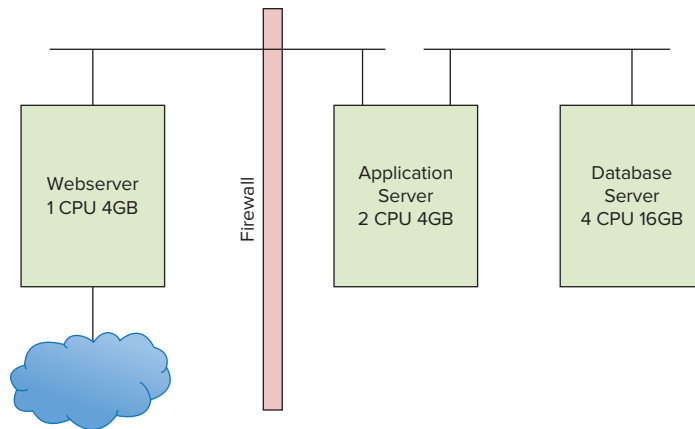


FIGURE 14.3 Three-tier architecture—physical

When you visit a website, the webserver presents you with the HTML pages to interact. As you select functions on the page, perhaps updating your account information or adding items to a shopping cart, the information is passed to the application server that performs the processing. Information that is needed to populate the web pages, such as your contact information or the current inventory status on items you are looking to purchase, is requested from the database

server. When the request is satisfied, the information is sent back through the application server, packaged in HTML, and presented to you as a webpage. In a physical environment, the division of labor and the division of resources is very definite since each tier has its own server hardware and resources to utilize. The virtual environment is different.

Figure 14.4 shows one possible architecture for this model. Here, all of the tiers live on the same virtual host. In practice, that is probably not the case, but for a small site it is definitely possible. The first consideration is that the virtualization host now needs to be configured with enough CPU and memory for the entire application, and each virtual machine needs to have enough resources carved out of that host configuration to perform adequately. The virtual machine resource parameters discussed earlier—shares, limits, and reservations—can all be used to refine the resource sharing. Note that while in the physical model, all of the network communications occurred on the network wire; here, it all takes place at machine speeds across the virtual network in the virtualization host. Here also, the firewall separating the webserver in the DMZ from the application server can be part of the virtual network. Even though the application server and the database server are physically in the same host as the webserver, they are protected from external threats because access to them would need to breach the firewall, the same as in a physical environment. Because they do not have direct access to an external network, through the firewall is the only way they can be reached.

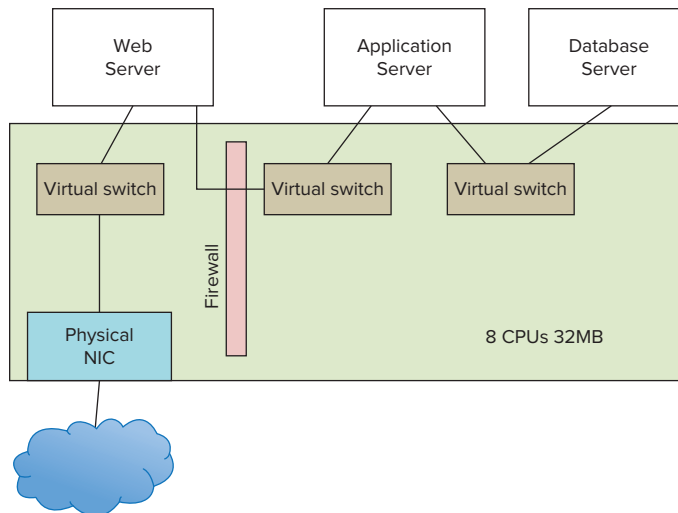


FIGURE 14.4 Three-tier architecture—virtual

As the application performance requirements change, the model can easily adjust. Applications that need to support many users run multiple copies of the webserver and the application server tiers. In a physical deployment, it would not be unusual to have dozens of blade servers supporting this type of application. Load balancers are placed between the tiers to equalize traffic flow and redirect it in the event of a webserver or application server failure. In a virtual environment, the same can be true when deploying load balancers as virtual machines. One large difference is that as new webservers or application servers are needed to handle an increasing load, in a virtual environment, new virtual machines can be quickly cloned from an existing template, deployed in the environment, and used immediately. When there are numerous cloned virtual machines on a host running the same application on the same operating system, page sharing is a huge asset for conserving memory resources. When resource contention occurs in a virtualization cluster, virtual machines can be automatically migrated, assuring best use of all of the physical resources. Live migration also removes the necessity of taking down the application for physical maintenance. Finally, in the event of a server failure, additional copies of the webserver and application server on other virtualization hosts keep the application available, and high availability will restore the downed virtual machines somewhere else in the cluster.

With all of the different layers and possible contention points, how do you know what is happening in an application? There are tools that will monitor the activity in a system and log the information so it will be available for later analysis and historical comparison. This information can be used to detect growth trends for capacity modeling exercises, allowing the timely purchase of additional hardware, and prevent a sudden lack of resources. Virtualization vendors supply basic performance management and trending tools as part of their default management suite. Additional functionality is offered as add-on solutions for purchase. There is also a healthy third-party market of tools that supports multiple hypervisor solutions. As always, there are many tools developed as shareware or freeware and easily available as a download. All of these can be viable options, depending on your particular use case. The point is that measuring performance, and understanding how an application is functioning in any environment, should be a mandatory part of an organization's ongoing application management process.

1. For a quick look at observing performance in a virtual machine, power on the Linux virtual machine you created in Chapter 6, "Installing Linux on a Virtual Machine."

2. Log in to the virtual machine.
3. Open a browser and navigate to the website <http://dacapobench.org/>. DaCapo is a benchmark suite that you will use to generate load on the Linux virtual machine.
4. Select the Download link on the left side of the page. Download the `decapo-jar` file. When the Download window appears, as shown in Figure 14.5, choose **Save File** and select **OK**. The download is large (~160 MB) and will take a few minutes, depending on your network connection. Close both the Download window and the browser when it completes.

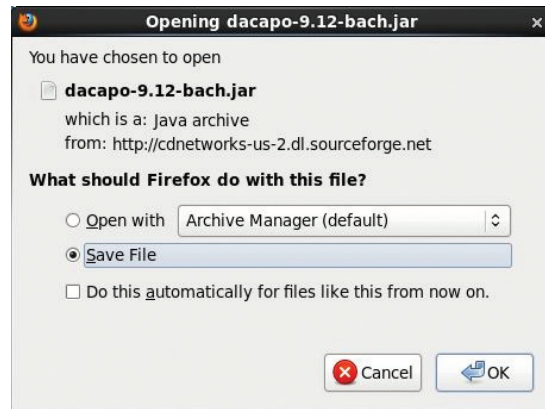


FIGURE 14.5 Saving the `jar` file

5. Open a Terminal window, which you can find beneath the Applications > System Tools menu. Navigate to the directory where you downloaded the `jar` (Java Archive) file. The default download directory is the Downloads directory and it is located at `/home/<user>/Downloads`.
6. Execute the benchmark by entering `java -jar decapo-9.12-bach.jar h2`. This is an in-memory benchmark test that will stress the virtual machine. It will run through the benchmark test and finish by displaying metrics about the test, as shown in Figure 14.6.

```

essentials@essentials:~/Downloads
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
[essentials@essentials ~]$ cd /home/essentials/Downloads
[essentials@essentials Downloads]$ ls
dacapo-9.12-bach.jar  VMwareTools-8.8.0-471268.tar.gz
[essentials@essentials Downloads]$ java -jar dacapo-9.12-bach.jar h2
Using scaled threading model. 1 processors detected, 1 threads used to drive the
workload, in a possible range of [1,4000]
===== DaCapo 9.12 h2 starting =====
....
Completed 4000 transactions
    Stock level .....      155 ( 3.9%)
    Order status by name .... 108 ( 2.7%)
    Order status by ID .....   65 ( 1.6%)
    Payment by name .....    1050 (26.2%)
    Payment by ID .....      661 (16.5%)
    Delivery schedule .....   167 ( 4.2%)
    New order .....         1774 (44.4%)
    New order rollback .....   20 ( 0.5%)
Resetting database to initial state
===== DaCapo 9.12 h2 PASSED in 12217 msec =====

```

FIGURE 14.6 Executing the benchmark test

7. You might be underwhelmed by that last step because there is not that much to see. Monitoring the resources of the virtual machine will show how the benchmark application affects the system. Open the System Monitor, which is located on the Applications > System Tools menu. Select the Resources tab, as shown on Figure 14.7.
8. The screen displays the last 60 seconds of activity for CPU utilization, memory and swap usage, and network I/O. Because the benchmark is memory based, you should see activity in the first two areas. Move the Terminal window so you can enter commands and see the System Monitor.

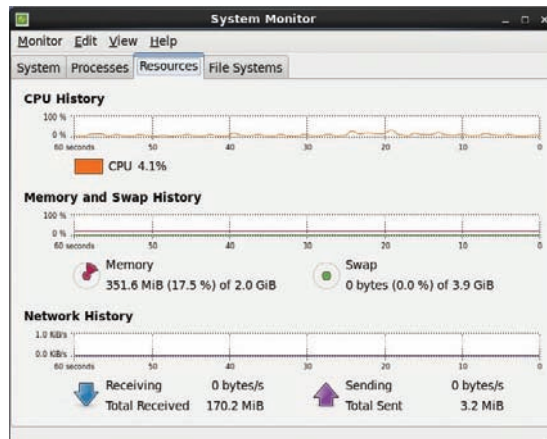


FIGURE 14.7 The System Monitor

9. Re-execute the benchmark test and watch the effect. As illustrated in Figure 14.8, you can see an instant rise in CPU utilization spiking to the 100 percent mark where it remains for the duration of the test. Although memory rises, it never goes above 50 percent utilization, so it seems the 2 GB of memory allocated for this virtual machine is more than adequate. Swapping and network I/O are not affected.

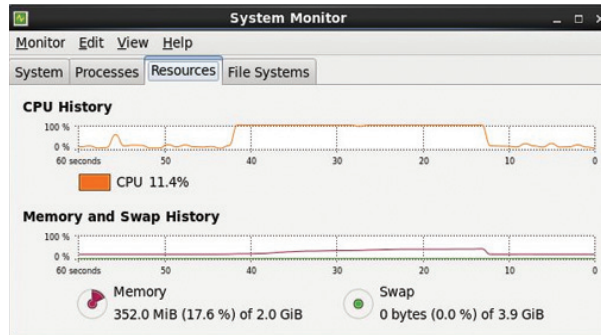


FIGURE 14.8 Benchmark effects

10. This is only half the picture—the view from inside of the virtual machine and the resources that have been allocated to it. The next step is to examine how this activity affects the virtualization host. Resize the Virtual Machine window on your desktop so you have space for another window.
11. Click the Windows Start button, and in the Search Programs And Files window, type **perf**. On the top of the windows is one program, Performance Monitor. Double-click the program to open it. Position it so you can see both the Performance Monitor and virtual machine, as shown in Figure 14.9.
12. In the Performance Monitor, open the Monitoring Tools folder and highlight the Performance Monitor icon. The default display is the CPU performance, and you can observe the CPU utilization. You can clear the Monitor window by right-clicking on the performance chart and selecting Clear from the menu.

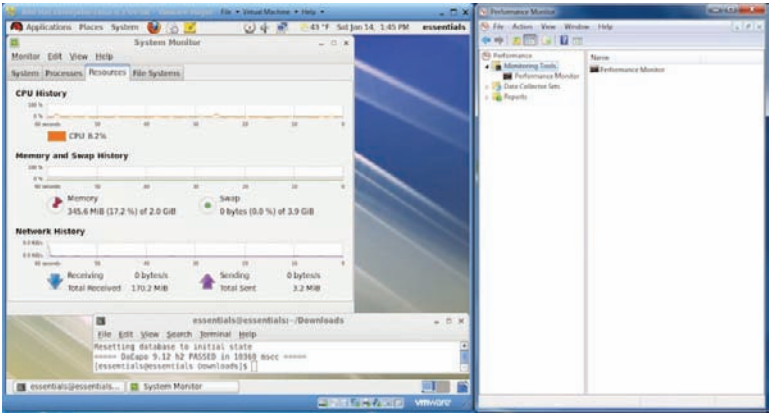


FIGURE 14.9 Examining the virtualization host

13. In the Linux virtual machine, restart the benchmark test. In the Linux System Monitor, everything occurs as it did in previous iterations. The CPU activity spikes to 100 percent for the duration of the test. In the Performance Monitor, as shown in Figure 14.10, the CPU utilization spikes as well, but far short of the top. In an actual application environment, this might indicate that you need to add one or more vCPUs to the virtual machine for improved performance.

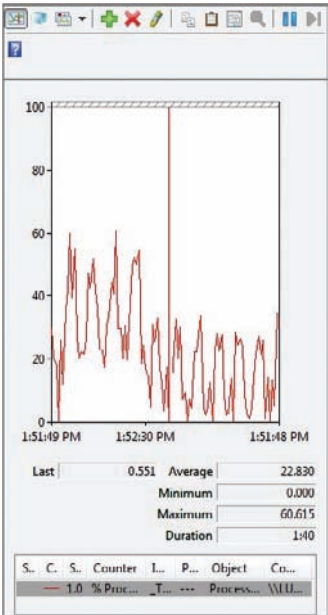


FIGURE 14.10 Performance monitor on the host

These are obviously simple tools and simple tests but even in large multi-tier and multiple-system application deployments, the same principles apply. In a virtual environment, performance measurements need to be done from inside the virtual machine to understand where resources are constrained and affecting application performance. Measurements also need to be done on the virtualization host and at the overall cluster layer to have a full picture of the performance environment. Many organizations undergo constant performance monitoring of their critical applications, allowing them to regularly review how their environment is behaving. With this information, they can be proactive about preventing resource constraints, instead of waiting for issues to occur and managing them in the midst of application problems.

Understanding Virtual Appliances and vApps

The three-tier application discussed earlier was probably created by a number of people in the IT department, although in smaller shops one person can wear all of the hats. A virtualization administrator created the original virtual machines and configured them according to some basic parameters. An operating system engineer provisioned the operating systems on each one and then updated it with the latest patches. Any corporate standard tools were added at this time. The application developer or specialist then installed and configured the application components—webserver, application server, application code, and database. Integration tests were run to validate and stress the virtual machines as an application unit. Once all the testing was complete and any resulting changes had been applied, they were converted into templates, the gold images to produce the production virtual machines. You learned earlier that virtual machines can speed this provisioning procedure by orders of magnitude, but it is still a transfer of the physical server provisioning process to a virtual infrastructure without fundamental operational changes. Virtual appliances change this model.

Virtual appliances are prebuilt virtual machines that already contain everything needed to deploy an application. Often the operating system is an open-source deployment or a specially developed thin OS, also called JeOS (pronounced “juice,” for Just Enough Operating System) that only has what the application requires and no more. Because of this, virtual appliances require none of the traditional patching and maintenance of a traditional operating-system-based system. When a new version is available, the entire virtual

machine is replaced, minimizing the time needed to deploy a new release. The installation in many cases consists of a download, unpacking the virtual machine on a virtualization host, powering it on, and performing some minimal configuration steps to connect it to the desired network and storage. Virtual appliances are often delivered in OVF format so they can be quickly deployed on any hypervisor solution.

WHERE CAN YOU GET A VIRTUAL APPLIANCE?

Software application providers are beginning to offer their solutions as virtual appliances. It makes the acquisition and deployment of the solution much simpler than traditional methods. There are repositories of virtual appliances available at:

VMware

<http://www.vmware.com/appliances/directory/>

JumpBox

<http://www.jumpbox.com/library>

Microsoft

<http://www.microsoft.com/en-us/server-cloud/datacenter/virtualization-trial.aspx>

Oracle

<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/community/developer-vm/index.html?ssSourceSiteId=ocomen>

They are also available from thousands of other software providers that an Internet search will return. Some, as in the case of Oracle, are only in a proprietary format, while many others are offered as OVFs. As anti-virus and security models change in the virtual environment, vendors such as Trend Micro are offering their solutions as virtual appliances. There is also a profusion of open-source tools now being offered as virtual appliances. Some examples of these are StressLinux (<http://www.stresslinux.org/>) and Apache CouchDB (<http://wiki.apache.org/couchdb/FrontPage>).

The next step is to package one or more virtual machines that comprise an application into a container. This container, called a *vApp*, might contain the three virtual machines described earlier that made up the three-tier application. Like a virtual appliance, a vApp is stored in the OVF format making it easily transportable. A vApp also packages information about the application's networking, availability, and security requirements. Think of a shipping container on a cargo transport ship. When the ship docks, thousands of these containers are offloaded and sent in a thousand different directions quickly and efficiently. Dockyard workers use technology to read the bar codes on each container, which can supply all the inventory, customs, ownership, and routing information. vApps have all of the deployment information as part of their container. When deployed in a virtual environment, a vApp packaged application can be provisioned in the cluster and provide the desired level of availability, security, and the proper network configuration, all without an administrator's assistance or intervention.

This functionality (the ability to rapidly clone, deploy, and move applications while maintaining service levels around application availability, scalability, security, and manageability) is at the heart of the promise of cloud computing. Delivering new services more rapidly and more efficiently, and providing them in a secure, scalable, and highly available manner, will fuel this next evolution of computing. It will not be long before new cloud computing models provide entire datacenters with the same capabilities you have seen for virtual machines. The foundation of this new model is virtualization.

THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

The benefits of virtualization encompass many parts of the datacenter, but the largest recipients are the applications that run in virtual machines. Critical applications need to be in a secure and available environment, or a company can be put at risk. Features such as live migration, rapid provisioning through the use of templates, and high availability all provide applications with that flexible infrastructure and many new advantages they could not leverage as physical deployments. Application performance in a virtual machine is the most common reason for application owners to hesitate about adopting virtual deployments. Proper configuration through the use of monitoring tools can ensure performance that equals or exceeds a physical deployment. Applications can be delivered as preloaded virtual appliances, reducing costs and deployment times even further. As cloud computing continues to expand, applications will be deployed in virtual datacenters and resource pools will be carved out of large physical infrastructures. These new models will support the services we consume, and virtualization is the technology that supports it all.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

- ▶ Download a virtual appliance from one of the repositories and power it on. Was it an easier process than what you did earlier when you created a virtual machine and installed the operating system? For a simple appliance, you might try one of the many MySQL appliances available. This will provide not just the virtual machine and operating system, but an application as well.
- ▶ Add a second processor to the Linux virtual machine and rerun the DaCapo h2 benchmark. Are there any performance changes? Is CPU utilization still at 100 percent? If so, what does that tell you about the benchmark? CPU was the bottleneck during the single vCPU tests. Has another bottleneck been uncovered? How are resources affected on the physical host?

Answers to Additional Exercises

Chapter 1

- ▶ In the 12 years that have passed since the year 2000, processors speeds have doubled roughly every 18 months, or quadrupled every three years, for an aggregate gain of roughly 1,000 times. If the trend continues, over the next 10 years, they will be roughly another 500 times faster than today's processors.
- ▶ At the present time, there are about two dozen different offerings for server virtualization. Of those, the top three cover 95 percent of the commercial market deployments. Two architectures are being deployed in the mainstream, although a few others exist in niche solutions.
- ▶ There is no actual minimum number of servers where virtualization is viable, although at smaller numbers the return on investment (ROI) will be longer. The replacement savings for every physical server removed from the infrastructure goes directly to a company's bottom line, aside from virtualization investment, for every year thereafter, as well as the environmental savings such as power and data center square footage. Increased flexibility, greater availability, and faster, more agile provisioning capabilities easily outweigh any process changes that are implemented. Even if the initial investment costs outweigh the initial savings, the benefits will continue to pay dividends.

Chapter 2

- ▶ Many Type-2, or hosted, hypervisors are available. A small sample includes VMware Player, VMware Workstation, VMware Fusion, Microsoft Virtual Server, Oracle (Sun's) VirtualBox, and Parallels

Desktop. At a high level, any and all of these do the same thing: they allow a user to run one or more virtual machines on their systems. The differences are where users would choose one over another. Some of the solutions are freeware, so if cost is an issue you might lean toward those. Others, such as VMware Fusion and Parallels Desktop, run on a particular operating system, in this case MacOS. Application developers who are more sophisticated users with complex needs might lean to Virtual Box or Workstation.

- ▶ The bulk of this effort is currently in server virtualization, but various branches appear in smart devices. Cell phones and tablets are capable of running multiple personalities in the form of guests. A mobile device owned by an employee can easily have a second corporate personality loaded onto it. This workspace can be entirely contained and managed by the company. It wouldn't mix with the personal side of the device, so rogue apps could not affect corporate infrastructure. Other devices, such as smart TVs or even cars, could host multiple personalities that could be preloaded but separate from each other to enable custom personalization for the device, but not overlap the various users.
- ▶ Like the first exercise, the answer to this question is usually determined by the core need. The more expensive, fuller-featured solution might provide capabilities that will give the business competitive differentiation, or improve availability that might be critical to the business. Conversely, the business might not require the extra capabilities of that solution, and a less expensive solution would provide all of the necessary functionality. In this case, the business could save some of its budget for another project. Many vendors also offer different editions of their product from bare bones to all the bells and whistles—think economy car versus luxury sedan. Often you can begin at the basic tier and upgrade to include advanced features as the company's needs mature.

Chapter 3

- ▶ There are few remaining reasons not to use virtual machines. The cost savings alone are enough to justify the move from a physical environment to a virtual one. Many of the availability and manageability advantages only add to the move toward virtualization. The few exceptions at this point fall into three main areas. The first are

machines that still cannot be virtualized due to their sheer size and resource requirements. At this writing, VMware can support 32 virtual CPUs in a single virtual machine and up to a terabyte of memory. Both are more than large enough to support more than 99 percent of the physical x86 servers that currently are in use. Second are systems that have physical devices that are part of the server and cannot be virtualized. *Faxboards* are one example of this. Other servers require a physical server because of application licensing requirements that check for certain physical components. Over time, many of these devices and checks are being added to the virtual environment as well. Lastly, some organizations feel that certain minimum server quantity thresholds need to be reached before virtualizing their environments is worth it. There is no correct minimum value that indicates virtualization would be beneficial to an organization. Even organizations with a handful of servers can accrue both operational and capital advantages by moving to a virtual environment.

- ▶ As of this writing, there are dozens of different places to find and download the thousands of virtual appliances that are available. They are not all available in the OVF format, although many are. Some application providers supply their appliances only in a format that is targeted for a specific hypervisor. This might be due to partnerships or alliances they maintain with the virtualization company, or sometimes it is just due to lack of the resources needed to maintain multiple iterations.
- ▶ The requirements for an OVF package are fairly simple. At a minimum, it requires an OVF *descriptor*, which is an XML document that describes the package and its contents. Additional material is optional. That additional material, though, would take the form of the virtual machine files—both the configuration files and the virtual disk files. An OVF package can also contain more than one virtual machine. The package can also be stored or transported as a single file using the TAR format to bundle the package contents.

Chapter 4

- ▶ The minimum value is based on the guest operating system selected and what the operating system vendor recommends. The maximum value is based on the total available physical memory minus the overhead for VMware Player and the operating system. On a 32-bit

host, the maximum amount of memory a single VM can be assigned is 8 GB. On a 64-bit host, the maximum amount of memory a single VM can be assigned is 32 GB.

- ▶ The virtual machine that was created is close to the bare minimum as far as hardware devices go. You could still remove the floppy drive, and perhaps the sound card and printer, without affecting the system. Leaving them in will have little effect. Across many virtual machines, unnecessary hardware device definitions consume memory and storage resources. There are no missing devices. Additional hardware devices will be added in later chapters.
- ▶ The `.vmx` file is a plaintext file that can be examined to determine how a virtual machine is configured outside of the management interface. You can make adjustments to the virtual machine by editing the `.vmx` file and then restarting the virtual machine. This is usually not a preferred method because errors in the `.vmx` file can prevent the virtual machine from booting; it can even cause irreversible damage. There are entries in the file for devices or device parameters that are not active.

Chapter 5

- ▶ There are many solutions to the first part of the question. One possible solution is Microsoft Hyper-V (<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc794868%28WS.10%29.aspx>). As of this writing, it supports 12 versions of Windows operating systems from Windows 2000 Server SP4 through Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1, two versions of CentOS Linux, two versions of SUSE Linux, six versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and five desktop Windows versions from XP through Windows 7 SP1, for a total of 27 different versions of five different operating systems. The answer to the second part of the question would be yes. Supporting older operating systems as virtual machines often allows companies to extend the useful lifetime of applications that are still valuable but either are running on deprecated operating systems or running on hardware that is no longer reliable or repairable.
- ▶ The depth and breadth of what operating systems each virtualization vendor supports varies widely. They all support versions of

Microsoft Windows as well as a wide array of the more popular Linux offerings. Citrix XenServer (http://docs.vmd.citrix.com/XenServer/6.0.0/1.0/en_gb/guest.html#creatingVMs_supported_OS_minimums) supports seven different operating systems, adding the Debian and Ubuntu Linux versions to the Microsoft list. VMware (<http://partnerweb.vmware.com/GOSIG/home.html>) supports 23 *different operating systems* and over a hundred versions of those, including 14 Windows versions beginning at Windows 3.1. If your application operating system support requirements are more diverse, it will definitely impact your choice of virtualization platform.

Chapter 6

- ▶ VMware Player performs an immediate save and restore of the machine state, but a reboot of the operating system does not occur. The System Monitor Utility needs to be closed and reopened for the value to be refreshed, but the memory is added.
- ▶ For ordinary users, there are few daemons that run on behalf of only that unique user. You would probably see some related to the Gnome file system (gvfsd) or some of the other utilities (seahorse-daemon; key manger, notification-daemon; system messages) as well as the vmttoolsd discussed earlier. Connected as root, there are quite a few more visible daemons in addition to those you could see earlier. Because root is the superuser account, all of the system daemon processes are run on its behalf. When ordinary users require these services, the root processes perform for them, but cannot be affected by ordinary users, providing a degree of security.

Chapter 7

- ▶ With four quad-core physical CPUs, you have 16 CPUs as your processing resource. At 18 vCPUs per physical CPU, you could potentially support 288 single vCPU virtual machines. Keeping twenty percent of the resource in reserve would limit that number to 230. Most hosts do not have this many guests and the reason is that CPU is rarely the gating resource. It is usually memory.

- ▶ With 48 core processors, you would have 32 physical CPUs to schedule on. At 18 vCPUs per physical CPU, you could potentially support 576 single vCPU guests. Reserving twenty percent would reduce that number to 460. The 17 new guests reduces that number by 68 leaving you with the ability to support 392 single vCPU virtual machines.

Chapter 8

- ▶ Seven. 4 GB times seven machines plus hypervisor overhead.
- ▶ Ten. Each virtual machine is overcommitted for one-fourth of its allocated total, so it is actually counted for 3 GB. 3 GB times ten machines plus hypervisor overhead.
- ▶ Thirty-eight. Each virtual machine is now only counted for three-fourths of a GB or 768 MB. Three-fourths times thirty-eight virtual machines plus hypervisor overhead.
- ▶ Thirty-five. $(90 \text{ percent of } 31 \text{ GB}) \times 1.25$. Because the virtual machines are all running the same operating system and application, there is a good chance that the memory overcommit ratio is very conservative. Depending on the application makeup and performance characteristics, this may or may not be a realistic example.

Chapter 9

- ▶ With a total of 24 cores, you could dedicate a core to up to 24 virtual machines. With 256 GB of memory, and without taking advantage of memory overcommit, you could deploy up to 32 virtual machines. With a terabyte of disk storage, you can thick provision 10 virtual machines. There would potentially be some disk storage needed for the hypervisor, but it would be negligible enough that you could get to 10 virtual machines. The limiting factor here is the amount of storage available.
- ▶ At 30 GB per virtual machine, you could now provision up to 33 virtual machines, 23 more than the initial deployment. This would be more than your memory model would support, but with page sharing, you could easily meet this mark. Thirty-three virtual machines would also exceed your 24 processors. You would need additional

information about how the CPU resources are being utilized before you could make a decision about adding more than 14 virtual machines. You might not want to add many more virtual machines to your host for a number of reasons. As a single host, a potential failure would cause a severe outage of your service. You would probably spend some time getting used to the virtual environment and investigate strategies that would increase availability. Also, you would want to be sure that your physical host could handle all of the demands that were made on it throughout a variety of conditions over a reasonable period of time. If you ran out of resources—CPU or memory, for example—contention would occur and cause performance issues and customer dissatisfaction. On a single host, there is a finite amount of resources to go around, so you'd want to be sure it was always enough.

Chapter 10

- ▶ Using the Edit Virtual Machine Settings, add a second network adapter and choose the Bridged option. Reboot the virtual machine. Windows will add the device on the reboot. Open a command-line window via `cmd.exe` and run `ipconfig`. There should now be two Ethernet adapter connections, each with its own IP address.

Chapter 11

- ▶ The `.vmx` file is guest operating system, independent so the entries are virtually identical. Any differences would be the result of differing virtual hardware configurations. If the steps are executed correctly, the Linux virtual machine should also power on successfully.
- ▶ The UUID entries of the original and the clone virtual machines should be different. The UUID of the clone was altered when the power-on message asking if the virtual machine might have been moved or copied was answered with “I copied it.” If the question was answered with “I moved it,” or the cloned virtual machine has not yet been powered on, then the UUIDs would still be identical.
- ▶ Anything that other systems or applications use to identify a virtual machine would need to be changed. These include, but are not

exclusive to, the system name, any IP addresses that are associated with the network connections, and any hard-coded system or network address references in user application code. Network directory tables (DNS) would need to have the new virtual machine added so network requests would be routed to the new system.

Chapter 12

- ▶ The short answer is that the virtual machine hardware limits how many of each device you can add to the virtual machine's configuration. In some ways, this mirrors a physical server's limitations due to the limited number of slots available for PC interface cards. In the case of the USB device, it will probably never be an issue because you can connect up to 127 USB devices through one port. This, obviously, may not be a realistic case, but it is possible. In the case of the printer, most modern printers can connect via the Ethernet network or the USB port as well.
- ▶ USB devices are very simple to connect and disconnect from both physical and virtual machines. They are architected through the USB standard to be able to move from different operating systems as well, without undergoing any reformatting. It should be a simple process to move a file from the host operating system to a USB device, attach that device to the guest operating system, and move the file onto the guest file system. VMware Player has an advanced feature that actually circumvents this procedure by setting up a shared directory between the host and the guest operating systems. Files placed in the shared directory are visible and accessible to both. You can configure this by enabling Shared Folders under the Options tab of the Virtual Machine Settings.

Chapter 13

- ▶ This type of outage requires a change of venue since the local resources are unavailable. Your recommendation would be to implement a disaster-recovery solution and include the application workloads that are critical to the company's operations.

- ▶ Because any downtime would be critical, fault tolerance would be the preferred choice. Depending on other factors, including a disaster recovery option might also be applicable.
- ▶ A virtual environment is no less available than a physical environment. If this is indeed a critical application, an HA solution might already be in place. This solution could be run in the virtual environment as well. Other options are available to smooth the transition, bridging from a physical to a virtual machine that would be less expensive than having two physical servers. If there is no HA solution in place, you could offer one, or even provide fault tolerance if the application is indeed critical. Since individual virtual machines cannot affect the physical server, sharing the virtualization host would not affect availability.

Chapter 14

- ▶ The Turnkey Linux MySQL virtual appliance is available at <http://www.turnkeylinux.org/mysql>. They have many virtual appliances with different development stacks already preloaded and preconfigured for use. The Ubuntu Linux-based virtual machine can be downloaded (~210 MB and 4 minutes) and unpacked in a new virtual machine directory. Navigate down to the directory with the `.vmdk` and `.vmx` files. Right-click on the `.vmx` file and choose to Open With VMware Player. The virtual machine begins to boot. It prompts for a root operating system password and a MySQL password. You can choose to skip the offer for Hub Services. Install the security updates. You might want to write down or capture the MySQL Appliance Services window. I entered the Advanced menu and then Quit. At the Linux login prompt (`mysql login:`), you can log in as root. At the root prompt (`root@mysql ~#`), you can connect to mysql with `mysql -u root -h 10.0.0.19 -p`, as shown in the Services window during setup. Enter the password when prompted. You can see the database is running by a simple status command or show databases; (note the semi-colon at the end). To exit, enter `exit`. This process is much simpler and faster than the process you executed to create virtual machines.

- ▶ The benchmark shows that a second thread will be used to execute the test. Watching the Linux System Monitor shows that while the vCPU utilization does spike up to 100 percent; it doesn't remain there. A third vCPU might be warranted, or not if the performance is now acceptable. Memory is being used at the same rate and networking is still unaffected with this test, so there are no new bottlenecks affecting performance. (On the physical host, CPU spikes are observed to reach almost 80 percent in my system, but there is still capacity available if necessary.)

GLOSSARY

ballooning

A process that allows the hypervisor to reclaim physical memory pages by forcing the virtual machine operating system to flush memory pages to disk.

bandwidth

A measure of network performance defined by the amount of data that can travel through the network over a period of time. Typically given in bits per seconds.

bare-metal

A computer server without any operating system software installed.

BCDR

Business Continuity and Disaster Recovery. An availability topic area that covers how businesses can protect their business-critical processing from disasters, natural and man-made, that would otherwise destroy or significantly interrupt service from the datacenter.

bridged network

A connection type that allows a virtual machine adapter to have a direct connection to the physical network with a unique IP address.

CIFS

Common Internet File System is similar to NFS but focused on Microsoft Windows environments.

clone

An exact copy of a virtual machine. Once cloned, the new virtual machine still needs final customization to ensure a unique identity.

CNA

Converged Network Adapter. A single network adapter that supports multiple network-protocol types, usually at much greater bandwidths than older NICs.

compression

A memory optimization technique that compresses memory pages and stores them in a designated cache in physical memory, rather than swap them from memory to disk storage.

consolidation

The practice of condensing multiple physical servers into one server through the use of virtualization.

consolidation ratio

A measure of consolidation calculated by counting the number of virtual machines on an individual server.

containment

The practice of deploying new applications on virtual machines, rather than buying, provisioning, and deploying new physical server hardware.

core

Microprocessors come in packages that contain one or more processing units. Each individual processing unit is a core.

CPU

Central Processing Unit. The core or brain of a computer where the user and system commands are executed. Today's computers use microprocessor technology, and the term *processor* is often used interchangeably with CPU.

Daemon

A UNIX or Linux program that runs as a background process. Daemons typically perform certain system tasks such as `cron` (`crond`), the system scheduler, or managing the ftp capabilities (`ftpd`).

DAS

Direct Attached Storage. The disk drives that are internal to a physical computer.

data center

A large computer room, an entire floor in a building, or a separate building outfitted and dedicated to the health and well-being of a company's computing infrastructure.

deduplication

A storage technology that compresses data and reclaims disk storage space by removing duplicate copies of information. Only one copy is retained and pointers to that copy replace the additional duplicates. Deduplication can be done on a byte, block, or file level.

DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol is a widely used standard that allows servers to assign IP addresses to computers and other devices on a network.

DMZ

A network area outside of a company's firewall that connects to the Internet. Few resources are kept there, typically web servers, and they are hardened against malicious attack, keep little information of value, and connect to the protected network through a firewall.

Fibre-Channel

An industry standard protocol defined for connecting Storage Area Networks to computers.

FT

Fault Tolerance. Hardware and/or software solutions and implementations that allow a server to lose one or more components to a failure without data loss or service interruption.

guest

A virtual machine, or VM. Called a guest because it runs on a host server.

HA

High Availability. Hardware and/or software solutions and implementations that provide greater uptime and resiliency for a computing infrastructure.

HBA

Host Bus Adapter. Also called a host adapter, it is a hardware device that connects a computer to either a network or a storage network. Originally associated with Fibre-Channel connectivity.

HID

Human Interface Device is a broad definition for a class of computer peripheral devices that either receive or deliver information to humans. Examples of these would be, but are not limited to, mice, touchpads, and joysticks. Newer candidates are Wii remotes and Kinect for Xbox.

Hyper-threading

An Intel microprocessor technology that improves performance by making more efficient use of the processing scheduling—effectively scheduling two threads of work where there was only one in the past.

hypervisor

Originally called a Virtual Machine Manager, it is a layer of software that is installed either between an operating system and the virtual machines or directly onto the hardware, or “bare-metal,” and provides the environment in which the virtual machines operate.

IP address

Internet Protocol address. The unique 32-bit number that identifies a computer or other device on a network. Traditional notation breaks the 32 bits into four 8-bit, or 1-byte, segments. Each byte is converted to a decimal number and the four are separated by periods—e.g., 192.168.000.001.

iSCSI

Internet Small Computer System Interface is the industry standard that defines how storage devices connect and transfer data to computers by sending the SCSI commands over Ethernet networks.

ISO image

A data file in an industry standard format that contains the exact image of an optical disc, like a CD or a DVD. They are used in this context to contain operating system or application files, usually for installation.

Linux

An open-source operating system that is a UNIX derivative. Usually available for low or no cost, Linux runs on a wide variety of hardware, including mainframe computers, servers, desktops, mobile devices, and other commercial appliances such as cable/satellite boxes, and video game consoles.

load balancer

A hardware or software appliance that balances traffic from multiple sources, preventing one pathway from being overloaded. Load balancers can also redirect traffic in the event of a pathway failure.

memory overcommit

The ability of a hypervisor to allocate more virtual memory to its virtual machines than the amount of physical memory in the host it resides on through the use of memory management optimizations.

modem

A device that turns digital signals into analog signals and back again. A modem allows a user on one computer to connect and share data with a second computer by using a telephone line as the transfer medium. The base technology has evolved and is still in wide use today.

multicore

A microprocessor that contains more than one processing unit.

multipathing

Having more than one path available from data storage to a server by having multiple I/O controllers, network switches, and NIC cards.

NAS

Network Attached Storage is usually disk storage that is connected to one or more computers across a network by a file-based protocol, such as CIFS or NFS. As a file-based system, network attached storage has file systems created and managed external to the computer systems it supports.

NAT

Network Address Translation. A connection type that allows a virtual machine to share an IP address on the physical network with other virtual machines. Each virtual machine has a unique local address that is translated to the shared address for outbound traffic, and back again for inbound traffic for proper data delivery.

network switch

A device that connects computers, printers, file servers, and other devices, allowing them to communicate efficiently with each other. In some ways, switches create and define the networks that they manage.

NFS

Network File System is an open industry protocol standard that is typically used for computers to access Network Attached Storage systems.

NIC

Network interface card. A device that allows a computer to connect to a network. Also called a network adapter.

NTP

Network Time Protocol is an open standard that defines and implements a computer's ability to synchronize with Internet time servers, or with other servers.

OVF

Open Virtualization Format. A platform-independent industry standard that defines a format for the packaging and distribution of virtual machines.

P2V

Shorthand for Physical to Virtual. The manual or automated process that transfers the data on a physical server into a virtual machine. The data includes the operating system, applications files, and all data files.

page sharing

A memory optimization technique in which identical pages in memory are stored only as a single copy and shared between multiple virtual machines. Also works for identical pages in one virtual machine. Similar to disk storage deduplication.

paging

The process that computers use to copy blocks, or pages, of data from disk to memory and back again.

resource pool

An aggregation of resources that permits a virtualization administrator to allocate resources to virtual machines, groups of virtual machines, or groups of people.

RHEL

Shorthand for Red Hat Enterprise Linux. Red Hat is one of the leading providers of Linux distribution, and it makes its profit from support rather than license sales. Enterprise Linux is one edition of its offerings.

SAN

Storage Area Network. A combination of networking resources and disk arrays that provides data storage for computers. Multiple computers will access the SAN, which is external to the physical (or virtual) servers.

SCSI

Small Computer System Interface is the industry standard that defines how storage devices connect and transfer data to computers.

SMP virtualization

Symmetric Multiprocessing. A computer architecture that provides enhanced performance through the concurrent use of multiple processors and shared memory.

snapshot

A snapshot is a set of files that preserve the state of a virtual machine at a given point in time so you can repeatedly revert back to that given state. A virtual machine can have multiple snapshots.

template

A virtual machine that is used as a mold for a commonly used configuration. Once deployed from a template, the virtual machine still needs final customization, such as a system name and network information.

USB

Universal Service Bus, or USB, is an industry standard for connecting external devices to a computer. The standard defines the physical connections as well as the capabilities for the disparate devices it can support. In addition to data transfer, USB devices can draw electricity from the computer they are connected to for operational power or, in the case of mobile devices, to recharge their internal batteries.

vCPU

A virtual CPU. The virtual representation of a computer processor.

VM-affinity (and anti-affinity)

Rules that link together two or more virtual machines so they reside on the same

virtualization host. Anti-affinity rules ensure that two machines do not reside on the same virtualization host. Live migration, automatic and manual, as well as high-availability recovery, will respect these rules.

VMware Tools

A combination of device drivers and processes that enhance the user's experience with the virtual machine, improve virtual machine performance, and help manage the virtual machine. VMware tools is specific to VMware, but other virtualization vendors provide similar suites.

virtualization

The process by which physical servers are abstracted into software constructs

that, from their user's standpoint, appear and behave identically to their physical counterparts.

virtual machine, or VM

A container that runs a guest operating system and applications in a software abstraction of a physical server. A powered-off virtual machine is merely a set of files that comprise and describe the virtual hardware and the data that make up the virtual machine.

INDEX

Note to the reader: Throughout this index **boldfaced** page numbers indicate primary discussions of a topic. *Italicized* page numbers indicate illustrations.

A

- abstraction
 - hardware, 1, 2, 14, 15, 24–25, 25, 33, 43–44, 239
 - memory, 137, 138
 - storage resources, 41, 122, 151, 153, 154, 155
- Add Hardware Wizard, 157–160, 158, 159, 160
- affinity, VM, 247
- agile provisioning, 261
- AIX, IBM, 13, 27, 97
- Amazon, 5, 14, 152, 172, 228
- Amazon EC2, 241
- AMD platform, 134. *See also* Intel
- answers to exercises, 261–270
- anti-affinity, 247
- antivirus software
 - NAT networks, 187
 - virtual appliances, 16, 232, 257
 - websites, 231
- Apache CouchDB, 257
- Apache HTTP server, 249
- Apple
 - iCloud, 14, 152
 - iPads, 137, 138
 - iTunes store, 228
- application maintenance, bottle-necks, 202
- applications in VM, 243–259
 - defined, 243, 244
 - deploying, 248–256
 - exercises, 259, 269–270
 - limit setting, 244–245
 - live migration, 246–247
 - performance capabilities, 243–248
 - reasons for virtualization, 17
 - reservations setting, 244–245
 - resource pools, 246, 246
 - shares setting, 244–245
 - three-tier architecture, 248–251, 249, 250
 - tier-one, 12, 13

- architecture
 - “Formal Requirements for Virtualizable Third Generation Architectures” (Popek & Goldberg), 2
 - Hyper-V, 31, 31–32
 - hypervisor, 21, 21
 - three-tier, applications, 248–251, 249, 250
 - VMware ESX, 28, 28–29
 - x86, 43
 - Xen, 29–30, 30
- archive
 - Linux Archive Manager, 115, 116
 - VM network options, 181, 181–182
- ATM outage, 228, 229
- AutoPlay screen, 85, 85, 162
- availability, 227–241
 - cloud computing, 240–241
 - disaster recovery, 13
 - exercises, 241, 268–269
 - fault tolerance, 29, 234, 235–236, 269
 - HA, 29, 234–235, 236, 238, 241, 251, 258, 269
 - increasing need, 227–230
 - information age, 227–228, 241
 - multiple virtual machines, 234–238
 - telephone service, 228
 - virtual clustering, 234–235
 - virtual machine protection, 227, 230–234
 - virtualization *v.*, 13

B

- ballooning, memory, 29, 144–145, 145, 147, 148, 149
- bandwidth contention, 166, 188, 248
- bare-metal hypervisor, 9, 22, 30, 32
- BEA, 48, 249

- Bell Laboratories, 3
- benchmark suite, DaCapo, 252–255, 259
- blocks, memory, 139
- Bluetooth, 219, 220
- bottlenecks
 - application maintenance, 202
 - CPU, 55, 125, 129
 - disk I/O contention, 248
 - vCPU, 259, 270
- bridged networks, 180, 184, 184, 186, 189, 267
- BSD jails, 27
- byte sizes, 5
 - exabytes, 5, 152
 - petabytes, 5, 5, 168
 - terabytes, 5, 168, 263, 266
 - zettabytes, 152

C

- cache, 139
- CD/DVD drive configuration, 214–215
- child disks, 47, 203–204, 206, 208
- chips
 - Single-Chip Cloud Computer, 127
 - x86 chipset, 134
- CIO surveys, 229
- circulatory system analogy, 171
- Cisco, 36, 47, 55, 188, 189
- Citrix, 231. *See also* Xen
 - Application Streaming, 17
 - Tools for Virtual Machines, 213
- Clone Virtual Machine Wizard, 199, 199–201, 200, 201
- cloning, 191–197. *See also* snapshots; templates
 - cold, 53
 - full, 200
 - hot, 53–54
 - linked, 200
 - P2V process *v.*, 52–53

- cloning (*continued*)
 - snapshots *v.*, 202
 - understanding, 44–46
 - cloud computing
 - applications, 243, 258
 - availability, 240–241
 - EC2, 241
 - iCloud, 14, 152
 - long-distance VMotion, 240–241
 - P2C process, 52
 - Single-Chip Cloud Computer, 127
 - vApps, 258
 - virtualization *v.*, 14, 17, 33
 - Cluster Server, Symantec, 234
 - Cluster Shared Volumes (CSV), 155
 - clustering, 234–235
 - live migration, 134
 - Oracle Real Applications Clusters, 234
 - resource pools, 246, 246
 - shared storage, 155, 156, 234–235
 - CNAs, 188
 - cold cloning, 53
 - commercially affordable hypervisor, 21
 - Commodore 64, 138
 - compression
 - memory, 147, 148
 - storage space, 165
 - computers
 - ENIAC, 126
 - Single-Chip Cloud Computer, 127
 - Strauss Computer study, 229
 - configuration file, VM, 35–36, 193, 263
 - configuration options
 - CD/DVD drive, 214–215
 - floppy disk drive, 215–217
 - Linux on VM, 117–122
 - parallel port devices, 222–225
 - serial port devices, 222
 - sound card, 218
 - USB devices, 219–221
 - vCPUs, 129–130
 - VM memory, 93–95, 140–141
 - VM networks, 181–187
 - VM storage, 156–162
 - VMs, 64–65
 - Windows on VM, 89–95
 - consolidation, 9–10, 51–52, 63, 68, 163, 188
 - consolidation ratios, 9, 11, 122, 146, 149
 - containment, 11, 51, 63, 68
 - contention
 - bandwidth, 166, 188, 248
 - clusters, 251
 - CPUs, 125, 129, 245, 267
 - disk I/O, 248
 - disk mirroring, 164
 - Hyper-V, 31
 - hypervisor resource allocation, 26
 - I/O, 238
 - memory, 144, 147, 267
 - “one server, one application” model, 4
 - controller, storage, 153
 - Converter, VMware, 53, 63
 - copying virtual machines, 191–210. *See also* cloning; templates
 - exercise, 210, 267–268
 - copy-on-write, 146, 203
 - cores
 - defined, 127, 127, 135
 - dual-core
 - CPUs, 127, 131
 - vCPUs, 132
 - exercises, 135, 265–266
 - multicore
 - CPUs, 127, 128, 129
 - vCPUs, 38, 132
 - corporate intellectual property, 4
 - corporate politics, server growth, 4
 - CouchDB, Apache, 257
 - CPUs (physical CPUs). *See also* vCPUs
 - bottlenecks, 55, 125, 129
 - contention, 125, 129, 245, 267
 - defined, 126
 - dual-core, 127, 131, 132
 - hyper-threading, 126, 129, 132–134, 135
 - idle, 9
 - memory *v.*, 137
 - Moore’s Law, 8, 8
 - multicore, 127, 128, 129
 - multiple socket, 38
 - speed, 261
 - vCPUs *v.*, 128–129
 - virtualization, 38, 38, 125–129
 - CSV (Cluster Shared Volumes), 155
 - Customize Hardware screen, 67, 67, 68
- ## D
- DaCapo benchmark suite, 252–255, 259
 - daemons
 - defined, 122–123
 - NFS, 123
 - viewing, System Monitor, 124, 265
 - VMTools, 120
 - vmtoolsd, 212
 - DAS (direct attached storage), 153
 - data centers. *See also* cloud computing
 - availability, 227, 238–241
 - cloud computing, 14
 - consolidation, 9–10
 - defined, 5
 - energy usage, 5
 - growth, 5–6, 9
 - outage, 229, 239
 - virtual, 14
 - data deduplication, 144, 146, 164–165, 165, 168
 - data request, 42–43, 43, 154
 - data storage. *See* storage
 - date/time settings, 81, 82, 112, 112
 - debugging, 20, 52, 188
 - decompression, 165
 - deduplication, 144, 146, 164–165, 165, 168
 - defragment option, 157
 - deleting snapshots, 209, 209
 - delta disk, 47
 - deploying applications, in VM, 248–256
 - desktop virtualization, 15–16
 - Destination Folder window, 57, 57
 - device drivers, VMware Tools, 212
 - Device Manager, Windows, 37, 37
 - Devices and Printers icon, 90, 91
 - DHCP, 177, 185, 186, 196
 - digital information, amount, 152
 - digital video recorders (DVRs), 138, 151, 152
 - direct attached storage (DAS), 153
 - disaster recovery
 - availability, 13, 227
 - data center outage, 239
 - environmental disasters, 13, 201
 - P2V conversions, 155
 - service outages, 228–230
 - unplanned downtime, 229–230
 - VM backup, 201
 - VMs, 13, 227

disks
 child, 47, 203–204, 206, 208
 delta, 47
 formatting, 78, 108, 160, 162
 parent, 203, 204, 208, 209
 sparse, 203
 disk files, virtual, 35, 160, 193, 263
 disk I/O contention, 248
 disk mirroring, 164, 232
 disk striping, 164, 232
 disruptive technology, 1, 17
 Dom0, 30, 31, 154, 174
 downtime, 229–230
 dual-core
 CPUs, 127, 131
 vCPUs, 132
 DVD/CD drive configuration,
 214–215
 DVRs (digital video recorders),
 138, 151, 152

E

e-business or out of business, 5
 EC2 (Elastic Compute Cloud), 241
 Edison, Thomas, 227
 Edit Virtual Machine Settings, 73,
 74, 100, 140, 267
 efficient hypervisors, 3
 8086 CPU, 9
 Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2), 241
 Elastic Sky X, 29. *See also*
 VMware ESX
 electricity/power availability, 5, 227
 Enable Template mode
 checkbox, 199
 End User License Agreement,
 60, 111
 energy usage, data centers, 5
 ENIAC, 126
 environmental disaster, 13, 201
 ESX. *See* VMware ESX
 ESXi, 28
 exabytes, 5, 152
 Exchange, Microsoft, 13
 exercises
 answers, 261–270
 application in VM, 259,
 269–270
 availability, 241, 268–269
 copying VMs, 210, 267–268
 cores, 135, 265–266
 memory, 149, 266
 network adapter, 189, 267

 peripheral virtual devices,
 225, 268
 storage, 169–170, 266–267
 external switches, multiple,
 175, 175

F

failures. *See also* disaster
 recovery
 guest, 22, 22
 type 2 hypervisors, 24
 fault tolerance, 29, 234, 235–236,
 237, 269
 faxboards, 263
 fgets(), 42
 Fibre-Channel Controller, 153
 fidelity, 3
 File menu, VMware Player main
 window, 61–62
 file system options, 155
 fire truck analogy, 163
 firewall, 173, 249, 250, 250
 floppy disk drive configuration,
 215–217
 “Formal Requirements for
 Virtualizable Third
 Generation Architectures”
 (Popek & Goldberg), 2
 formatting disk, 78, 108,
 160, 162
 FreeBSD, 27
 full clone, 200
 Fusion, VMware, 36, 54, 261, 262

G

Gartner, 28, 239
 gating resource, 265
 generic SCSI device options, 224,
 224
 geographic positioning systems
 (GPSs), 1, 151, 171
Ghostbusters, 188
 Gnome file system, 265
 Goldberg, Robert P., 2, 3, 9, 24,
 43, 125
 Google, 5, 14, 152
 Google Docs, 241
 GPSs (geographic positioning
 systems), 1, 151, 171
 graphic displays configuration, 221
 Ground Storm X, 29

growth

 availability needs, 227–230
 data centers, 5–6, 9
 memory, 137–138
 physical servers, 3–15
 telephone service, 227–228
 GSX, 27, 29, 31
 guests. *See also* virtual machines
 abstracting hardware from
 guests, 24–25, 25
 defined, 21
 Dom0, 30, 31, 154, 174
 failure, 22, 22
 multiple personalities, 262
 partitions *v.*, 31
 storage I/O requests from
 guests, 25–26, 26

H

HA (high availability), 29,
 234–235, 236, 238, 241, 251,
 258, 269
 hardware
 abstracting, 1, 2, 14, 15, 24–25,
 25, 33, 43–44, 239
 maintenance license, 11
 HBA (host-bus adapter), 153
 headroom, 8, 145
 Help menu, VMware Player main
 window, 62–63
 high availability (HA), 29,
 234–235, 236, 238, 241, 251,
 258, 269
 holodecks, 2, 24–25
 host
 defined, 21
 64-bit, 264
 host-bus adapter (HBA), 153
 hostname selection, 105, 105
 hot cloning, 53–54
 Hot-Add memory, 141
 Hotmail, 241
 HP P4000 LeftHand SAN solu-
 tions, 156
 HP/UX, 13, 27, 97
 HTML pages, 249–250
 HTTP server, Apache, 249
 Hulu.com, 172
 hyper-threading, 126, 129,
 132–134, 135
 Hyper-V, 31–32
 architecture, 31, 31–32
 Cluster Shared Volumes, 155

Hyper-V (*continued*)

- Integration Services, 213
- licensing, 32
- market share, 27, 32
- memory optimization techniques, 148
- networking model, 174–175, 175
- type 1 hypervisor, 23
- virtual storage pathway, 154, 154
- Xen *v.*, 31
- hypervisors, 19–33. *See also*
 - Hyper-V; VMware ESX; Xen
- abstraction of hardware, 15, 24–25, 25, 33, 43–44, 239
- architecture, 21, 21
- bare-metal, 9, 22, 30, 32
- commercially affordable, 21
- comparison, 27–33
- defined, 19–20, 24, 33
- diagram, 2
- efficient, 3
- fidelity, 3
- function, 33
- Goldberg/Popek, 2, 3, 9, 24, 43, 125
- history, 20–21
- isolation/safety rule, 3, 43
- load balancing, 33
- location, 19, 20
- market share, 27, 28, 30, 32, 55
- operating system *v.*, 25–26
- performance rule, 3, 125
- Popek/Goldberg, 2, 3, 9, 24, 43, 125
- resource allocation, 25–27
- role, 24–27
- safety/isolation rule, 3, 43
- supervisors *v.*, 20
- type 1, 21–23, 22
- type 2, 23, 23–24, 261–262
- virtual servers, 25
- VMMs *v.*, 2, 3, 9, 19, 20, 21
- VMs *v.*, 15

I

IBM

- AIX, 13, 27, 97
- mainframes, 2, 9, 20
- USB standard, 219
- Websphere, 249
- z/Linux, 124

- iCloud, 14, 152
- IDC (International Data Corporation), 11, 98, 152
- idle CPUs, 9
- IIS, Microsoft, 249
- increasing availability, 227–230
- individual ownership attitude, 4
- information age
 - availability, 227–228, 241
 - digital information amounts, 152
 - storage growth, 168
- Install screen, VMware Tools, 87, 87
- installation, VMware Tools. *See also* Linux on VM; Windows on VM
- Linux on VM, 113–117
- Windows on VM, 83–88
- instantiation, 15
- Integration Services, Hyper-V, 213
- Intel
 - AMD *v.*, 134
 - 8086 CPU, 9
 - hyper-threading, 126, 129, 132–134, 135
 - Moore, 7
 - platform, 134
 - Single-Chip Cloud Computer, 127
 - USB standard, 219
- International Data Corporation (IDC), 11, 98, 152
- I/O contention, 238
- iPads, 137, 138
- ipconfig, 178, 196, 267
- iSCSI, 42, 176
- ISO image
 - CD/DVD drive, 214
 - Linux install on VM, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102
 - Windows install on VM, 72, 73, 74, 75
- isolation/safety rule, 3, 43
- iTunes store, 228

J

- jar file, 252
- Java, 13, 249, 252
- JeOS (just enough operating system), 256
- JumpBox, 257
- just enough operating system (JeOS), 256

K

- kdump memory warning, 113, 113
- KVM (Kernel-based Virtual Machine), 32

L

- LAN Segments, 180
- LeftHand SAN solutions, HP P4000, 156
- Library of Congress, 152
- licenses
 - End User License Agreement, 60, 111
 - hardware maintenance, 11
 - Hyper-V, 32
 - Linux, 97, 98, 111
 - VMware Player License Agreement window, 60, 60
 - Windows install on VM, 77
- lifespan, server, 63–64
- limit setting, 244–245
- linked clones, 200
- Linux
 - Archive Manager, 115, 116
 - Display utility, 118, 118
 - ESX security, 28
 - KVM, 32
 - market share, 98
 - packages, 123
 - Red Hat, 29, 32, 55
 - Red Hat–based Oracle Linux, 124
 - RHEL, 32, 98, 104, 108, 122
 - System Monitor, 120, 121, 122, 124, 253, 255, 265, 270
 - virtualization, 13
 - z/Linux, 124
- Linux on VM, 97–124
 - configuration options, 117–122
 - daemons
 - defined, 122–123
 - NFS, 123
 - viewing, System Monitor, 124, 265
 - VMTtools, 120
 - vmtoolsd, 212
 - installation steps, 98–113
 - ISO image, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102
 - licensing, 97, 98, 111
 - network connection, 119–120
 - optimization, 122–124

- performance measurements, 251–256
- reasons for using, 97–98
- VMware Tools install, 113–117
- Liquid VM, 48
- live migration, 134, 177, 236–237, 244, 246–247, 258
- load balancing
 - application performance, 247
 - hypervisors, 33
 - live migration, 134
 - multipathing, 232
- long-distance VMotion, 240–241
- lost servers, 6
- Lotus Notes, 13

M

- main window, VMware Player, 61–63
- mainframes
 - IBM, 2, 9, 20
 - processing, 1
- market share
 - hypervisors, 27, 28, 30, 32, 55
 - server operating system, 98
- media test screen, 103, 103
- memory
 - abstracting, 137, 138
 - ballooning, 29, 144–145, 145, 147, 148, 149
 - blocks, 139
 - compression, 147, 148
 - contention, 144, 147, 267
 - CPUs *v.*, 137
 - examining, 39, 39
 - exercises, 149, 266
 - growth, 137–138
 - Hot-Add, 141
 - kdump memory warning, 113, 113
 - overcommitment, 145, 145–146, 147, 148, 149, 165, 266
 - page file, 139
 - page sharing, 29, 146–147, 148, 149, 164, 251, 266
 - pages, 139, 140
 - paging, 139
 - RAM, 137
 - virtualization, 137–140
 - VM memory
 - configuration, 93–95, 140–141

- examination, 39, 39
- optimizations, 144–148
- overhead, 142–144
- tuning practices, 142–148
- merging snapshots, 208–209
- Microsoft. *See also* Hyper-V; Windows
 - Exchange, 13
 - IIS, 249
 - System Center VMM, 53
 - virtual appliances, 257
 - Virtual PC, 54
 - Virtual Server, 24, 31
- migration
 - live, 134, 177, 236–237, 244, 246–247, 258
 - storage, 237–238, 238, 244, 247
 - VM, 236–237, 237
- mirroring, disk, 164, 232
- Moore, Gordon, 7
- Moore's Law, 4, 6–9, 8, 11, 13, 17, 149, 167
- mouse, virtual, 91
- multicore
 - CPUs, 127, 128, 129
 - vCPUs, 38, 132
- multipathing, 232
- multiple external switches, 175, 175
- multiple network traffic types, 188
- multiple personalities, 262
- multiple socket CPUs, 38
- multiple vCPUs, single *v.*, 131–132
- multiple VMs, protecting, 234–238
- Murphy's Law, 230
- MySQL, 13, 249, 259, 269

N

- Name the Virtual Machine screen, 66, 66
- NAS (Network Attached Storage), 153, 155
- NAT (Network Address Translation), 119, 180, 181, 186, 186–187, 187
- National Archives and Records Administration, 239
- .NET Framework, 249
- networks, 171–189
 - bridged, 180, 184, 184, 186, 189, 267

- Hyper-V, 174–175, 175
- multiple network traffic types, 188
- system addresses, 177
- virtual networks
 - configuration, 181–187
 - examining, 39–40, 40
 - tuning practices, 187–189
- virtualization, 171–180
- VMware host, 173, 173
- Xen, 174–175, 175
- network adapters
 - exercise, 189, 267
 - properties, 179, 180
 - VMnet0 virtual adapters, 181, 183, 184
 - VMnet1 virtual adapters, 181, 184, 185
 - VMnet8 virtual adapters, 181, 184, 186
- Network Attached Storage (NAS), 153, 155
- network connection, Linux on VM, 119–120
- Network File System (NFS), 42, 123, 176
- Network Setup screen, 82, 82
- Network Time Protocol (NTP), 123
- network.cab, 182, 183
- New Simple Volume option, 161, 161
- New Virtual Machine Wizard, 65
- NFS (Network File System), 42, 123, 176
- NIC cards
 - physical, 39–40
 - virtual, 39–40, 173, 175, 178–179
- NIC teaming, 232–233, 233
- NOOP scheduler, 123
- Novell, 29
- Novell Platespin Migrate, 53
- NTP (Network Time Protocol), 123

O

- Office 365, 241
- “one server, one application”
 - model, 4, 9
- open virtual appliance (ova), 48
- Open Virtualization Format (OVF), 48, 49, 257, 258, 263

operating systems. *See also* Linux;
 Windows
 hypervisors *v.*, 25–26
 JeOS, 256
 market share, 98
 supervisors, 20
 support, 264–265
 UNIX, 3, 12, 13, 97, 98, 124
 vendor-specific, 3
 Windows, server growth, 3–15
 optimization
 Linux on VM, 122–124
 memory optimization techniques, 148
 VM memory, 144–148
 Windows on VM, 95–96
 Optimization Guide for Windows
 7, 95
 Oracle
 hypervisor solutions, 32
 Real Applications Clusters, 234
 Red Hat–based Oracle Linux,
 124
 Solaris Zones, 13, 27, 32, 97
 Sun Microsystems, 13, 27, 29,
 32, 97, 261
 templates, 47
 three-tier application architecture,
 249
 tier-one application, 13
 virtual appliances, 257
 VirtualBox, 32, 54, 261, 262
 WebLogic, 47, 48, 249
 outages, 228–230, 239
 ova (open virtual appliance), 48
 overcommitment, memory, 145,
 145–146, 147, 148, 149,
 165, 266
 overhead, VM memory, 142–144
 OVF (Open Virtualization Format),
 48, 49, 257, 258, 263

P

P2C (physical-to-cloud), 52
 P2V (physical-to-virtual) conversions, 51–54
 cloning *v.*, 52–53
 cold cloning, 53
 disaster recovery option, 155
 hot cloning, 53–54
 tools, 52, 53

P4000 LeftHand SAN solutions,
 HP, 156
 Package Group selection screen,
 109, 109
 packages, Linux, 123
 page file, 139
 page sharing, 29, 146–147, 148,
 149, 164, 251, 266
 pages, 139, 140
 paging, 139
 parallel port devices configuration,
 222–225
 Parallels Desktop, 36, 54, 261, 262
 Parallels Virtuozzo, 27
 parent disk, 203, 204, 208, 209
 partitions, 31
 passwords
 Linux install on VM, 106, 112
 root, 106, 112, 269
 Windows install on VM, 79, 80
 performance
 applications in VM, 243–248
 measurements, Linux VM,
 251–256
 rule, hypervisors, 3, 125
 Performance Monitor, 254–255
 peripheral virtual devices, 211–225
 CD/DVD drive configuration,
 214–215
 exercises, 225, 268
 floppy disk drive configuration,
 215–217
 graphic displays configuration,
 221
 parallel port devices configuration,
 222–225
 serial port devices configuration,
 222
 sound card configuration, 218
 understanding, 213–214
 USB devices configuration,
 219–221
 VMware Tools, 212–213
 personalities, multiple, 262
 petabytes, 5, 5, 168
 physical servers. *See* servers
 physical switches, 177
 physical-to-cloud (P2C), 52
 physical-to-virtual (P2V) conversions. *See* P2V conversions
 pipe, 163
 planned downtime, 229
 Platespin Migrate, Novell, 53

Play Virtual Machine, 75, 101,
 103, 160
 Player. *See* VMware Player
 Player Setup window, 56, 56
 pooled storage, 156, 156
 Popek, Gerald J., 2, 3, 9, 24, 43, 125
 power/electricity availability, 5, 227
 processes. *See* daemons
 processors. *See* CPUs
 Product Key, Windows, 80, 80
 protection
 data centers, 238–241
 multiple virtual machines,
 234–238
 virtual machines, 227,
 230–234
 virus protection
 NAT networks, 187
 virtual appliances, 16,
 232, 257
 websites, 231

Q

Quest Software vConverter, 53
 Qumranet, 32

R

RAID, 164, 167, 232
 RAM (Random Access Memory), 137
 RDMS (raw device mappings), 155
 Real Applications Clusters,
 Oracle, 234
 Red Hat, 29, 32, 55. *See also* Linux
 on VM
 Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL),
 32, 98, 104, 108, 122
 Red Hat–based Oracle Linux, 124
 redundant systems, 234
 redundant VMs, 247
 Remind Me Later, 75, 101, 102
 Remote Desktop Connection, 89
 Removable Devices window, 75,
 75, 102
 replacement, server, 7–8, 63–64
 repositories, virtual appliances,
 257
 reservations setting, 244–245
 resource allocation, hypervisors,
 25–27

resource contention. *See* contention
 resource pools, 246, 246
 resource settings, VM, 244–245
 return on investment, virtualization, 261
 RHEL (Red Hat Enterprise Linux), 32, 98, 104, 108, 122
 rings, 43
 root password, 106, 112, 269

S

safety
 corporate intellectual property, 4
 isolation/safety rule, 3, 43
 SANs (storage area networks), 2, 41, 54, 153, 155, 156
 SAP, 13
 SAS, 13
 saving virtual machine state. *See* snapshots
 screen savers, 95
 SCSI
 drivers, VMware Tools, 212
 generic SCSI device options, 224, 224
 iSCSI, 42, 176
 virtual SCSI disk adapter, 41, 91
 virtual storage pathway, 153
 security
 desktop virtualization, 16
 type 1 hypervisors, 22
 virtual network, 40
 VMware ESX, 28, 29
 x86 architecture, 43
 Select a Guest Operating System screen, 65–66, 66
 serial port devices configuration, 222
 server operating systems. *See* operating systems
 servers (physical servers). *See also* virtual servers
 abstraction, 1
 availability, 227
 consolidation, 9–10, 51–52, 63, 68, 163, 188
 containment, 11, 51, 63, 68
 growth, 3–15
 lifespan, 63–64
 lost, 6
 “one server, one application” model, 4, 9
 P2V conversions, 51–54
 replacement, 7–8, 63–64
 virtual servers *v.*, 11, 44
 VMs *v.*, 35–38, 44–46
 zombie, 230, 231
 service outages, 228–230
 Setup Type selection window, 86, 86
 shared storage, 155, 156, 234–235
 shares setting, 244–245
 Shortcuts window, 58, 58
 single vCPU, multiple *v.*, 131–132
 Single-Chip Cloud Computer, 127
 Site Recovery Manager, VMware, 240, 240
 64-bit
 host, 264
 Red Hat Enterprise Linux, 98
 Windows system, 55, 72, 93, 222
 smart devices, 33, 262
 snapshots, 202–209
 child disks, 47, 203–204, 206, 208
 cloning *v.*, 202
 creating, 204–207
 defined, 202–203
 deleting, 209, 209
 merging, 208–209
 parent disk, 203, 204, 208, 209
 saving VM state, 201–204
 templates *v.*, 202
 understanding, 47–48
 Snapshot Manager, 205, 205–207, 209
 Snapshot Wizard, 204
 socket CPUs, multiple, 38
 Software Updates window, 57, 57
 Solaris Zones, 13, 27, 32, 97
 sound card configuration, 218
 sparse disks, 203
 Specify Disk Capacity screen, 67, 67
 speed, CPU, 261
 sprawl, virtual server, 68, 209, 230, 231
 SQL Server, 13, 249
 standards
 defined, 3
 OVF, 48, 49, 257, 258, 263
 USB, 219
 Starship Enterprise, 2, 24
 storage, 151–169
 abstracting, 41, 122, 151, 153, 154, 155
 compression, 165
 deduplication, 144, 146, 164–165, 165, 168
 exercises, 169–170, 266–267
 file system options, 155
 pooled, 156
 RAID, 164, 167, 232
 shared, 155, 156, 234–235
 thick provisioning, 165, 166, 169, 266
 thin provisioning, 165–166, 168, 169
 tiered, 167–168
 virtual storage pathway, 153–154, 154
 virtual switch, 176, 176
 virtualization, 151–156
 VM storage
 configuration, 156–162
 examining, 41, 41–42
 tuning practices, 162–168
 storage area networks (SANs), 2, 41, 54, 153, 155, 156
 storage controller, 153
 Storage Devices screen, 104, 104
 storage I/O
 control, 166–167, 167, 248
 requests from guest, 25–26, 26
 storage migration, 237–238, 238, 244, 247
 Strauss Computer study, 229
 StressLinux, 257
 striping, disk, 164, 232
 Sun Microsystems, 13, 27, 29, 32, 97, 261
 supervisors, 20
 support, operating systems, 264–265
 swap space, 121, 147
 switches
 multiple external, 175, 175
 physical, 177
 storage virtual, 176, 176
 virtual, 40, 173–177, 179, 184, 188–189, 233, 250
 Symantec
 Cluster Server, 234
 System Recovery, 53
 Sysprep tool, 197
 system addresses, 177
 System Center VMM, Microsoft, 53

System Monitor, Linux, 120,
121, 122, 124, 253, 255,
265, 270
System Recovery, Symantec, 53

T

telephone service growth, 227–228
templates (virtual machine tem-
plates), 197–201. *See also*
snapshots
Clone Virtual Machine Wizard,
199, 199–201, 200, 201
defined, 71, 198
Oracle, 47
snapshots *v.*, 202
understanding, 46–47
terabytes, 5, 168, 263, 266
thick provisioning, 165, 166, 169,
266
thin clients, 15, 16
thin OS, 256
thin provisioning, 165–166, 168, 169
ThinApp, VMware, 17
32-bit system, 55, 183, 263
threads, 132. *See also*
hyper-threading
three-tier architecture, 248–251,
249, 250
tiered storage, 167–168
tier-one applications, 12, 13
time zone selection, 81, 105, 106
Timed RHEL Welcome screen,
103, 104
time/date settings, 81, 82, 112, 112
traffic cops, 24–25
Trend Micro, 257
tuning practices
vCPUs, 130–134
VM memory, 142–148
VM networks, 187–189
VM storage, 162–168
Turnkey Linux MySQL virtual
appliance, 269
type 1 hypervisors, 21–23, 22
type 2 hypervisors, 23, 23–24,
261–262

U

University of California at
Berkeley, 152
University of Cambridge, 29

UNIX, 3, 12, 13, 97, 98, 124.
See also Linux on VM
unplanned downtime, 229–230
Upgrade to VMware Workstation, 63
USB devices configuration,
219–221
Use Floppy Image File option, 217
User Experience Improvement
Program window, 58, 58
UUIDs, 210, 267

V

V2P (virtual-to-physical), 52, 53
vApps, 258
vConverter, Quest Software, 53
vCPUs (virtual CPUs), 125–135
AMD platform, 134
bottlenecks, 259, 270
configuration, 129–130
CPUs *v.*, 128–129
examining, 38
hyper-threading, 126, 129,
132–134, 135
Intel platform, 134
multicore, 38, 132
multiple *v.* single, 131–132
VM creation, 65
VDI (Virtual Desktop
Infrastructures), 147
vendor-specific operating
systems, 3
View, VMware, 16
viewing daemons, 124, 265
virtual, 1–2
Virtual Appliance Marketplace, 61
virtual appliances, 256–258
defined, 48–49, 256
download, 263
ova, 48
repositories, 257
security, 16
Turnkey Linux MySQL, 269
vApps *v.*, 258
virus protection, 232
virtual clustering. *See* clustering
virtual CPUs. *See* vCPUs
virtual data centers, 14
Virtual Desktop Infrastructures
(VDI), 147
virtual disk files, 35, 160, 193, 263
Virtual Iron, 32
Virtual Machine File System
(VMFS), 155

virtual machine memory. *See*
memory
virtual machine monitors (VMMs),
2, 3, 9, 19, 20, 21. *See also*
hypervisors
Virtual Machine Settings
Edit Virtual Machine Settings,
73, 74, 100, 140, 267
Enable Template mode check-
box, 199
Linux on VM, 100
network configuration, 119, 180
storage options, 157, 160
USB hardware device, 225
Use Floppy Image File
option, 217
virtual hardware devices, 214
VM CPU options, 130
VM memory options, 93–94,
124, 140–141
Windows install on VM, 73–74
Virtual Machine window, VMware
Player main window, 62
virtual machines (VMs), 35–49.
See also applications in VM;
cloning; templates
availability, 227, 230–234
cloning, 44–46, 191–197
configuration, 64–65
configuration files, 35–36,
193, 263
copying, 191–210
CPU examination, 38, 38
creating, 51–69
methods, 51
P2V conversions, 51–54
VMware Player, 63–68
workbench tools, 54–55
defined, 35
describing, 35–42
diagram, 36
disaster recovery, 13, 201
fault-tolerant, 235–236, 237
guests, 21
how works, 42–44
hypervisors *v.*, 15
network resources, 39–40, 40
OVF standard, 48, 49, 257,
258, 263
physical servers *v.*, 35–38,
44–46
protecting, 227, 230–234
reasons for not using, 262–263
redundant, 247
resource settings, 244–245

- storage examination, 41, 41–42
- virtual disk files, 35, 160, 193, 263
- virtual servers *v.*, 35
- Windows Device Manager, 37, 37
- working with, 44–49
- virtual mouse, 91
- virtual networks. *See also* networks
 - configuration, 181–187
 - diagram, 40
 - examining, 39–40, 40
 - tuning practices, 187–189
- virtual network adapters
 - VMnet0, 181, 183, 184
 - VMnet1, 181, 184, 185
 - VMnet8, 181, 184, 186
- Virtual Network Editor, 183, 184, 185, 186
- virtual network path, 172, 172
- virtual NIC cards, 39–40, 173, 175, 178–179
- Virtual PC, Windows, 54
- virtual peripheral devices, 211–225
 - CD/DVD drive configuration, 214–215
 - exercises, 225, 268
 - floppy disk drive configuration, 215–217
 - graphic displays configuration, 221
 - parallel port devices configuration, 222–225
 - serial port devices configuration, 222
 - sound card configuration, 218
 - understanding, 213–214
 - USB devices configuration, 219–221
- VMware Tools, 212–213
- virtual reality technology, 2, 3, 12, 24
- virtual SCSI disk adapter, 41, 91
- virtual servers
 - consolidation, 9–10, 51–52, 63, 68, 163, 188
 - containment, 11, 51, 63, 68
 - defined, 13
 - hypervisors, 25
 - Microsoft Virtual Server, 24, 31
 - model, 9, 15
 - number, 11
 - P2V conversions, 51–54
 - physical server growth, 3–15
 - physical servers *v.*, 11, 44
 - sprawl, 68, 209, 230, 231
 - VMs *v.*, 35
- Virtual Storage Appliance, 156
- virtual storage pathway, 153–154, 154
- virtual switches, 40, 173–177, 179, 184, 188–189, 233, 250
- virtual three-tier architecture, 250, 250
- virtual zombie servers, 230, 231
- VirtualBox, Oracle, 32, 54, 261, 262
- virtualization, 1–18. *See also* applications; CPUs; memory; networks; servers; storage
 - availability *v.*, 13
 - cloud computing *v.*, 14, 17, 33
 - CPU, 38, 38, 125–129
 - defined, 1–2
 - desktop, 15–16
 - disruptive technology, 1, 17
 - how works, 42–43
 - importance, 9–14
 - memory, 137–140
 - networks, 171–180
 - “one server, one application” model, 4, 9
 - Popek/Goldberg, 2, 3, 9, 24, 43, 125
 - return on investment, 261
 - stages, 11–14
 - storage, 151–156
 - x86
 - chipset, 134
 - defined, 9
 - security, 43, 46
 - type 2 hypervisors, 23
- virtual-to-physical (V2P), 52, 53
- virus protection
 - NAT networks, 187
 - virtual appliances, 16, 232, 257
 - websites, 231
- VM-affinity, 247
- vmdk files, 193, 195, 203, 269
- .vmem, 203, 204
- VMFS (Virtual Machine File System), 155
- vmkernel, 28, 29
- VMMs. *See* virtual machine monitors
- VMnet0 virtual adapters, 181, 183, 184
- VMnet1 virtual adapters, 181, 184, 185
- VMnet8 virtual adapters, 181, 184, 186
- vmnetcfg.exe, 182, 183
- VMotion, 29, 177, 240–241
- VMs. *See* virtual machines
- VMTools daemon, 120
- vmtoolsd, 212, 265
- vmtoolsd.exe, 212, 213
- VMware
 - Converter, 53, 63
 - ESXi, 28
 - Fusion, 36, 54, 261, 262
 - GSX, 27, 29, 31
 - Server, 27
 - Site Recovery Manager, 240, 240
 - ThinApp, 17
 - View, 16
 - Virtual Appliance Marketplace, 61
 - Virtual Storage Appliance, 156
 - vSphere, 36, 148, 173
- VMware ESX, 27–29
 - architecture, 28, 28–29
 - Elastic Sky X, 29
 - features, 29
 - limit setting, 244–245
 - market share, 27, 28, 55
 - reservations setting, 244–245
 - shares setting, 244–245
 - type 1 hypervisor, 23
 - VMFS, 155
- VMware host, networking in, 173, 173
- VMware Player
 - download, 55, 55
 - exploring, 60–63
 - installation, 56, 56–60, 57, 58, 59
 - main window, 61–63
 - File menu, 61–62
 - Help menu, 62–63
 - Virtual Machine window, 62
 - type 2 hypervisor, 24
 - VM creation, 63–68
- VMware Tools
 - defined, 83
 - device drivers, 212
 - installation
 - Linux on VM, 113–117
 - Windows on VM, 83–88
 - properties, 90, 90
 - Remind Me Later, 75, 101, 102
 - using, 212–213
 - virtual peripheral devices, 212–213

VMware Workstation, 24, 27, 36,
54, 55, 63, 98, 199, 204
cost, 55
early version, 27
Snapshot Manager, 205,
205–207, 209
templates, 199
type 2 hypervisor, 24, 261
Upgrade to VMware
Workstation, 63
usage in text, 55
.vmx file, 69, 193, 194, 210, 212,
264, 267, 269
Volume Wizard, 162
vSphere, 36, 148, 173

W

wallpapers, 95
WebLogic, 47, 48, 249
webservers, 249–250
Websphere, 249
Welcome screen
Linux, 110
Timed RHEL, 103, 104
VMware Tools, 86
Wi-Fi, 219
Windows
Device Manager, 37, 37
Product Key, 80, 80
server growth, 3–6

64-bit, 55, 72, 93, 222
Virtual PC, 54
Windows on VM, 71–96
configuration options, 89–95
installation
ISO image, 72, 73, 74, 75
methods, 71–72
steps, 72–83
optimizing, 95–96
VMware Tools, 83–88
Wireless USB, 219
wizards
Add Hardware Wizard,
157–160, 158, 159, 160
Clone Virtual Machine Wizard,
199, 199–201, 200, 201
New Virtual Machine Wizard,
65
Snapshot Wizard, 204
Volume Wizard, 162
workbench tools, 54–55
Workstation. *See* VMware
Workstation

X

x86 virtualization. *See also* servers
chipset, 134
defined, 9
security, 43, 46
type 2 hypervisors, 23

Xen, 29–30
architecture, 29–30, 30
arrival, 9
Citrix, 231
Application Streaming, 17
Tools for Virtual Machines,
213
Hyper-V *v.*, 31
market share, 27, 30
memory optimization tech-
niques, 148
networking model, 174–175,
175
type 1 hypervisor, 23
virtual storage pathway, 154,
154
Xen code enhancements/
updates, 32
XFS file system, 155
XenCenter management suite, 213
XenConvert, 53
XenDesktop, 16
XenServer, 36, 213
XenSource, 29
XFS file system, 155

Z

zettabytes, 152
z/Linux, 124
zombie servers, 230, 231